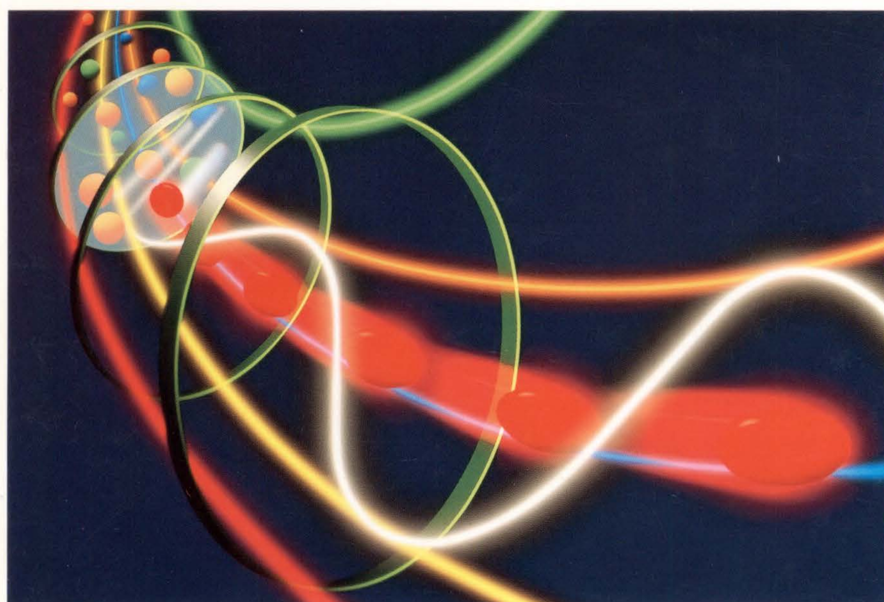
ISSN 0016-2523

FUJITSU SCIENTIFIC & TECHNICAL JOURNAL

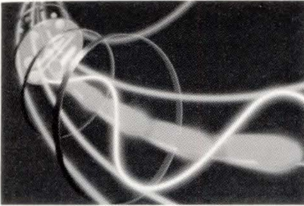
Winter 1988 VOL.24, NO.4

Special Issue on Semiconductors



FUJITSU

FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 263-468, Kawasaki, December, 1988



This Issue's Cover

The cover illustrates a resonant-tunneling hot electron transistor (RHET) fabricated using high-grade super lattice crystal technology. The RHET utilizes the wave properties of electrons. In an RHET, when the electron energy of the emitter is increased to the level of the resonant state of the quantum well, the electrons pass through the base at ultrahigh speed.

Because of this resonant-tunneling effect, a single RHET can realize the exclusive NOR function. This function is normally performed by a circuit consisting of 7 or 8 transistors.

FUJITSU Scientific & Technical Journal is published quarterly by FUJITSU LIMITED of Japan to report the results of research conducted by FUJITSU LIMITED, FUJITSU LABORATORIES LTD., and their associated companies in communications, electronics, and related fields. It is the publisher's intent that FSTJ will promote the international exchange of such nformation, and we encourage the distribution of FSTJ on an exchange basis. All correspondence concerning the exchange of periodicals should be addressed to the editor.

FSTJ can be purchased through KINOKUNIYA COMPANY LTD., 3-17-7 Shinjuku, Shinjuku-ku, Tokyo 160-91, (Telex No. 2424344, answerback KINOKUNI J).

The price is US $5.00 per copy, excluding postage.

FUJITSU LIMITED reserves all rights concerning the republication and publication after translation into other languages of articles appearing herein.

Permission to publish these articles may be obtained by contacting the editor.

FUJITSU LIMITED Takuma Yamamoto, *President*
FUJITSU LABORATORIES LTD. Masaka Ogi, *President*

Editorial Board

Editor Hiroshi Yamada
Associate Editor Takahiko Misugi

Editorial Representatives

Koichi Dazai, Toshito Hara, Masao Hiyane, Noriaki Fujimura, Kazuhisa Kobayashi, Yoshihiro Kosaka, Ken-ichi Murata, Seiya Ogawa, Shinji Ohkawa, Eisaku Ohshima, Shigeru Sato, Tohru Sato, Shozo Taguchi, Hideo Takahashi, Hirobumi Takanashi, Mitsuhiko Toda, Ryoiku Togei, Toru Tsuda, Akira Yoshida

Editorial Coordinator

Kazuo Yono

FUJITSU LIMITED 1015 Kamikodanaka, Nakahara-ku,
Kawasaki 211, Japan
Cable Address: FUJITSULIMITED KAWASAKI
Telephone: +81-44-777-1111
Telex: 3842122, 3842221, 3842802, 3842803,
Answerback FTWKAW J

Printed by MIZUNO PRITECH Co., Ltd. in Japan
© 1988 FUJITSU LIMITED (December 25, 1988)

Editorial Note

This special issue introduces the recent progress in Fujitsu's semiconductor technology. Because of the severe competition, advances in semiconductor technology are being made every day. This is also true at Fujitsu where some new products are continuously created and marketed. In this sense, this special issue can only introduce a momentary feature of the technology.

Nevertheless the semiconductor technology consists of many different fields of engineering and progresses with a consistent unification of these fields. It is therefore necessary in an issue to include wide range of these fields in order to have a better introduction of the technology. This issue tries to cover as many topics as possible ranging from the latest device and manufacturing technologies to simulation technology. Total of 21 papers are thus field in this volume to represent most of these fields, in which review papers of individual technology of Fujitsu and original reports are properly contained.

These papers are devided into 6 groups to give an easier vision of the whole contents. Three of these groups deals with the device technology. The first is the *High Speed Devices* which Fujitsu has the better reputation than any other company. Here the technologies representing three different fields of high speed device, namely those of Si, compound semiconductor and Josephson Junction (JJ), are reviewed. JJ device is included because it falls into the same category in the sense of high speed integrated circuit. Representing high speed compound semiconductor devices, HEMT is included because it has drawn great attention as Fujitsu's original technology.

Memories, ASICs, microprocessors, and other devices of the advanced technology are grouped into *Large Scale Devices*. These represent the Si technology as a main stream of the present semiconductor technology. Total of 5 papers are listed here concerning the most advanced VLSI technologies developed at Fujitsu including those of Mbit DRAM, 32-bit microprocessor, and 100-K gates gate array, each of these being at the level of the world largest scale.

Third group of the device technology is the *Compound Semiconductors*. Review papers on two most popular device applications where Fujitsu has an excellent engineering carrier are given there together with a work on material characterization.

Papers related to production techniques are devided into the *Process Technology* and the *Manufacturing Technology* for convenience sake. Those directly concerned with the wafer process are included in the former, where 4 topics on advanced bipolar process and others are included together with a review paper on sub-micron lithography technology. The latter contains those related to the manufacturing and mass production of the products, and two review papers on mask and packaging technologies and one reliability paper are included.

Finally, two papers are in the *Simulation Technology* group. Included here are a report on circuit simulation system and a work on ASIC design tool. With these all contained, this issue is considered to cover all the supporting fields for the semiconductor technology.

This concludes the outline of the aim and contents of this issue. We sincerely hope that this issue will be useful to all users of Fujitsu's semiconductor products. We also hope that this issue will benefit to the other engineers and thus contributes to further advancement of the semiconductor technology.

Dr. Takahiko Misugi, Associated Editor   Dr. Ryoiku Togei, Editorial Representative, Special Editor of this Issue

FUJITSU SCIENTIFIC & TECHNICAL JOURNAL

Winter 1988 VOL.24, NO.4

Special Issue on Semiconductors

CONTENTS

263 Preface to the Special Issue on Semiconductors
● Hiroyuki Ino

High Speed Devices

265 High-Speed Bipolar Logic IC
● Ken-ichi Ohno ● Hirofumi Takeda

271 Ultra-High-Speed HEMT LSI Technology
● Masayuki Abe ● Takashi Mimura ● Masaaki Kobayashi

284 Recent Advances in Josephson Junction Devices
● Shinya Hasuo ● Takeshi Imamura ● Norio Fujimaki

Large Scale Devices

293 Self-Timed RAM: STRAM
● Chikai Ohno

301 3D Stacked Capacitor Cell for Mega Bit DRAM
● Tomio Nakano ● Takashi Yabu

318 Development of Sea of Gates
● Yoshiyuki Suehiro ● Nobutake Matsumura ● Gensuke Goto

328 Development of Microcontroller: F^2 MC
● Jyoji Murakami

335 Development of 32-Bit Microprocessor Family Products: G_{MICRO} F32
● Shosuke Mori ● Koichi Fujita ● Haruyasu Itoh

Compound Semiconductors

345 Lightwave Semiconductor Devices
● Haruo Yonetani ● Akira Fukushima ● Keiji Satoh

359 Microwave Semiconductor Devices
● Kiyofumi Ohta ● Kenji Yano ● Yutaka Hirano

372 Characterization of Compound Semiconductor Materials by Transmission and Reflection Electron Microscopy
● Itsuo Umebu

Process Technology

379 **Ultra High-Speed Bipolar Process Technology: ESPER**
● Tatsuya Deguchi ● Hiroshi Goto

384 **High-Speed BiCMOS Technology with Polysilicon Emitter Structure**
● Hiroyuki Fukuma ● Tsunenori Yamauchi ● Yoshinori Okajima

391 **Characteristics of Si HBT with Hydrogenated Micro-Crystalline Si Emitter**
● Hiroshi Fujioka ● Kanetake Takasaki

398 **Application of EB-Lithography for Fabrication of Submicron-Gate-MOSFETs**
● Shuzo Ohshio ● Tetsuo Izawa

408 **SOI Device on Bonded Wafer**
● Hiroshi Gotou ● Yoshihiro Arimoto ● Masashi Ozeki
● Kazunori Imaoka

Manufacturing Technology

418 **Overview of Mask Technology**
● Kimio Yanagida ● Takao Furukawa ● Takeo Kikuchi

432 **Packaging Technology for ASICs**
● Michio Sono

446 **Reliability on Short-Channel MOSLSIs**
● Ken Shono ● Kenji Ishida ● Nagao Yamada

Simulation Technology

456 **Bipolar Circuit Simulation System Using Two-Dimensional Device Simulator**
● Shigeo Satoh ● Hideki Oka ● Noriaki Nakayama

464 **Speed Tunable Finite State Machine Compiler: ZEPHCAD™**
● Hitomi Sato ● Yoshihide Sugiura ● Masahiro Fujita

UDC 621.3.049.774.3
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 265-270(1988)

High-Speed Bipolar Logic IC

• Ken-ichi Ohno • Hirofumi Takeda

Continuing advances in silicon technology have produced IC devices with increasingly high speed, high density, and low power dissipation.
This paper reviews the trends at Fujitsu in high-speed bipolar logic IC devices.
Methods suggested for improving the speed of ECL LSI devices are also outlined, and a 10K-gate ECL gate array of 100-ps and a 2.7 GHz prescaler are given as examples of advanced bipolar logic IC devices.

UDC 621.3.049.771.14:621.382.3
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 271-283(1988)

Ultra-High-Speed HEMT LSI Technology

• Masayuki Abe • Takashi Mimura • Masaaki Kobayashi

High Electron Mobility Transistors (HEMTs) are very promising devices for ultra-high-speed LSI/VLSI because of the supermobility GaAs/AlGaAs heterojunction structure.
This paper discusses the current status and recent advances of HEMT technology for high-performance VLSI with a focus on materials, self-alignment device fabrication, and HEMT LSI implementations.
HEMTs have already been used to develop a high speed 16 kbit static RAM and a 4.1 k-gate gate array.

UDC 537.312.62
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 284-292(1988)

Recent Advances in Josephson Junction Devices

• Shinya Hasuo • Takeshi Imamura • Norio Fujimaki

This paper describes recent advances in high-speed digital circuits using all niobium (Nb/AlO_x/Nb) Josephson junctions. The world's fastest logic gate Modified Variable Threshold Logic (MVTL) is described. The MVTL gate family has been applied to various logic circuits such as a 16-bit ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit) and a 4-bit microprocessor. The high-speed performance of Josephson junctions in LSI level circuits has been verified using these circuits.
A new type of high sensitivity magnetic sensor, SQUID (Superconducting QUantum Interference Device), has also been invented. It is called "a single-chip SQUID", because all the circuits necessary for its operation have been integrated into a single chip.

UDC 621.377:681.327.67
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 293-300(1988)

Self-Timed RAM: STRAM

• Chikai Ohno

A STRAM is different from conventional RAMs because it has synchronous operation and an on-chip write pulse generator. Three types of STRAMs are presented in this paper. Each type is a standard device and has unique features which are useful in various applications.
A system model using STRAM was evaluated and it was shown that STRAM can improve the system level cycle speed to twice that of a conventional RAM. Using already established process technology, Fujitsu has developed a 1K x 4 standard STRAM having a cycle time of 9 ns and 4K x 4 STRAM having a 13 ns cycle time.

UDC 621.377.621:681.327.67
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 301-317(1988)

3D Stacked Capacitor Cell for Mega Bit DRAM

• Tomio Nakano • Takashi Yabu

This paper discusses the three-dimensional stacked capacitor (3D STC) cell technology that Fujitsu used in 1-Mbit DRAMs (Fujitsu was the first to do this), and the development of 1-Mbit and 4-Mbit DRAMs using the 3D STC technology. 3D STC technology is the key to cell area reduction enabling densities higher than 1-Mbit. This technology provides mass production capability and a high immunity to alpha-particle-induced soft errors. To respond to market demands for low power consumption, high speed, and high reliability, 1-Mbit DRAMs were designed using CMOS technology. A 4-Mbit DRAM having an access time of 56 ns and low power consumption of 175 mW was also developed.

UDC 621.3.049.774
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 318-327(1988)

Development of Sea of Gates

• Yoshiyuki Suehiro • Nobutake Matsumura • Gensuke Goto

Sea of gates was introduced as an LSI that can integrate circuits of system level including memory functions. With this new type of LSI, highly integrated and high-performance CMOS LSI of 30K to 160K gates have been successfully developed. The LSIs are fabricated with 1.0 μm or 1.2 μm CMOS triple-metal-layer process technology. An original basic cell structure makes it easy to construct both memories and random logic circuits on the LSI chip. Furthermore, the unique structure of an I/O buffer cell and the improvement in assembly technology realized multiple pins. Cavity-down packages of up to 401 pins were developed.

UDC 621.3.049.774:681.323
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 328-334(1988)

Development of Microcontroller: F^2MC

• Jyoji Murakami

The Fujitsu Flexible Microcontroller (F^2MC) has been developed to meet the market's need for a high-performance application specific controller. This microcontroller features high-speed (0.33 μs cycle time), efficient object code, and flexible design and can be applied to many areas.
The CPU architecture, design philosophy, and technology features of the CPU are described and various application products are shown.

UDC 621.3.049.774:681.323
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 335-344(1988)

Development of 32-Bit Microprocessor Family Products: G_{MICRO} F32

• Shosuke Mori • Koichi Fujita • Haruyasu Itoh

The technological trend toward higher integration and expanded functions of microprocessors has become increasingly important in the design of workstations and embedded controllers.
This paper outlines the G_{MICRO} F32 and key technologies for its development.

UDC 621.383.5:621.391.6
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 345-358(1988)

Lightwave Semiconductor Devices

• Haruo Yonetani • Akira Fukushima • Keiji Satoh

Lightwave semiconductor devices are one of the keys to building lightwave communication systems. In this paper Fujitsu lightwave semiconductor devices now being produced, are reviewed according to individual device characteristics and system applications.

UDC 621.382.3:621.396.6.029.6
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 359-371(1988)

Microwave Semiconductor Devices

• Kiyofumi Ohta • Kenji Yano • Yutaka Hirano

This report describes the state-of-the-art Fujitsu microwave semiconductors. The important parameters of GaAs power FETs are efficiency, linearity and reliability. The design philosophy for these parameters and performance are discussed. Low noise performance of HEMTs has been demonstrated and a new 1/4 μm gate HEMT has been developed having a 0.58 dB noise figure and 12.35 dB of associated gain at 12 GHz. MMICs have high potential for wide band, small size, and lightweight equipment. GaAs FET modules and amplifiers are also described as examples of actual applications.

UDC 621.315.5:620.187
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 372-378(1988)

Characterization of Compound Semiconductor Materials by Transmission and Reflection Electron Microscopy

• Itsuo Umebu

The interface structures of the GaAs/AlAs superlattice were analyzed by Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) with the help of computer simulation. The bright spot arrays which appear on the uppermost AlAs layer are shown to be a good indicator for this analysis. Atomic layer steps occur at intervals of 3-10 nm. The surfaces of MBE-grown GaAs layers were analyzed in detail with Reflection Electron Microscopy (REM). The surfaces consist of undulations and small steps. Anisotropic surface roughness may be due to anisotropic Ga surface diffusion. Atomic ordering in InGaP mixed crystals was analyzed by cross-section TEM, and a crystal model with double periodicity is proposed.

UDC 621.3.049.774.3:621.7.04
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 379-383(1988)

Ultra High-Speed Bipolar Process Technology: ESPER

• Tatsuya Deguchi • Hiroshi Goto

This paper describes an ultra high-speed bipolar process technology using en Emitter-base Self-aligned structure with Polysilicon Electrodes and Resistors (ESPERs). This structure, combined with trench isolation, drastically reduces parasitic capacitances and resistances, realizing a sub-40 ps ECL circuit and high-performance bipolar devices.

UDC 621.3.049.774
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 384-390(1988)

High-Speed BiCMOS Technology with Polysilicon Emitter Structure

• Hiroyuki Fukuma • Tsunenori Yamauchi • Yoshinori Okajima

This paper describes a high-speed BiCMOS technology which consists of bipolar process technology using polysilicon emitter and CMOS process technology using the 1.0 μm-rule.

The high-speed characteristics of the BiCMOS were obtained: The cutoff frequency (f_T) of the bipolar npn transistor was found to be 6 GHz with a propagation delay time (t_{pd}) for the CMOS gate of 0.5 ns. The high performance of the conventional bipolar device and CMOS device were also maintained.

The BiCMOS technology has been applied to fabricate a 2 000-gate gate array and a 256-Kbit SRAM. The results of these devices are also reported.

UDC 621.382.33:621.7.04
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 391-397(1988)

Characteristics of Si HBT with Hydrogenated Micro-Crystalline Si Emitter

• Hiroshi Fujioka • Kanetake Takasaki

An npn Si HBT has been fabricated using hydrogenated microcrystalline Si as a wide gap emitter. It shows much higher common emitter current gain than a conventional homo-junction transistor. The measured common emitter current gains of the fabricated HBTs having intrinsic base sheet resistance of 14 kΩ/□ and 95 Ω/□ are 1 500 and 18, respectively. The present HBT can perform normal operation even at liquid nitrogen temperature.

UDC 621.382.32:621.7.04
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 398-407(1988)

Application of EB-Lithography for Fabrication of Submicron-Gate-MOSFETs

• Shuzo Ohshio • Tetsuo Izawa

The characteristics and the proximity effect of resist in electron-beam direct-writing was studied to form submicron patterns. MOSFETs were obtained with an effective channel length down to about L_{eff} = 0.32 μm. The transistors fabricated using this technique operate well without punch-through. By evaluating the dispersion of many transistors, it was found that there is a strong possibility that devices with a minimum pattern size of 0.2-0.3 μm can be manufactured for practical use.

The influence of the electron-beam direct-writing on the reliability of devices was studied and it was confirmed that this method is sufficiently reliable when used for gate-electrode formation.

UDC 621.382.2:621.7.04
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 408-417(1988)

SOI-Device on Bonded Wafer

• Hiroshi Gotou • Yoshihiro Arimoto
• Masashi Ozeki • Kazunori Imaoka

The bonded wafer technique to fabricate SOI (Silicon On Insulator) devices has been extensively studied. This technique has been successfully applied to fabrication of a 64-Kbit SOI-DRAM, which exhibits a low soft error rate up to 1/7 that of conventional DRAMs, depending on the substrate thickness of the bonded wafer. It was found that the soft error depended on the base substrate bias voltage.

It is also shown that the bonded wafer technique can solve the latchup problem in CMOS, and is advantageous when used in the fabrication of SOI bipolar devices. Two new types of bipolar transistor are proposed.

UDC 621.3.049.774:621.7.04
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 418-431(1988)

Overview of Mask Technology

• Kimio Yanagida • Takao Furukawa • Takeo Kikuchi

Mask-making technology plays an important role in generating the patterns for devices used in semiconductor fabrication. Fujitsu recognizes the importance of this technology and has developed it from the early days of semiconductor fabrication.
This paper describes the mask-making technologies currently being used: data processing, exposure, process and inspection technology. This is followed by a discussion of the future trends in mask-making technology.

UDC 621.3.049.774.3
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 456-463(1988)

Bipolar Circuit Simulation System Using Two-Dimensional Device Simulator

• Shigeo Satoh • Hideki Oka • Noriaki Nakayama

To accurately estimate bipolar circuit performance, two circuit simulation systems using a two-dimensional device simulator have been developed and compared. One uses the table method and the other uses the direct method.
The direct method was found to be superior to the table method. Using the direct method, the propagation delay time of an ECL gate has been estimated and the influence of extrinsic elements and collector impurity concentration on delay time were investigated.

UDC 621.3.049.76
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 432-445(1988)

Packaging Technology for ASICs

• Michio Sono

The use of ASICs is rapidly progressing and expanding. ASIC packaging technologies are also enabling higher density, diversification, and customization. This review introduces the package line-up and ASIC packages currently offered by Fujitsu, then describes current technological problems and future trends.

UDC 621.3.049.76:681.323
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 464-468(1988)

Speed Tunable Finite State Machine Compiler: ZEPHCAD™

• Hitomi Sato • Yoshihide Sugiura • Masahiro Fujita

This report describes a personal computer based state machine compiler. This system transforms the finite state machine description, Boolean equations, or truth table into net lists of the CMOS gate array or standard cell.
A new feature of this system is the capability to tune the circuit speed from the user side by selecting the number of logic levels when running the system.
This report includes bench mark results.

UDC 621.3.049.774
FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 446-455(1988)

Reliability on Short-Channel MOSLSIs

• Ken Shono • Kenji Ishida • Nagao Yamada

This paper describes the reliability problems associated with the scaling down of MOSLSI. Because the power supply voltage is not scaled, the internal electric field increases, causing reliability problems such as degradation of MOSFET due to hot carrier generation and electric breakdown of the gate oxide. Furthermore, the high-speed operation and narrow metalization width requires the current density to increase, which reduces the interconnection reliability.
These problems can be overcome by improving the device structure and fabrication technology.

Preface to the Special Issue on Semiconductors

● **Hiroyuki Ino** General Manager of Semiconductor Group

Due to remarkable developments in the electronics technology, modern society continues to evolve and grow at a much higher speed than we previously expected. Electronics products are now widely used in our daily lives at work and at home. Present society has thus become highly information oriented, which in turn has stimulated industries to expand even more. Needless to say, the semiconductor technology is the basic technology supporting this information oriented society and these industrial developments.

Fujitsu quickly recognized the importance of semiconductor technology at an early time and thus started its research and development in as early as 1950's. Since then the semiconductor development at Fujitsu has formed one of the three major business areas of the company together with those of computer and communication. As a consequence, the semiconductor technology at Fujitsu has grown to become the key to Fujitsu's high-quality electronics products. For example, the 100 gates ECL gate array developed in 1973 enabled realization of a full scale LSI computer for the first time in the world. Since then Fujitsu semiconductor technology has made it possible to develop a series of computers with steadily increased performance and scale. Then, after having accumulated technological improvements of this period, Fujitsu started full-scale supply of the semiconductor products to domestic market about 15 years ago, and then to overseas market about 10 years ago. We have now established customer support systems in North America, Asia and Europe by the three subsidiaries of FMI, FMP and FMG, respectively.

With this historical background, Fujitsu semiconductor technology has always progressed with the aim of producing most advanced devices of the time in terms of performance and scale of integration. Following the development of world's first bipolar gate array in 1970's, Fujitsu has continuously introduced high speed and large scale gate arrays. For example, in late 1970's we developed 400 gates ECL gate array that has the highest speed in the world at that time. Presently, ultra-high-speed gate arrays of 4 500 gates and 10 000 gates are in the products list. This year, a CMOS gate array of 100 000 gates was developed and distributed to the customers. With all of these, our gate arrays are favorably received by many international customers and have the No. 1 market position in the world. In addition, we now began commercial production of Standard Cell and has already developed 60 000 gates general purpose DSP.

Outstanding achievements have also been made in the field of memory. For example, in 1978 Fujitsu was the first in the world to commercially produce a 64 Kbit DRAM, and now we are developing a 16 Mbit DRAM following the shipment of the 4 Mbit DRAM. Also in the begining of 1980's an ECL DRAM with world fastest access time of 5 ns was developed, and presently a 256 Kbit ECL RAM made by BiCMOS technology is supplied to the market.

Fujitsu microprocessor has new family of 32-bit in addition to 4-bit, and 8- and 16-bit microprocessor families. Two types of the new families are developed and introduced to the market, one is the G_{MICRO} series based on the TRON architechture and the other is SPARC series based on an ultra high speed architechture (RISC).

Fujitsu compound semiconductor also have No. 1 or 2 market share in the field of microwave and optical communication applications. Our activities in this area range from those of basic research to application technology. This has resulted in great developments in new compound semiconductor products, and has led to Fujitsu's invention of the HEMT and the RHET.

Although Fujitsu always aims to develop devices of the most advanced level, we believe that achieving high reliability of the device is even more important. As the scale of devices increases and their functions become more complex, high reliability becomes extremely important. This concept forms one of the important policies for the development of Fujitsu semiconductors.

This special issue has been published to introduce some of these Fujitsu semiconductor technologies to our international clients. It contains various articles from a wide range of technology fields. It includes in particular the latest device technology and process technology, and R and D results of advanced device technology. We hope that this issue will be useful in the designing electronic equipment and systems, and that it will assist future development plans.

Fujitsu will continuously endeavor to develop devices with high performance and high reliability at a low cost in order to meet the requirements of clients.

UDC 621.3.049.774.3

High-Speed Bipolar Logic IC

● Ken-ichi Ohno ● Hirofumi Takeda

(Manuscript received September 6, 1988)

Continuing advances in silicon technology have produced IC devices with increasingly high speed, high density, and low power dissipation.
This paper reviews the trends at Fujitsu in high-speed bipolar logic IC devices.
Methods suggested for improving the speed of ECL LSI devices are also outlined, and a 10K-gate ECL gate array of 100-ps and a 2.7 GHz prescaler are given as examples of advanced bipolar logic IC devices.

1. Introduction

Transistor-transistor logic (TTL) and emitter-coupled logic (ECL) are the main circuit types of bipolar logic ICs. Bi-CMOS, a combination of bipolar and CMOS circuits, will become widely used in the medium-speed regions between ECL and the higher-speed CMOS and TTL.

Due to their high-speed operation, ECL integrated circuits (ICs) are now used in high-performance systems such as super computers, general purpose mainframes, communications equipment, and LSI testers. These ICs are being targeted for use in other equipment, including super minicomputers and engineering work stations.

This paper focuses on the trends in ECL high-speed bipolar ICs and introduces the ECL technology developed at Fujitsu.

2. History of Development at Fujitsu

2.1 High-speed bipolar logic IC applications[1), 2)]

Table 1 outlines the 20 years of development of high-speed bipolar logic ICs at Fujitsu.

Fujitsu's first ECL prototype was developed over 20 years ago. The MB700 series of ECL ICs went into mass production in 1970.

The 126-gate gate array developed in 1970 is the original gate array configuration. The circuit type was non-threshold logic (NTL). ECL standard ICs of 2 ns and 126-gate NTL gate arrays were used in the FACOM 230-75, Fujitsu's highest performance computer at the time.

The 100-gate ECL gate array[3)] was developed in 1973. This was the first real gate array and was named the MB11K series. This array was used for the first all-LSI computer, the FACOM M-190.

ECL gate arrays have been used in top-of-the-line computers since 1973. For example, the 400-gate ECL (MB12K)[4)] is used in the FACOM M-380. The 3K-gate ECL (MB38K), and 1.2K-gate ECL with 16K-bit RAM (MB77K) are used in the FACOM M-780[5)].

We developed the ET series (ET3000 and ET4500) in 1986 for the general market.

This series was based on the ECL gate array technology developed for the computers mentioned above and on the original general-purpose gate array (MB33K). The original ET is a typical general-purpose ECL gate array with mixed ECL and TTL I/O interface levels. The ETM series (ET2009M and ET3004M) developed in 1987 is an ET with ECL RAM on a single chip. The ETH series (ET10000H)[6)] developed in 1988 is a higher-speed ET.

In addition to these gate arrays, high-performance prescalers were developed using silicon ECL technology[7)].

2.2 Trends in high-speed bipolar logic ICs.

Figure 1 shows the trends in basic propagation delay time (T_{pd}) for the Fujitsu products

Table 1. Development of high-speed bipolar logic ICs at Fujitsu

Years	Standard IC family	Gate arrays and gate masterslices	Others (e.g. ASSP)
1969	2 ns ECL (MB700)		
1970	1 ns ECL (MB800)	126-gate NTL (MB9200)	
1972	2 ns ECL (MB10K)		
1973		100-gate ECL (MB11K)	
1975	0.5 ns ECL (MB810)		
1978		400-gate ECL (MB12K)	
1982			1 GHz prescaler (MB501)
1983		1K-gate ECL (MB33K)	
1984		3K-gate ECL (MB38K)	1.1 GHz prescaler (MB501L)[7]
		1.2K-gate ECL with RAM (MB77K)	
1985			1.6 GHz prescaler (MB505)
1986		3K-gate ECL (ET3000)	2.4 GHz prescaler (MB506)
		4.5K-gate ECL (ET4500)	
1987	0.15 ns ECL (MB880)	2K-gate ECL with RAM (ET2009M)	
		3K-gate ECL with RAM (ET3004M)	
		1 Gbit/s ECL gate masterslice (E32)	
1988		10K-gate ECL (ET10000H)	1.1 GHz prescaler with PLL (MB1501)
		2.5 Gbit/s gate masterslice (E128H)	2.7 GHz prescaler (MB510)

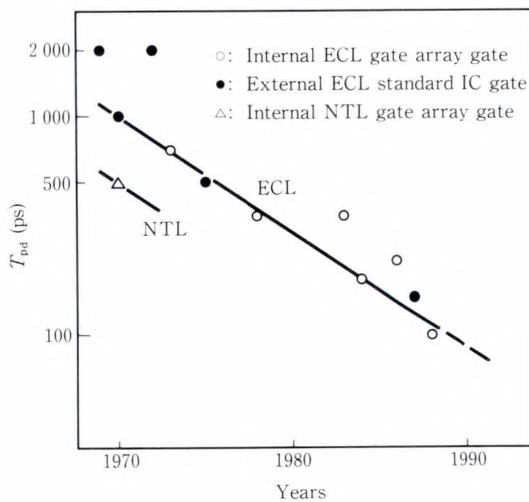


Fig. 1—Trends in basic propagation delay time (T_{pd}).

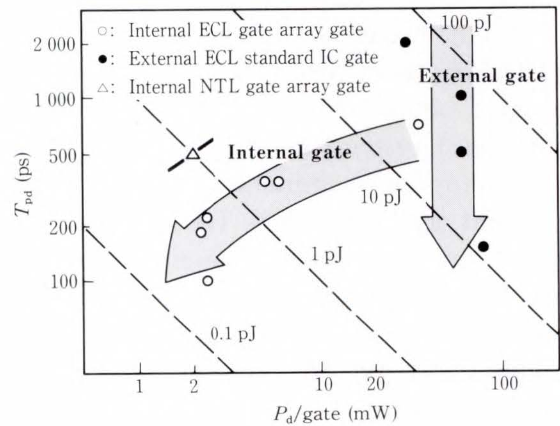


Fig. 2—T_{pd} vs. P_d per gate.

listed in Table 1. As shown in Fig. 1, ECL technology is making steady progress in improving propagation delay time. In 1987[8], 40 ps ECL samples were obtained experimentally; this strengthened this trend.

The T_{pd} per gate depends on the circuit's power dissipation (P_d). The relation between the T_{pd} and P_d of the devices in Fig. 1 is shown in Fig. 2. Figure 2 also shows the trends of these two features in internal gates and external gates of ECL ICs. Progress is being made towards higher speed and lower power dissipation internal gates. For external gates, progress is being made towards higher speed only.

High-density devices with high gate counts per chip are effective in systems that require high speed, low cost, small size, and high reliability. Figure 3 shows that the gate counts per chip for the above ECL gate arrays are increasing steadily at about 40 percent a year.

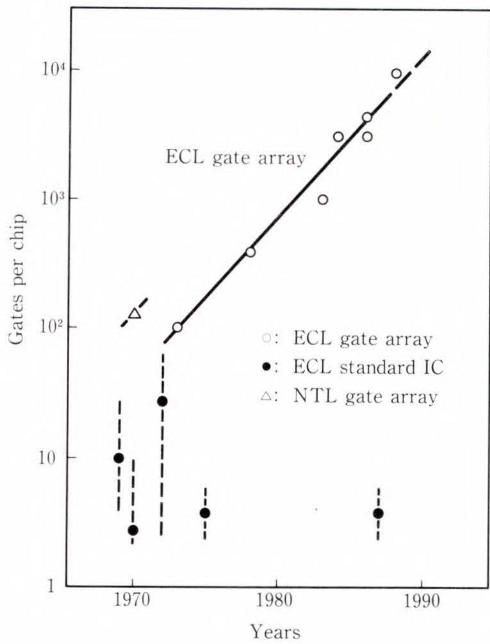
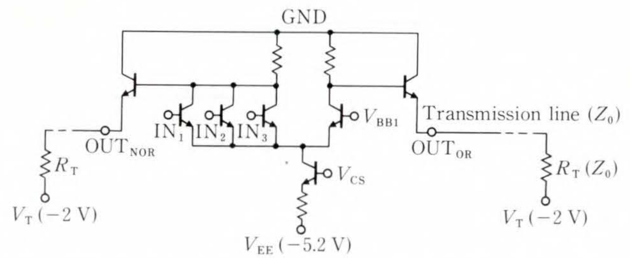
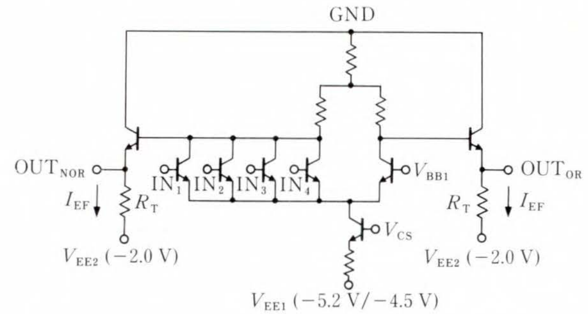


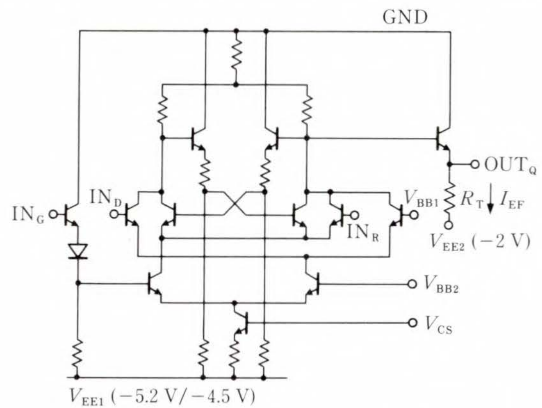
Fig. 3—Trends in gate counts.



a) External basic ECL gate (3-input OR/NOR gate)



b) Internal basic ECL gate (4-input OR/NOR gate)



c) Internal series gate ECL (D-latch with reset)

Fig. 4—Examples of ECL circuits.

3. Speed Improvements in ECL LSI

3.1 ECL circuits

Figure 4 shows three examples of ECL circuits. An ECL circuit consists of a current switch, an emitter follower, and a common circuit to generate bias voltages. The main advantages of the ECL circuit are high-speed operation and strong logic functions.

Figure 4a) shows an example of an external basic gate used for an output gate terminated outside the chip. The external gate has a high-power dissipation of more than 20 mW per gate because it drives a low-resistance terminator equal to the transmission line impedance.

Figure 4b) shows an example of an internal basic gate with the same threshold voltage and lower signal voltage swing as the external gate. The internal gate is terminated by a high-value on-chip resistor. Low power dissipation can thus be selected based on the T_{pd} required and on the water process technology used.

A series-gate ECL circuit can implement complex logic functions such as a D-latch with reset as shown in Fig. 4c).

Table 2 lists examples of typical signal voltages for the external ECL and internal ECL gates of Fig. 4.

Table 2. Examples of typical signal voltages for ECL in Fig. 4.

Voltage	Gate	
	External (V)	Internal (V)
High-level output (V_{OH})	−0.85	−1.05
Low-level output (V_{OL})	−1.75	−1.55
Input threshold (V_{TH})	−1.3	−1.3

3.2 Major factors in basic propagation delay time

Table 3 lists the major electrical factors affecting internal basic delay. The factors are

Table 3. Major factors affecting ECL circuit propagation delay time

Factors			Symbol
Circuit	Circuit configuration		
	Power dissipation (Circuit current)		P_D
	Signal voltage swing		V_s
Device	Transistor	Cutoff frequency	f_t
		E-B junction capacitance	C_{EB}
		C-B junction capacitance	C_{CB}
		C-I junction capacitance	C_{CI}
		Base resistance	R_B
	Resistor	Stray capacitance	C_R
	Meta	Stray capacitance	C_M
		Metal resistance	R_M

E: Emitter B: Base C: Collector I: Isolation

classified into those of circuit design and device technology.

Circuit design is mainly affected by circuit configuration, power dissipation, and signal amplitude. Faster speed can normally be gained by a higher power dissipation and smaller signal amplitude.

To improve the speed, the cutoff frequency (f_t) must be increased and the junction capacitance, base resistance of the transistor, and stray capacitance of the resistors must be decreased. To do this, Fujitsu has developed a fine pattern process and improved device structures such as the oxide surrounded transistor (OST)[4], U-grooved isolation with thick field oxide (U-FOX)[9], and emitter-base self-aligned structure with polysilicon electrodes and resistors (ESPER)[8].

The high-speed bipolar wafer process technology is discussed separately in this issue[10].

3.3 Main load delay factors

The real gate delay of a chip consists of the basic delay and load delay. The main load delay in ECL LSI is the propagation delay time through wires connecting gates on the chip. This load delay depends on: the drivability of the driver gates, the wiring line capacitance, and wiring line resistance of connections from the driver gate to the receiver gates on the chip.

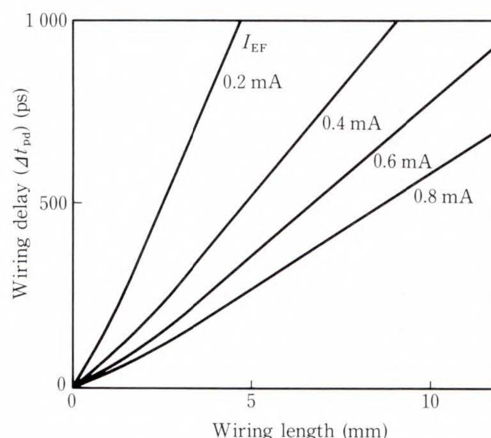


Fig. 5—Propagation delay time vs. wiring length in ET10000H internal gate.

Due to progress made in shortening the basic delay and increasing chip density, the wiring delay has become relatively longer as compared to the basic delay. An example of the wiring delay is given in Sec. 4.1.

4. Examples of advanced bipolar logic IC devices

4.1 100 ps ECL gate array (ET10000H)

A 100 ps 10K-gate ECL gate array with mixed ECL and TTL interface levels was developed for the general market in 1988[6].

The internal basic gate is a 4-input OR/NOR gate. Complex logic functions are realized by using a series-gate circuit. The sample circuits are the same as those of Fig. 4. To increase and adjust the drivability of the internal gate, four types of emitter follower current (I_{EF}) are selected by changing the resistance of R_T, shown in Figs. 4b) and 4c).

Figure 5 shows the variations of the delay due to chip wiring line length in this device (ET10000H). The basic T_{pd} is 100 ps, the average T_{pd} with 3 mm wiring, 3-fan in (F/I), and 3-fan out (F/O) is about 300 ps at an emitter follower current of 0.8 mA.

The wafer process technology used for the ET10000H is the ESPER[8] process. This process realizes an emitter width of 0.5 μm and three-layer metallization.

Figure 6 shows the 13 mm x 13 mm chip.

The chip is mounted on a 208-pin pin grid

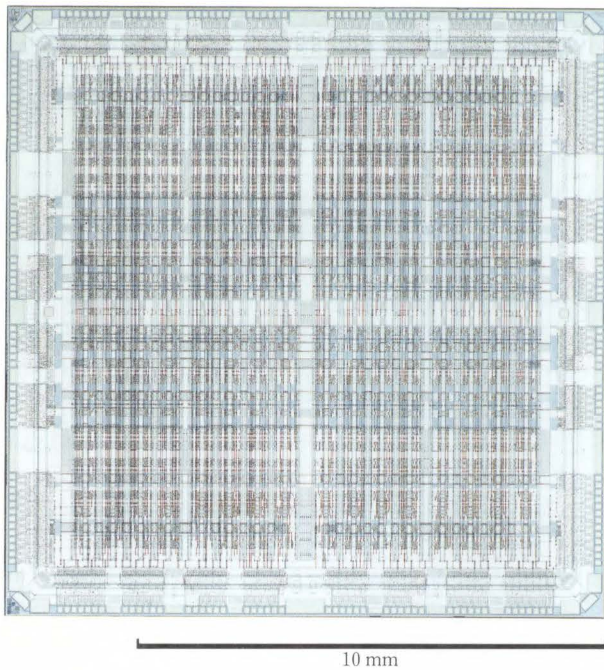


Fig. 6–ET10000H chip (13 mm□).

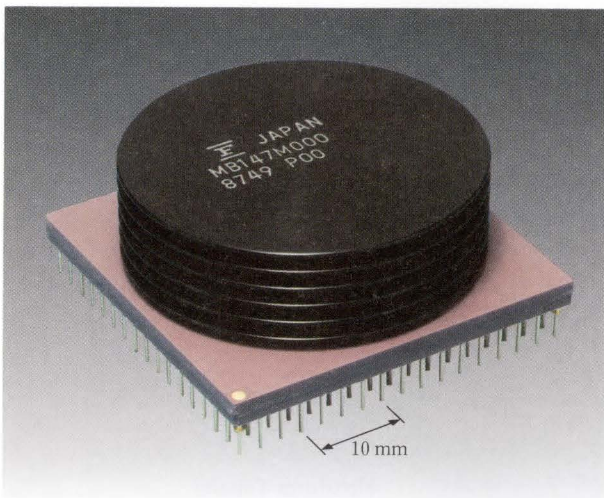


Fig. 7–PGA208-packaged ET10000H.

array package (PGA208) or a 260-pin quadruple flat package (QFP260). Figure 7 shows a PGA-208-packaged ET10000H. The chip has a power dissipation of 13 W and has a low thermal resistance of 2.4 °C/W in an air flow of 5 m/s.

A comprehensive computer aided design (CAD) program has been developed for the ET10000H. This enables devices to be laid out and fabricated after logic design with a short

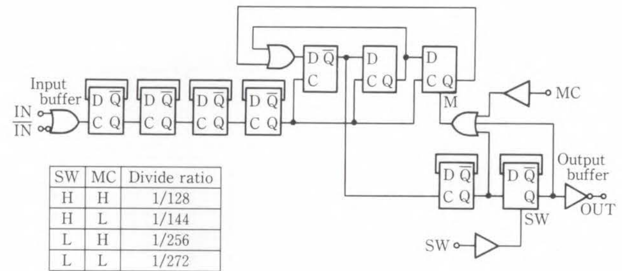


Fig. 8–MB510 prescaler logic block diagram.

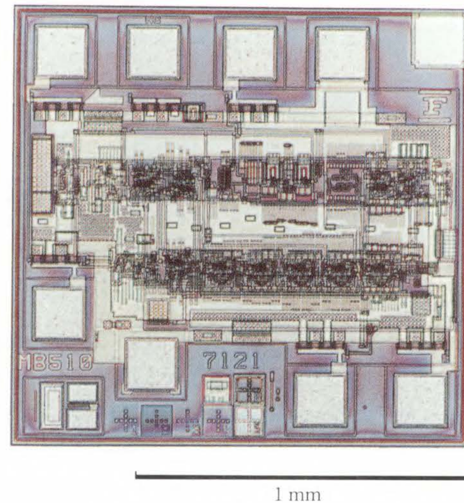


Fig. 9–MB510 prescaler chip (1.35 mm x 1.3 mm).

turnaround time and without errors.

4.2 2.7 GHz prescaler (MB510)

Fujitsu has developed a series of prescaler ICs by using the high-speed characteristics of bipolar ECL technology. The first gigahertz prescaler was the MB501 developed in 1982. This device was a 1 GHz prescaler with 150 mW per chip. A high level version of the MB501, the MB501L, with higher speed and lower power consumption was developed in 1984. This device was a 1.1 GHz prescaler operating up to 1.6 GHz at 50 mW per chip[7].

One of the newest prescalers is a 2.7 GHz model called the MB510. It was developed in 1988 and operates up to 2.7 GHz at 50 mW per chip. Some devices even operate at 3.6 GHz.

Figure 8 shows the logic block diagram of the MB510 prescaler. Each D flip-flop is formed by two series-gate ECL circuits, and Fig. 9 shows the 1.35 mm x 1.3 mm chip. The packages are

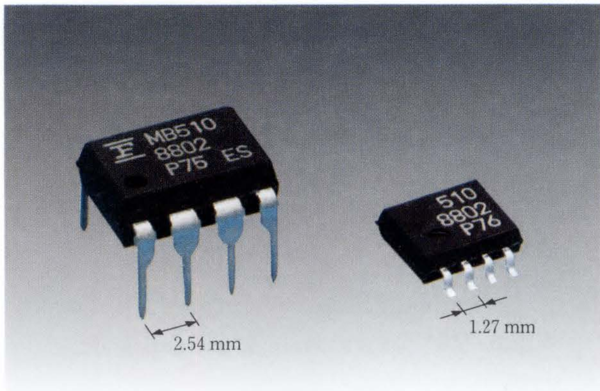


Fig. 10—MB510 prescaler packages.

8-pin DIPs and 8-pin small outline packages (SOP8), shown in Fig. 10.

5. Conclusion

Over the last 20 years Fujitsu has developed high-speed logic ICs (mainly ECL type) and continues to achieve higher speeds and densities.

Fujitsu has, and will continue to use its experience to develop and market high-performance ECL gate arrays, ECL gate masterslices, and gigahertz prescalers for high-speed computers and other equipment requiring high-speed devices.

References

1) Masunaga, H., Ashida, M., and Ishii, J.: Gate Array Technology. (in Japanese), *FUJITSU*, **36**, 4 (Special Issue: 50th Anniversary), pp. 334-345 (1985).
2) Takeda, H., Nakamura, K., and Tsuru, M.: ASIC Technologies. (in Japanese), *FUJITSU*, **39**, 3 (Special Issue: FUJITSU TECHNOLOGY '88), pp. 244-258 (1988).
3) Koike, Y. et al.: Circuit Elements and Memory Elements. (in Japanese), *FUJITSU*, **27**, 4 (Special Issue of FACOM M Series), pp. 675-684 (1976).
4) Ohno, K., Takeda, H., and Masunaga, H.: A 400-Gate ECL Gate Array: MB12K Series LSI. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **21**, 3 (Special Issue: Fiftieth Anniversary), pp. 330-336 (1985).
5) Ohno, K. et al.: Semiconductor Technologies for FACOM M-780. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **23**, 4 (Special Issue on Computer Systems), pp. 216-225 (1987).
6) Inoue, Y.: 100-ps ECL Gate Array ET10000H. (in Japanese), *NIKKEI MICRODEVICES*, **34**, 1988-04-01, pp. 122-123.
7) Suzuki, H., Akiyama, T., and Ueno, K.: A 1.6-GHz Low Power Silicon Dual Modulus Prescaler IC. IEDM Dig. Tech. Paper, 1984, pp. 682-684.
8) Ueno, K., Goto, H., Sugiyama, E., and Tsunoi, H.: A Sub-40-ps ECL Circuit with a Switching Current of 1.28 mA. IEDM Dig. Tech. Paper, 1987, pp. 371-374.
9) Goto, H. et al.: A New Isolation Technology for Bipolar VLSI Logic (10P-L). Symp. VLSI Technol. Dig. Tech. Paper, 1985, pp. 42-43.
10) Deguchi, T., and Goto, H.: Ultra High-Speed Bipolar Process Technology: ESPER. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **24**, 4 (Special Issue on Semiconductors), pp. 379-383 (1988).

Ken-ichi Ohno
Logic IC Design Dept.
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Kyoto University 1967
Master of Electronics Eng.
Kyoto University 1969
Specializing in Bipolar IC Design

Hirofumi Takeda
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronics Eng.
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1965
Master of Electronics Eng.
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1967
Specializing in Bipolar IC Design

UDC 621.3.049.771.14:621.382.3

Ultra-High-Speed HEMT LSI Technology

• Masayuki Abe • Takashi Mimura • Masaaki Kobayashi

(Manuscript received July 12, 1988)

High Electron Mobility Transistors (HEMTs) are very promising devices for ultra-high-speed LSI/VLSI because of the supermobility GaAs/AlGaAs heterojunction structure.
This paper discusses the current status and recent advances of HEMT technology for high-performance VLSI with a focus on materials, self-alignment device fabrication, and HEMT LSI implementations.
HEMTs have already been used to develop a high speed 16 kbit static RAM and a 4.1k-gate gate array.

1. Introduction

Eight years have now passed since the 1980 announcement of the High Electron Mobility Transistor (HEMT)[1]. HEMT technology has opened the door to new possibilities for ultra-high-speed large-scale integration (LSI)/very large-scale integration (VLSI) applications[2]. The evolution of high-speed HEMT integrated circuits (ICs) is the result of continuous progress in the utilization of supermobility in the GaAs/AlGaAs heterojunction structure. Electron mobility in the conventional GaAs metal semiconductor field-effect transistor (MESFET) channel with typical donor concentrations of around 10^{17} cm^{-3} ranges from 4 000 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ to 5 000 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ at room temperature. Because of ionized impurity scattering, the mobility in the channel at 77 K is not much higher than it is at room temperature. However, in undoped GaAs, electron mobility of 2 to 3×10^5 $cm/V \cdot s$ has been obtained at 77 K. The mobility of GaAs with feasibly high electron concentrations (i.e. feasible for device fabrication) was increased by using the modulation-doping techniques that were demonstrated in GaAs/AlGaAs superlattices[3]. The first application of these electron-mobility-enhanced phenomena to the new transistor approach was a high electron mobility transistor (HEMT). This device was based on modulation-doped GaAs/AlGaAs single heterojunction structure[1] and had a greatly improved 77 K channel mobility.

HEMT technology shows promise in ultra-high-speed LSI/VLSI applications[1),4)-6)]. Due to the supermobility GaAs/AlGaAs heterojunction structure, the HEMT is suitable for operation at liquid nitrogen temperature. In 1981 a HEMT ring oscillator with a gate length of 1.7 μm demonstrated a switching delay of 17.1 ps with a power dissipation of 0.96 mW per gate at 77 K. This indicated that switching delays below 10 ps are achievable with 1 μm gate devices[4]. Switching delays of 5.8 ps with a power dissipation of 1.76 mW per gate at 77 K and 10.2 ps with a power dissipation of 1.03 mW per gate at 300 K have been achieved with a 0.35 μm gate device[7]. Even at room temperature, a switching delay of 9.2 ps with 4.2 mW per gate has been obtained with a 0.28 μm gate device[8].

For LSI level complexity, HEMT technology has been used to develop a 4 kbit static RAM[9),10)], a 16 kbit static RAM[11] as a memory circuit, and a 4.1k-gate gate array with a 16×16-bit parallel multiplier[12] as a logic circuit. The 4 kbit static RAM has an address access time of 500 ps with a power dissipation of 5.7 W per chip. This device has ECL compatible levels[10]. The 16×16-bit parallel multiplier designed on a 4.1k-gate gate array has a multiply time of 4.1 ns with a power dissipation of 6.2 W. HEMT technology has already entered

the LSI/VLSI application field.

This paper first presents the performance advantages of HEMT approaches with a focus on scaled-down device structure in the submicron dimensional range. Next we will describe a HEMT technology for VLSIs including materials and self-alignment device fabrication technology. We will review the current status and recent advances in HEMT logic and memory LSI circuit implementation and project future HEMT VLSI prospects in ultra-high-speed computer applications.

2. Performance advantages of HEMT approaches

HEMT technology presents new opportunities for high-speed low-power LSI/VLSI. This section describes the principles of the HEMT and the HEMT performance when it is scaled-down to the submicron dimensional range.

2.1 HEMT principles

Figure 1 shows a cross-sectional view of the basic HEMT with a selectively doped GaAs/AlGaAs heterojunction structure. An undoped GaAs layer and an Si-doped n-type AlGaAs layer are successively grown by Molecular Beam Epitaxy (MBE) on a semi-insulating GaAs substrate. Because of the higher electron affinity of GaAs, free electrons in the AlGaAs layer move to the undoped GaAs layer and form a two-dimensional high-mobility electron gas within 10 nm of the interface.

As the temperature decreases, the electron mobility, which was about 8×10^3 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ at 300 K, increases dramatically and reaches 2×10^5 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ at 77 K due to reduced phonon scattering. A further increase with a considerable gradient occurs below 50 K. A maximum value of 1.5×10^6 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ in the dark and 2.5×10^6 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ under light illumination is attained at 4.2 K.

In HEMT structures, the AlGaAs layer heavily doped with donors like Si contains DX centers[13] that behave as electron traps at low temperatures. Certain anomalous behavior at low temperature is believed to be related to these traps. These phenomena include: distortion of drain I-V characteristics, an unexpected threshold voltage shift at low temperatures, and a highly sensitive and persistent photoconduction. We have found that the distortion of drain I-V characteristics is related to the type of device structure. To eliminate drain current collapse at low temperature, we have adopted a self-aligned gate structure as shown in Fig. 1. The n-AlGaAs layer is completely covered by the n-GaAs top layer. There are no exposed surfaces at the drain end of the gate. In the structure, high energy electrons can easily pass through the thin (30 nm) n-AlGaAs layer without being trapped and can reach the n-GaAs top layer; this eliminates the anomalous drain I-V characteristics at low temperature.

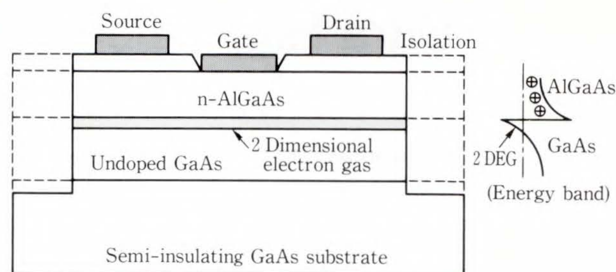


Fig. 1—Cross-sectional view of the basic structure of a HEMT with a selectively doped GaAs/AlGaAs heterostructure.

2.2 HEMT performance in the submicron dimensional range

HEMT has a performance advantage over conventional devices. This advantage comes from the superior electron dynamics of HEMT channels and the unique electrical properties of the HEMT structure. During switching, the speed of the device is limited by both low-field mobility and saturated drift velocity. A low-field mobility of 8 000 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ at 300 K and 40 000 $cm^2/V \cdot s$ at 77 K is routinely obtained. A saturated drift velocity of 1.5 to 1.9×10^7 cm/s in HEMT structures at room temperature has been reported. These superior transport properties of HEMT channels result in a high average current-gain-cutoff frequency f_T value.

The logic voltage swing of LSI circuits with low power dissipation should be minimized. A high transconductance g_m with a small logic

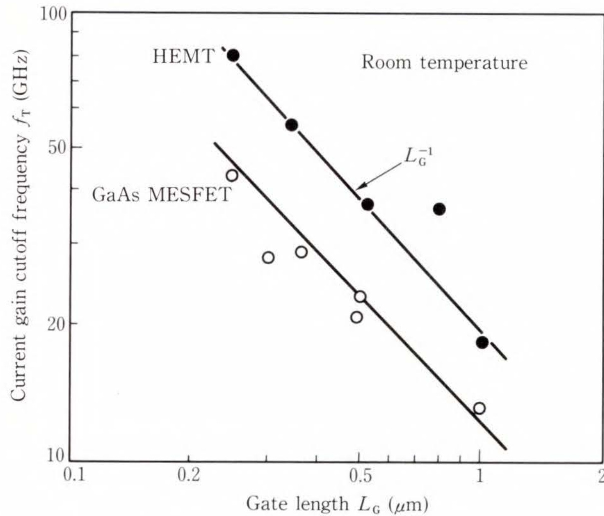


Fig. 2—Current-gain cutoff frequency vs. gate length of experimental HEMT and GaAs MESFET.

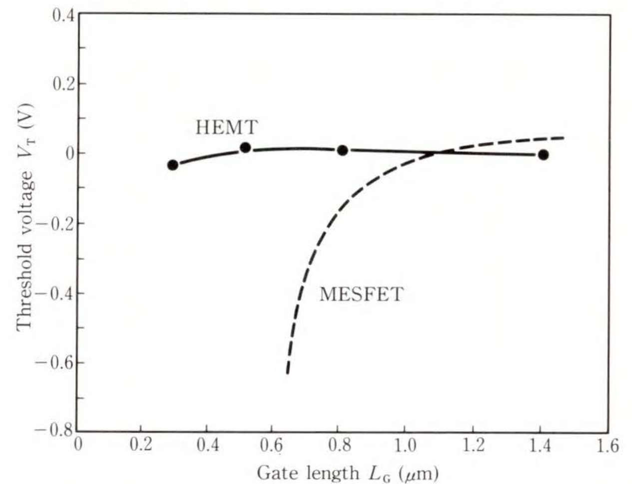


Fig. 3—Dependence of threshold voltage V_{TH} on gate length L_G for HEMT and GaAs MESFET.

voltage swing is achieved. The transconductance g_m in gradual channel approximation is given by $g_m = K (V_{GS} - V_T)$, where notations have their usual meanings. K is given by $K = (\epsilon \mu_n W_G / 2dL_G)$, where ϵ is the dielectric constant, μ_n the electron mobility, W_G the channel width, d the spacing between the gate and channel, and L_G is the gate length. The K value of a 0.5-μm-gate HEMT at 77 K is calculated to be 900 mA/V^2 per millimeter of gate width. This K value is about eight times higher than for conventional GaAs MESFETs. The smaller level of logic voltage swing requires more precisely controlled threshold voltages with a smaller standard deviation. State-of-the-art standard deviation of threshold voltage of enhancement mode HEMTs is 11 mW over a full 3-inch diameter wafer (described in the following section). This value indicates a controllability of less than two percent for a logic voltage swing of 0.8 V.

In Fig. 2, the current-gain cutoff frequency f_T versus gate length summarizes the typical performance of experimental HEMTs and GaAs MESFETs reported so far[14)-18)]. At room temperature, the values of f_T were 38 GHz[14)] and 80 GHz[16)] for HEMTs with gate lengths of 0.5 μm and 0.25 μm respectively and were about twice the values for GaAs MESFETs. No significant variation of threshold voltages with gate length was observed in the range from L_G = 1.4 μm to L_G = 0.28 μm[8)]. This horizontal sensitivity indicates that reducing the geometry of HEMTs increases performance without causing short-channel effect problems.

The short channel effect is one of the most serious problems of applying submicron FET devices to integrated circuits. However, the HEMT structure has the inherent advantage of reducing the short-channel effect. This is because the gate-to-channel capacitance can be increased by raising the doping concentration of the n-AlGaAs layer by using the modulation doping technique. This shields the drain fields without degrading the semiconductor mobility. This will enable easily-designable and stable current-voltage characteristics for gates in the submicron range. Figure 3 shows how the threshold voltage varies with gate length for HEMTs and self-aligned gate GaAs MESFETs[18)]. It can be seen that the threshold voltage variation of submicron gate HEMTs is much smaller than that of GaAs MESFETs. The variation of HEMTs is less than 30 mV when the gate length is varied from 1.4 μm to 0.28 μm. Therefore, existing HEMTs can potentially allow production of LSI designed with a 0.25 μm rule. To suppress the short-channel effect in the further scaled-down HEMT, the thickness of the AlGaAs

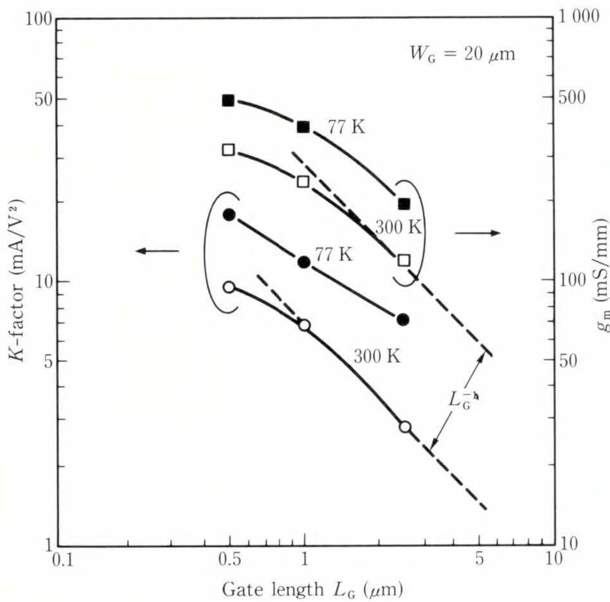


Fig. 4—Dependence of K-factor and tranconductance g_m of E-HEMTs on gate length L_G at 77 K and 300 K.

layer must be reduced to raise the aspect ratio (L_G/d). Even in this case, the electron mobility in the HEMT channel does not decrease with increasing doping concentration in the thinned AlGaAs layer. This is because electrons in the channel are spatially isolated from the doped AlGaAs layer.

Figure 4 shows the dependence of the K-factor and transconductance g_m of E-HEMTs on gate length at 77 K and 300 K. Dashed lines show the ${L_G}^{-1}$ dependence of the K-factor and g_m expected from the gradual channel approximation. Below a gate length of 1 μm at 300 K, the K-factor and g_m deviate from the ${L_G}^{-1}$ dependence. Velocity saturation effect and parasitic source resistances probably play a significant role in these results. The 0.5 μm gate E-HEMT at 300 K has a g_m of 330 mS/mm with large enough noise margins to allow stable LSI operation.

3. HEMT technology for VLSI

The development of high-performance VLSI requires new technological breakthroughs. This section describes the state-of-the-art HEMT technology including materials and the self-alignment-device fabrication technologies.

3.1 Material technology for HEMT fabrication

To grow high-quality material by MBE, we optimized the buffer layer between the semi-insulating GaAs substrate and the two-dimensional electron-gas channel layer. The thickness of this layer is 0.6 μm. The electron mobility in this optimized heterostructure was 8×10^3 cm²/V·s at 300 K. This increases to 1.2×10^5 cm²/V·s at 77 K due to reduced phonon scattering[19].

The surface defect problem of MBE is a serious one at the LSI-level of complexity[20]. The surface irregularities are called oval defects. The oval defects are typically from less than a micrometer to several micrometers in size, and are comparable in size to LSI devices in circuit. These oval defects seriously affect the current-voltage characteristics of HEMTs[21]. We have already achieved a density of less than 10 cm^{-2} with a size of over 20 μm² by optimizing the growth conditions. This is required to develop an LSI with 10k-gate logic and 64 kbit static RAM circuits.

An important aspect of HEMT LSI fabrication is the achievement of highly uniform epitaxial wafer growth with high throughput and large size. We optimized the geometrical configurations between source and substrate in the molecular beam epitaxy (MBE) system and optimized the growth conditions for highly uniform epitaxial layers on a 3-inch diameter semi-insulating GaAs substrate. These optimizations resulted in a high throughput and high quality. Selectively doped GaAs/n-AlGaAs heterostructures were grown on semi-insulating GaAs substrates mounted on a subtrate holder with a diameter of 190 mm[22]. The substrate temperature during growth was held at 660 °C. To control the threshold voltage of HEMT characteristics a uniformity of ±1% for the thickness and the carrier concentration of the AlGaAs layer is required.

The epitaxial growth of LSI quality material with AlGaAs/GaAs heterostructure has also been achieved using atmospheric pressure OMVPE technology. To achieve the highly

uniform material characteristics required for LSI fabrication, three multi-wafer growth was performed using an rf-heated graphite suscepter. The stage of suscepter and each wafer rotate simultaneously[23)]. The stage rotates at 8 rpm and the wafers rotate at 20 rpm. The Cr-doped GaAs substrates were oriented 2.5° off the (100) towards the <110>. The source materials used in the hydrogen carrier were trimethylgallium (TMG), trimethylaluminum (TMA), AsH_3, and Si_2H_6.

The growth temperature was 600 °C. The growth rate of GaAs was 58 nm/min, and the growth rate of $Al_{0.28}Ga_{0.72}As$ was 21 nm/min. To achieve abrupt interfaces, the composition of the source gas was changed instantaneously by the "vent/run" method. The uniformity of the thickness and carrier concentration of the n-AlGaAs film across a two-inch wafer was better than ±2.0% and ±1.5% respectively. The sheet carrier concentration was 1.1×10^{12} cm^{-2} and the electron mobility was 6 400 $cm^2/V{\cdot}s$ at 300 K for an AlGaAs/GaAs selectively doped heterostructure with a 2.5 nm spacer. At 77 K the sheet carrier concentration was 9.3×10^{11} cm^{-2} and the electron mobility was 46 000 $cm^2/V{\cdot}s$. Increasing the spacer thickness to 7.5 nm increased the electron mobility at 77 K to 90 000 $cm^2/V{\cdot}s$. To check the quality of wafers grown by this system, we used them to fabricate HEMT inverters with E-HEMTs and D-HEMTs. The standard deviations of threshold voltages across a two-inch wafer were 23 mV for E-HEMTs and 35 mV for D-HEMTs. The transconductance was 250 mS/mm and the current-gain cutoff frequency was 23 GHz for an OMVPE-grown HEMT with a gate length of 0.8 μm. These values compare favorably with those of an MBE-grown HEMT.

3.2 Self-alignment device fabrication technology

Figure 5 shows a cross-sectional view of a typical self-aligned structure of enhancement-mode (E) and depletion-mode (D) HEMTs. The structure forms an inverter for a DCFL circuit configuration[24)].

The basic epilayer structure consists of a 600 nm undoped GaAs layer, a 30 nm $Al_{0.3}Ga_{0.7}As$ layer doped with Si to 2×10^{18} cm^{-3}, and a 70 nm GaAs top layer grown successively on a semi-insulating substrate by MBE. The low-field electron mobility was found from Hall measurements and was 7 200 $cm^2/V{\cdot}s$ at 300 K and 38 000 $cm^2/V{\cdot}s$ at 77 K. The concentration of the two-dimensional electron gas (2DEG) was 1.0×10^{12} cm^{-2} at 300 K and 8.2×10^{11} cm^{-2} at 77 K. The AlAs mole fraction was 0.3. It can be expected that higher AlAs mole fractions will increase the maximum achievable concentration of 2DEG and will therefore result in an increase in transconductance of HEMTs. However, $Al_xGa_{1-x}As$ with a high AlAs mole fraction exhibits inferior surface morphology and an increase in deep traps, making device fabrication difficult. A thin $Al_{0.3}Ga_{0.7}As$ layer acting as a stopper against selective dry etching is embedded in the top GaAs layer to fabricate E- and D-HEMTs on the same wafer. By a dopting this new device structure, we can apply the selective dry etching of GaAs to AlGaAs and achieve precise control of the gate recessing process for E- and D-HEMTs.

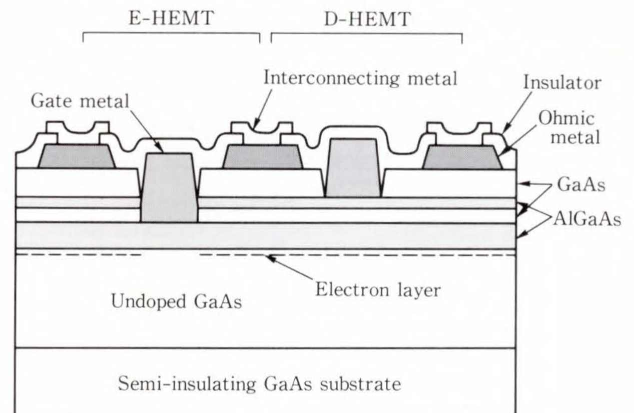


Fig. 5—Cross-sectional view of a typical self-aligned structure of E- and D-HEMTs forming an inverter for DCFL circuit configuration.

Figure 6 shows the self-aligned gate process used in the fabrication of E- and D-HEMTs forming an inverter for a DCFL circuit configuration. First of all, the active region is isolated by implanted oxygen at 130 keV to a dose of

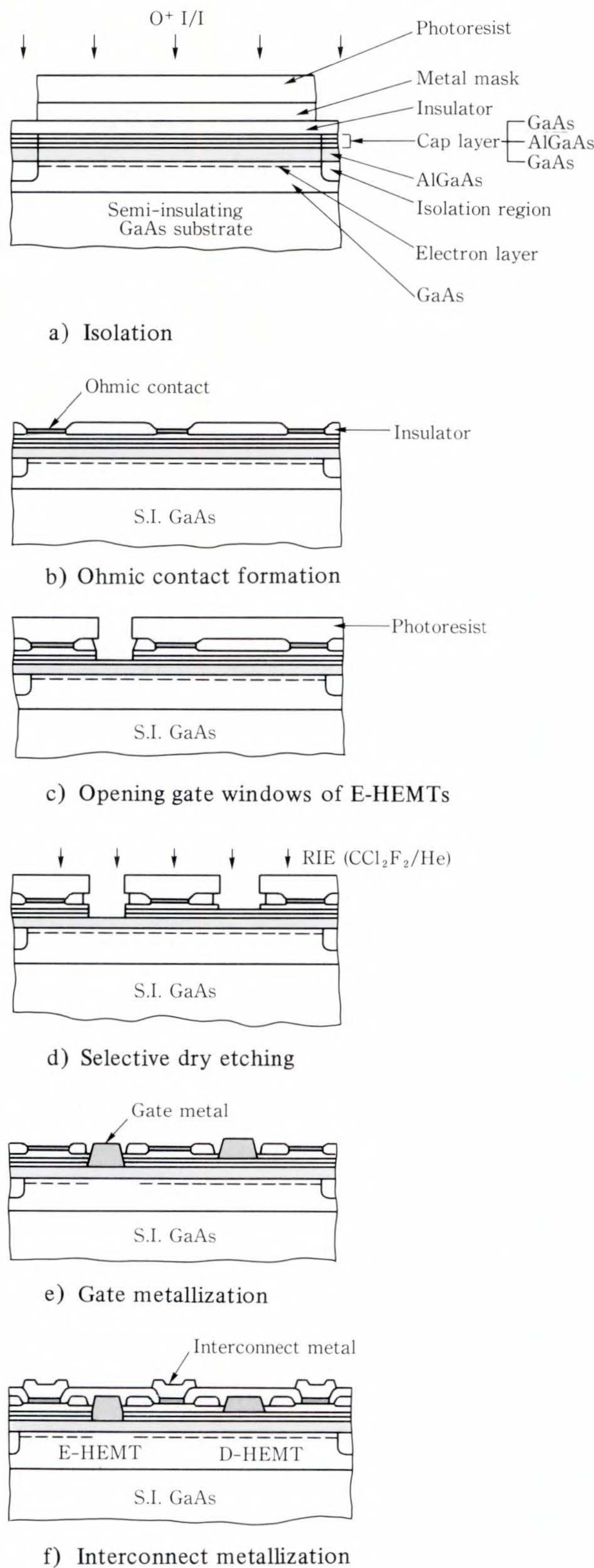


Fig. 6—Basic processing steps for HEMT LSI.

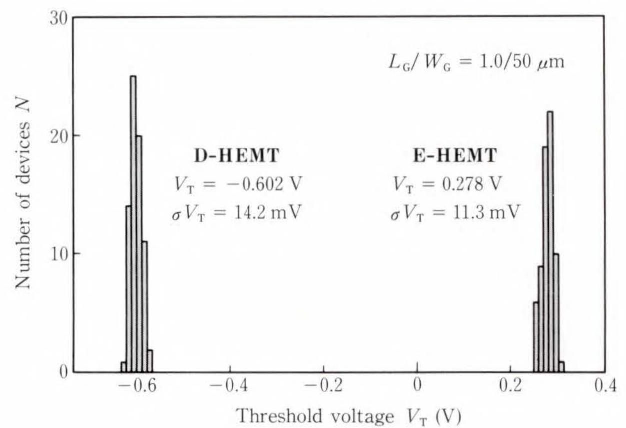


Fig. 7—Histograms of threshold voltages for D-HEMTs and E-HEMTs over a full 3-inch diameter wafer.

10^{12} cm^{-2}. This makes a planar structure. The source and drain for the E- and D-HEMTs are metalized with AuGa/Au to form ohmic contacts. Next, fine gate patterns are formed for E-HEMTs and the top GaAs layer and thin $Al_{0.3}Ga_{0.7}As$ stopper are etched off by non-selective chemical etching. Using the same resist after the formation of gate patterns for D-HEMTs, selective dry etching is performed to remove the top GaAs layer for D-HEMTs and to remove the GaAs layer under the thin $Al_{0.3}Ga_{0.7}As$ stopper for E-HEMTs. Next, Schottky contacts for the E- and D-HEMT gates are made by depositing Al; the Schottky gate contacts and GaAs top layer for ohmic contact are self-aligned for high-speed performance. Finally, Ti/Pt/Au electrical connections from the interconnecting metal to the device terminals are made through contact holes etched in a crossover SiON insulator film deposited by plasma-enhanced CVD.

This method combines a unique epistructure with self-terminating selective dry recess etching to enable simultaneous fabrication of super-uniform E- and D-HEMTs with the uniformity of MBE-grown epitaxial films. The key technique for stable fabrication of self-aligned gate HEMTs is the selective dry etching of the GaAs/AlGaAs layer. Etching characteristics of CCl_2F_2 + He discharges achieved a selectivity ratio of more than 260. The etching rate of $Al_{0.3}Ga_{0.7}As$ is as low as 2 nm/min (the rate for

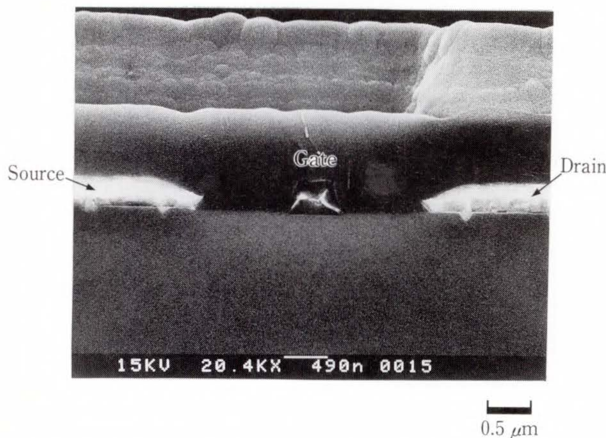


Fig. 8—Cross sectional SEM microphotograph of a HEMT with a gate length of 0.5 μm.

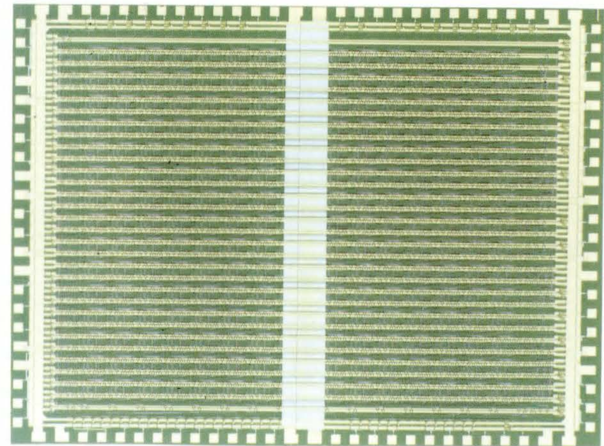


Fig. 9—Microphotograph of a HEMT 4.1k-gate gate array. The array measures 4.8 x 6.3 mm^2 and contains 17 692 E- and D-HEMTs.

GaAs is about 520 nm/min). Figure 7 shows a histograms of threshold uniformities for E- and D-HEMTs over a full 3-inch diameter wafer. The standard deviations of threshold voltages are 11 mV for E-HEMTs and 14 mV for D-HEMTs. The ratio of the standard deviation of threshold voltage (11 mV) to the logic voltage swing (0.8 V for DCFL) is 1.5 percent. This indicates excellent controllability of MBE growth and the LSI fabrication process. This strongly recommends these technologies for fabrication of ICs with LSI/VLSI-level complexities. The vertical threshold sensitivity is calculated to be 70 mV/nm[24] at a V_T of 0.13 V and a carrier concentration of 2×10^{18} cm^{-3}. As shown in Fig. 7, the deviation in threshold voltage over the wafer for the E-HEMT is 60 mV at a V_T of 0.28 V. This corresponds to a thickness deviation of only 1 nm over a 3-inch wafer, indicating excellent controllability of MBE growth and the device fabrication process. Figure 8 shows a cross sectional SEM microphotograph of a HEMT with a gate length of 0.5 μm.

4. HEMT LSI circuit implementations

This section reviews and discusses the current implementations and recent advances in HEMT logic and memory LSI circuits.

4.1 Logic circuits

A HEMT 4.1k-gate gate array with E/D type DCFL circuits was designed and fabricated for use in logic circuits.

Figure 9 shows a microphotograph of a 4.1k-gate gate array[12]. This gate array consists of 156 I/O cells and 4 096 basic cells. The basic cell includes one depletion mode D-HEMT and three enhancement mode E-HEMTs with a gate length of 0.8 μm. It can be programmed as a 3-input NOR gate. The cell is 37.5 μm x 45 μm. The gate array consists of 32 columns with 128 cells in each column. Between the columns there are 15 interconnection tracks, each track is 2 μm wide with a 2 μm spacing. The chip of this gate array has 100 pads; 72 for I/O signals, and 28 for power supply. To obtain a sufficient noise margin, the V_{DD} voltage drop and GND voltage rise has been minimized by careful arrangement of the power supply pads. Therefore the chip has a relatively large number of power supply pads. The chip measures 6.3 mm x 4.8 mm and contains 17 692 devices. The average delay time is 27 ps for the inverter and 40 ps for the basic gate. The difference between the two values is due to crossover capacitance between the gate electrode and power supply lines. The basic gates are covered with power supply lines in order to make the array more compact.

The 4.1k-gate gate array uses a 16 x 16 bit parallel multiplier as a test vehicle. The 16 x 16 bit multiplier uses 98 percent of this array and consists of: registers for a 16 x 16 bit

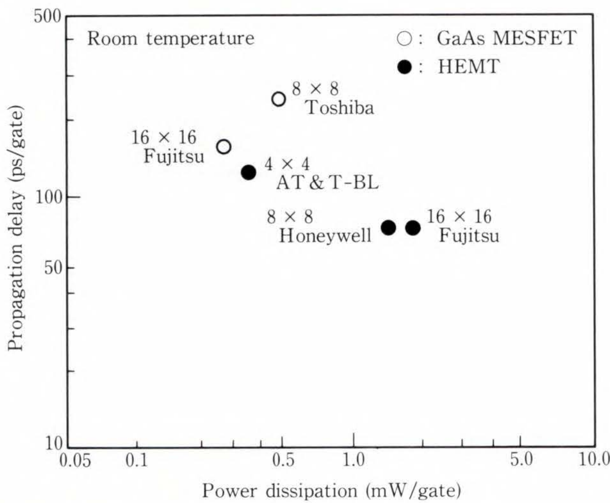


Fig. 10—Comparison of recent GaAs MESFET and HEMT multiplier gate propagation delays as a function of gate power dissipation.

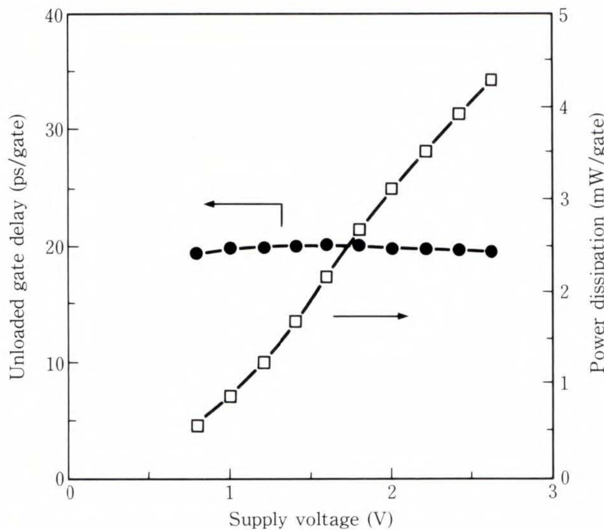


Fig. 11—Basic unloaded propagation delay time and power dissipation as a function of supply voltage.

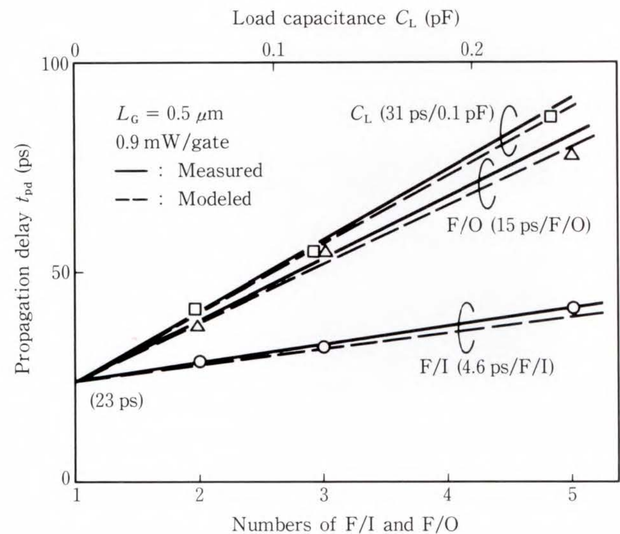


Fig. 12—Propagation delay time of a DCFL gate circuit as a function of loading conditions.

multiplier, 15 half-adders, 210 full-adders, and a carry look ahead circuit. A multiplication time of 4.1 ns at 300 K, including a 5-stage I/O buffer delay, was achieved with a supply voltage V_{DD} of 1.1 V and a total chip power dissipation of 6.2 W. This is the fastest multiplication time ever reported for a 16 x 16 bit parallel multiplier. From a simulation using a SPICE II program, we confirmed that, with a fan-out of 2.6 and a 363 μm interconnection line, the multiplication time was about 49 times the typical gate delay of 80 ps. This simulation gave an I/O buffer delay of about eight percent of the multiplication time. The intrinsic multiplication time was 3.8 ns. Figure 10 compares the gate delay and the power dissipation of the state-of-the-art GaAs MESFET[25), 26)] and HEMT multipliers[12), 27)-30)].

Performance of the half-micron HEMT DCFL gates was measured by using different types of ring oscillators. The basic propagation delay time t_{pd0} was 22.5 ps with a power dissipation of 3.9 mW/gate and a supply voltage V_{DD} of 2 V. The standard deviation of t_{pd0} was 1.0 ps over an area of 30 mm x 30 mm. The noise margins of the basic inverters were 220 mV (N_{ML}) and 280 mV (N_{MN}). Figure 11 shows the dependences of t_{pd} as a function of the supply voltage. Figure 12 shows the propagation delay time as a function of the loading conditions for a DCFL gate circuit. The loaded delay time (F/I = F/O = 3, l = 1 mm) is 84 ps. The measurements of the RAM were made on a wafer at room temperature using coaxial probe cards.

A multibit data register circuit using HEMTs with a gate length of 0.5 μm has been developed[31)]. The register is designed to synchronize data signals for data transfer in systems with a

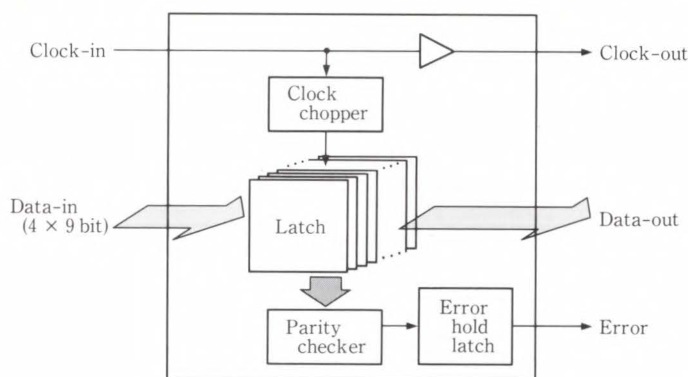


Fig. 13—Block diagram of a multibit data register circuit.

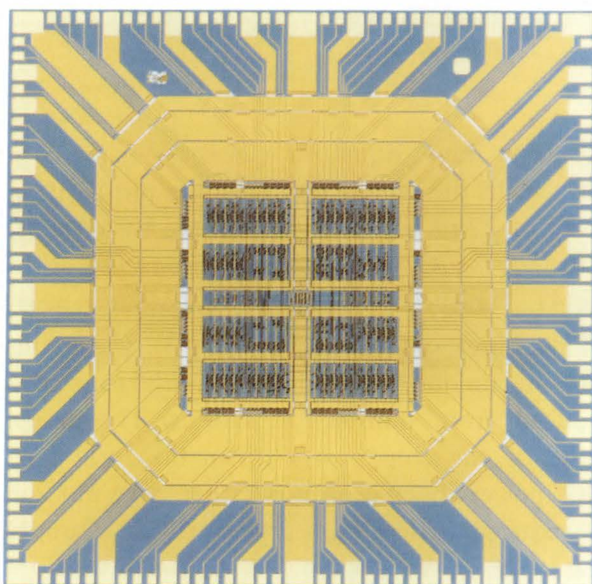


Fig. 14—Microphotograph of a multibit data register.

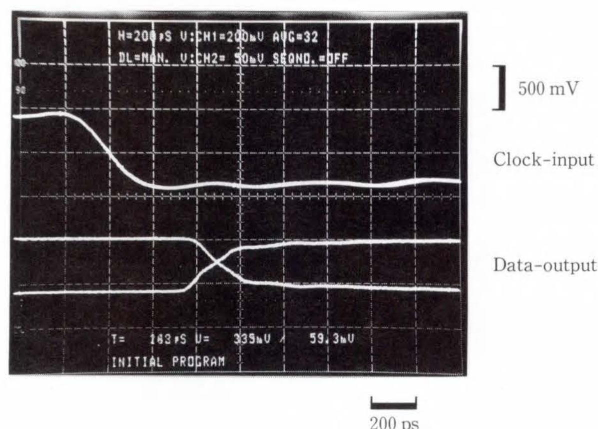


Fig. 15—Oscillograph showing the delay time through the critical path from the clock input to data output.

high-clock rate. Figure 13 shows the block diagram of a multibit data register circuit. The clock pulse is applied to each latch through the clock chopper. Then, 4 x 9 bit latched input data is transferred to the output ports and synchronized by the clock signal. The input and output buffers provide signal levels compatible with the ECL interface. Figure 14 shows a microphotograph of the multibit data register. The chip contains 1 137 gates, 99 signal pads, and 36 power supply pads; it measures 6.1 mm x 6.2 mm. This chip was designed to minimize differences of the propagation delays from the clock-input to each output. The width and spacing of the interconnecting lines are both 2 μm. The logic circuit is 2.4 mm x 2.4 mm and includes 3 335 HEMTs. The standard supply voltages are -2 V and -3.6 V. The speed of the multi-bit data register was measured as the delay time from clock-input to data-output at room temperature using a coaxial probe-card. Figure 15 is an oscillograph showing the delay time from the clock-input to the data output. The delay time is 490 ps at room temperature and the power dissipation is 4.12 W. The gate delay through the path from clock-input to data-output was estimated to be 43 ps/gate.

Performance of HEMT VLSI for future high-speed computers is projected and discussed[2), 32)], based on the results with the HEMT performance described above. Chip delay time is the sum of intrinsic gate delay, logic layout delay on fan-out capability, and the delay of the wiring on the chip. Chip delays were calculated based on experimental data for HEMTs with a gate length of 0.5 μm at 300 K and 77 K. Here we assume that the fan-out is three logic swing is 0.8 V, wiring capacitance is 100 *fF*/mm, average line length in the chip is 1 mm, and the heat flux for liquid cooling is 20 W/cm^2. For 10^4 gates, the chip delay is 70 ps at 300 K and 40 ps at 77 K. This sub-100 ps performance is sufficient for future high-speed computer requirements.

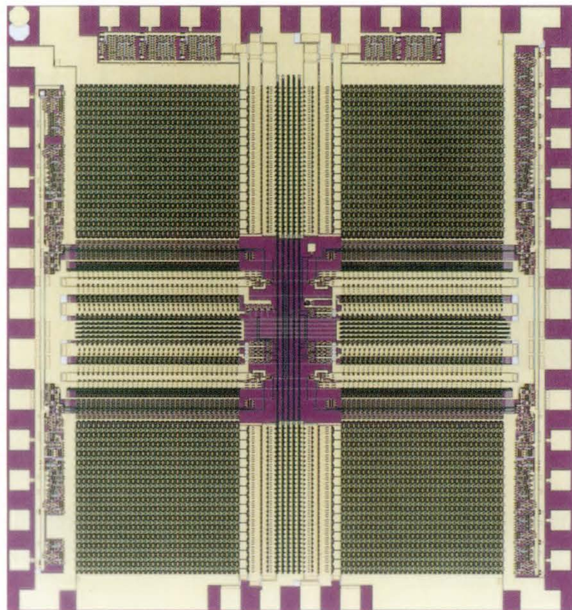


Fig. 16–Microphotograph of a HEMT 1k-word × 4 bit static RAM. The array measures 2.6 × 3.0 mm² and contains 29 994 E- and D-HEMTs.

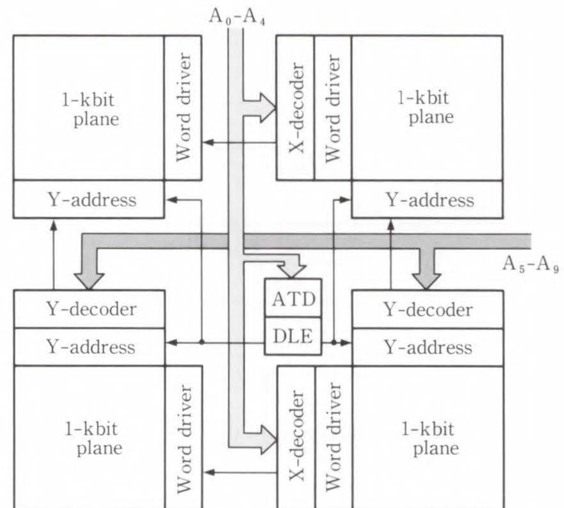


Fig. 17–Block diagram of a HEMT 1k-word × 4 bit static RAM.

4.2 Memory circuits

A 1k-word × 4 bit static RAM using 0.5-μm gate HEMT technology was designed and fabricated[10]. Figure 16 shows a microphotograph of the RAM. The layout design rule of 1.5 μm-line/2.0 μm-space was used for interconnections. The minimum through-hole is 2 μm × 2 μm. The memory cell is 24.5 μm × 23 μm; this is very small for a GaAs memory LSI. The chip measures 2.8 mm × 3.0 mm.

Figure 17 shows the block diagram of the 1k-word × 4 bit static RAM. The memory cell array is divided into four 1 kbit memory planes, each plane has 32 rows and 32 columns. This configuration reduces interconnections and access time. The RAM has ECL-compatible I/O interface circuits and has supply voltages of –2 V and –3.6 V. The E/D type DCFL was used for the basic logic gate and the memory cell. Source follower buffers were used for the driver circuits and level shifters. The data line equalization technique was adopted to reduce the address access time. The address transition is detected by the Address Transition Detector (ATD). An ATD pulse is generated and used for the Data Line Equalizer (DLE), as shown in Fig. 17. In the circuit simulation, a propagation delay of 22 ps was obtained for the basic DCFL gate (F/I = F/O = 1). The simulation used an E-HEMT threshold voltage of 0.2 V and a D-HEMT threshold voltage of –0.6 V. Using this DLE technique, the address access time was reduced from 0.68 ns to 0.54 ns. The design value of the chip power dissipation was 5 W. This power dissipation was rather large but can be reduced to less than 2 W by using a supply voltage of –1 V.

An address access time of 0.5 ns was achieved at room temperature with a chip power dissipation of 5.7 W. The chip select access time was 0.25 ns. Figure 18 is an oscillograph of the superimposed 32 address signals and 32 outputs ($D_{\mathrm{out}\,1}$). The variation of the address access time in the 1 kbit memory plane was about 0.15ns.

A HEMT 16k-word × 1 bit fully decoded static RAM was developed using the E/D-type DCFL circuit configuration[11]. D-HEMTs were used for load devices and E/D-type DCFL circuits were used for the basic circuit. The memory cell is a six-transistor cross-coupled flip-flop and uses switching devices with gate lengths of 1.2 μm. The chip size is 4.3 mm × 5.5 mm, the RAM cell size is 23 μm × 30 μm (690 μm²). The

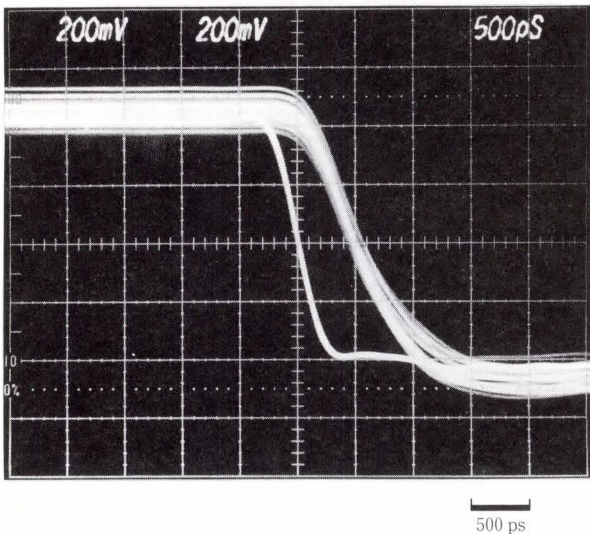


Fig. 18—Oscillograph of memory address access operations. Oscillograph shows the superimposed signals of address access in a 1kbit memory plane. The access time is 500 ps. The horizontal scale is 500 ps/div.

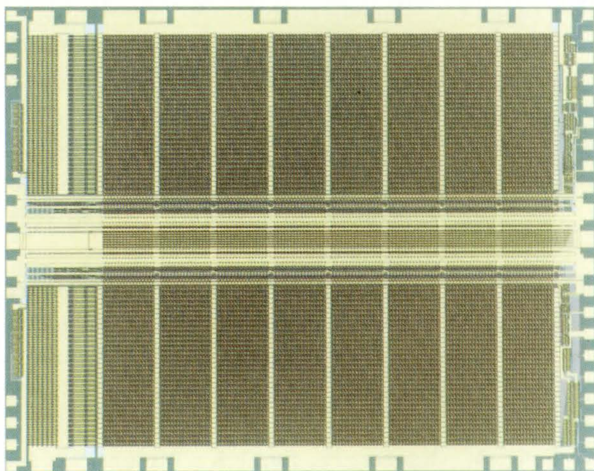


Fig. 19—Microphotograph of a HEMT 16k-word × 1 bit static RAM. The RAM measures 4.3 × 5.5 mm^2 and contains 107 519 E- and D-HEMTs.

RAM has a total device count of 107 519. Figure 19 shows a microphotograph of the 16k-word × 1 bit static RAM. Dynamic performance of the HEMT 16 kbit static RAM (e.g. address access time) was evaluated both at room temperature and at liquid nitrogen temperature. The minimum address access time obtained was 3.4 ns with a chip dissipation of 1.34 W at 77 K. The GaAs MESFFET 4k-word × 4 bit static RAM with 1 μm gate length devices has an address access time of 4.1 ns with a chip power dissipation of 2.52 W at 300 K[33]. Sub-nanosecond address access time can be projected for a 64 kbit static RAM using 0.5 μm gate device technology.

5. Conclusion

This paper discusses the current status and recent advances of HEMT technology for high-performance VLSI with a focus on materials, self-alignment device fabrication, and HEMT LSI implementations.

HEMTs are very promising devices for VLSI because of their ultra-high speed and low power dissipation. A fundamental switching delay below 10 ps can be obtained for HEMTs. This performance target is suitable for VLSI. The gate length dependence of threshold voltage and the K-factor of short-channel HEMTs were evaluated. Short-channel effects were not found to be a problem in microstructures in the sub-micron dimensional range.

Since development of the first HEMT integrated circuit in 1981, there has been a rapid and continuing growth in device, circuit design, processing and material technologies. As the HEMT technology shifts from the research and development phase towards production, new developments in material technology or alternative growth techniques will be required. These developments are needed to enable production of highly uniform epitaxial materials of LSI quality and for the large quantity production of wafers.

A HEMT 4.1k-gate gate array with a 16 × 16 bit parallel multiplier has been developed to achieve a multiplication time of 4.1 ns. A HEMT 4 kbit static RAM with an address access time of 500 ps and a 16 kbit static RAM with an address access time of 3.4 ns have been developed to demonstrate the feasibility of high performance VLSIs. We believe that sub-nanosecond access operations can be achieved in a 64 kbit HEMT static RAM using 0.5 μm gate device technology. Using the experimental data on HEMT logic, we project an optimized chip delay of 70 ps for a

10k-gate VLSI at room temperature. This performance will achieve speeds required for future large-scale computers. Based on the results described above, it is a certainty that HEMT technology will grow into one of the most important semiconductor technologies in the twentieth century.

The present research effort is part of the National Research and Development Program on the "Scientific Computing System", conducted under a program of the Agency of Industrial Science and Technology, Ministry of International Trade and Industry, Japan.

References

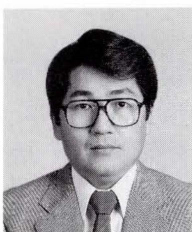
1) Mimura, T., Hiyamizu, S., Fujii, T., and Nanbu, K.: A new field-effect transistor with selectively doped GaAs/n-$Al_xGa_{1-x}As$ heterojunctions. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.*, **19**, pp. L225-L227 (1980).
2) Abe, M., Mimura, T., Yokoyama, N., and Ishikawa, H.: New technology towards GaAs LSI/VLSI for computer applications. *IEEE Trans. Electron Devices*, **ED-29**, pp. 1088-1093 (1982).
3) Dingle, R., Störmer, H.L., Gossard, A.C., and Wiegmann, W.: Electron mobilities in modulation-doped semiconductor heterojunction superlattice. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **33**, pp. 665-667 (1978).
4) Mimura, T., Joshin, K., Hiyamizu, S., Hikosaka, K., and Abe, M.: High electron mobility transistor logic. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.*, **20**, pp. L598-L600 (1981).
5) Tung, P.N., Delescluse, P., Delagebeaudeuf, D., Laviron, M., Chaplart, J., and Linh, N.T.: High speed low power DCFL using planar two-dimensional electron gas FET technology. *Electron. Lett.*, **18**, pp. 517-519 (1982).
6) DiLorenzo, J.V., Dingle, R., Feuer, M., Gossard, A.C., Hendel, R., Hwang, J.C., Kastalsky, A., Kerasmidas, V.G., Kiehl, R.A., and O'Connor, P.: Material and device considerations for selectively doped heterojunction transistors. Tech Dig., Int. Electron Devices Meet., 1982, pp. 578-581.
7) Shah, N.J., Pei, S. -S., Tu, C.W., and Tiberio, R.C.: Gate-length dependence of the speed of SSI circuits using submicrometer selectively doped heterostructure transistor technology. *IEEE Trans. Electron Devices*, **ED-33**, pp. 543-547 (1986).
8) Awano, Y., Kosugi, M., Mimura, T., and Abe, M.: Performance of a quarter-micrometer-gate ballisitc electron HEMT. *IEEE Electron Device Lett.*, **EDL-8**, pp. 451-453 (1987).
9) Kuroda, S., Mimura, T., Suzuki, M., Kobayashi, N., Nishiuchi, K., Shibatomi, A. and Abe, M.: New device structure for 4 kb HEMT SRAM. Tech. Dig., IEEE GaAs IC Symp., 1984, pp. 125-128.
10) Notomi, S., Awano, Y., Kosugi, M., Nagata, T., Kosemura, K., Ono, M., Kobayashi, N., Ishiwari, H., Odani, K., Mimura, T., and Abe, M.: A high speed 1 K x 4-bit static RAM using 0.5 μm-gate HEMT. IEEE GaAs IC Symp., 1987, pp. 177-180.
11) Abe, M., Mimura, T., Notomi, S., Odani, K., Kondo, K., and Kobayashi, M.: Ultra high speed high electron mobility transistor large scale integration technology. *J. Vac. Sci. Technol.*, **5**, pp. 1387-1392 (1987).
12) Kajii, K., Watanabe, Y., Suzuki, M., Hanyu, I., Kosugi, M., Odani, K., Mimura, T., and Abe, M.: A 40ps high electron mobility transistor 4.1 K gate array. CICC Digest Tech. papers, 1987, pp. 199-201.
13) Lang, D.V., Logan, R.A., and Jaros, M.: Trapping characteristics and a donor-complex (DX) model for the persistent-photoconductivity trapping center in Te-doped $Al_xGa_{1-x}As$. *Phys. Review (B)*, **19**, pp. 1015-1030 (1979).
14) Joshin, K., Mimura, T., Niori, M., Yamashita, M., Kosemura, K., and Saito, J.: Noise performance of microwave HEMT. IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory & Tech., MTT-S Digest, 1983, pp. 563-565.
15) Caminitz, L.H., Tasker, P.J., Lee, H., Merwe, D.V.D., and Eastman, L.F.: Microwave characterization of very high transconductance MODFET. IEDM Tech. Digest, 1984, pp. 360-363.
16) Chao, P.C., Palmateer, S.C., Smith, P.M., Mishra, U.K., Duh, K.H.G., and Hwang, J.C.M.: Millimeter-wave low-noise high electron mobility transistors. *IEEE Electron Device Lett.*, **EDL-6**, pp. 531-533 (1985).
17) Feng, M., Kanber, H., Eu, V.K., Watkins, E., and Hackett, L.R.: Ultra high frequency operation of ion-implanted GaAs metal-semiconductor field-effect transistors. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **44**, pp. 231-233 (1984).
18) Chye, W., and Huang, C.: Quarter micron low noise GaAs FET's. *IEEE Electron Device Lett.*, **EDL-3**, pp. 401-403 (1982).
19) Hiyamizu, S., Mimura, T., and Ishikawa, T.: MBE-grown GaAs/N-AlGaAs heterostructures and their application to high electron mobility transistors. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.*, **21**, Suppl. 21-1, pp. 161-168 (1982).
20) Abe, M., Mimura, T., Nishiuchi, K., Shibatomi, A., and Kobayashi, M.: Recent advances in ultra-high

speed HEMT technology. *IEEE J. Quantum Electron.*, **QE-22**, pp. 1870-1879 (1986).

21) Mimura, T., Abe, M., and Kobayashi, M.: High electron mobility transistors. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **21**, pp. 370-379 (1985).
22) Saito, J., Igarashi, T., Nakamura, T., Kondo, K., and Shibatomi, A.: Growth of highly uniform epitaxial layers over multiple substrates by molecular beam epitaxy. *J. Cryst. Growth*, **81**, pp. 188-192 (1987).
23) Tanaka, H., Itoh, H., O'hori, T., Takikawa, M., Kasai, K., Takechi, M., Suzuki, M., and Komeno, J.: Multi-wafer Growth of HEMT LSI quality AlGaAs/GaAs heterostructure by MOCVD. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.*, **26**, pp. L1456-L1458 (1987).
24) Abe, M., Mimura, T., Nishiuchi, K., Shibatomi, A., Kobayashi, M., and Misugi, T.: "Ultra-high speed HEMT integrated circuits". *Semiconductors and Semimetals*, Willardson, R.K., and Beer, A.C., eds.; Applications of Multiquantum Wells, Selective Doping, and Superlattices, **24**, Dingle, R., Volume ed., Academic Press, 1987, pp. 249-278.
25) Nakayama, Y., Suyama, K., Shimizu, H., Yokoyama, N., Shibatomi, A., and Ishikawa, H.: A GaAs 16 x 16b parallel multiplier using self alignment technology. ISSCC Digest Tech., 1983, pp. 48-49.
26) Toyoda, N., Uchitomi, N., Kitaura, Y., Mochizuki, M., Kanazawa, K., Terada, T., Ikawa, Y., and Hojo, A.: A 42ps 2 K-gate GaAs gate array. ISSCC Digest Tech., 1985, pp. 206-207.
27) Schlier, A.R., Pei, S.S., Shah, N.J., Tu, C.W., and Mahoney, G.E.: A high speed 4 x 4 bit parallel multiplier using selectively doped heterostructure. IEEE GaAs IC Symp., 1985, pp. 91-93.
28) Arch, D.K., Betz, B.K., Vold, P.J., Abrokwah, J.K., and C. Cirillo, N., Jr.: A self-aligned gate superlattice (Al, Ga) As/n^+–GaAs MODFET 5 x 5-bit parallel multiplier. *IEEE Electron Device Lett.*, **EDL-7**, pp. 700-702 (1986).
29) Watanabe, Y., Kajii, K., Nishiuchi, K., Suzuki, M., Hanyu, I., Kosugi, M., Odani, K., Shibatomi, A., Mimura, T., Abe, M., and Kobayashi, M.: High electron mobility transistor 1.5 K gate array. ISSCC Digest Tech., **29**, pp. 80-81 (1986).
30) Cirillo, N.C., Jr., Arch, D.K., Vold, P.J., Betz, B.K., Mactaggart, I.R., and Grung, B.L.: 8 x 8-bit pipelined parallel multiplier utilizing self-aligned gate n^+ –(Al, Ga) As/GaAs MODFET IC technology. IEEE GaAs IC Symp., 1987, pp. 257-260.
31) Watanabe, Y., Saito, S., Kobayashi, N., Suzuki, M., Yokoyama, T., Mitani, E., Odani, K., Mimura, T., and Abe, M.: A HEMT LSI for a multibit data register. ISSCC Digest Tech., 1988, pp. 86-87.
32) Abe, M., Mimura, T., Nishiuchi, K., and Yokoyama, N.: "GaAs VLSI technology for high-speed computers". in *VLSI Electronics; Microstructure Science*, **11**: GaAs Microelectronics, Einspruch, N.G., and Wisseman, W.R., eds., New York Academic 1985 pp. 333-365.
33) Ishii, Y., Ino, M., Idda, M., Hirayama, M., and Ohmori, M.: Processing technologies for GaAs memory LSIs. IEEE GaAs IC Symp., 1984, pp. 121-124.

Masayuki Abe
Compound Semiconductor Devices Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Osaka University 1967
Dr. of Electrical Eng.
Osaka University 1973
Specializing in Semiconductor Devices

Masaaki Kobayashi
Electron Devices Div.
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Applied Physics
Kyoto University 1958
Specializing in development of semiconductor devices and management of R/D activities for electron devices



Takashi Mimura
Electron Devices Div.
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Science
Kwansei Gakuin University 1967
Dr. of Solid-State Physics
Osaka University 1982
Specializing in Semiconductor Devices

UDC 537.312.62

Recent Advances in Josephson Junction Devices

● Shinya Hasuo ● Takeshi Imamura ● Norio Fujimaki

(Manuscript received July 18, 1988)

This paper describes recent advances in high-speed digital circuits using all niobium ($Nb/AlO_x/Nb$) Josephson junctions. The world's fastest logic gate Modified Variable Threshold Logic (MVTL) is described. The MVTL gate family has been applied to various logic circuits such as a 16-bit ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit) and a 4-bit microprocessor. The high-speed performance of Josephson junctions in LSI level circuits has been verified using these circuits. A new type of high sensitivity magnetic sensor, SQUID (Superconducting QUantum Interference Device), has also been invented. It is called "a single-chip SQUID", because all the circuits necessary for its operation have been integrated into a single chip.

1. Introduction

Performance of integrated circuits having Josephson junctions has dramatically improved since niobium junctions have become available[1)-3)]. Before niobium junctions, lead-alloy junctions were mainly used for integrated circuits. Those were the dark ages for researchers because circuits seldom worked well. Most of the difficulties originated from the unstable characteristics of lead-alloy junctions.

At the end of 1983, just after the use of lead-alloy junctions was abandoned, niobium junctions became available for integrated circuits. After applying the niobium junctions to integrated circuits, various kinds of circuits were realized. These circuits operated at a much higher speed than those using lead-alloy junctions. This is because of the small scattering of junction characteristics. Thus, the inherent performance of Josephson junctions could actually be attained.

At present, we can make LSI level circuits which contain several thousand junctions. A small-scale Josephson computer can now be envisioned. It will operate more than one order of magnitude faster than a semiconductor computer. In this paper, we describe recent progress in Josephson IC technologies developed in our laboratory. Chapter 2 describes fabrication technologies for integrated circuits using niobium junctions (i.e. $Nb/AlO_x/Nb$ junctions). The fastest logic gate including semiconductor gates is our MVTL (Modified Variable Threshold Logic) gate. It is described in Chap. 3. Chapter 4 describes various high-speed logic circuits. A shift registor, 16-bit ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit), 4-bit microprocessor and other circuits are described. A large amount of electronics has been integrated into a single chip using superconducting technology. This single chip SQUID (Superconducting QUantum Interference Device) is also introduced in this chapter. Conclusions are stated in Chap. 5.

2. Fabrication process

This section describes the fabrication of circuits constructed using $Nb/AlO_x/Nb$ Josephson junctions.

The characteristics of niobium junctions have recently been greatly improved. The excellent characteristics of $Nb/AlO_x/Nb$ junctions were demonstrated by Gurvitch et al.[4)] and further improved by Morohashi et al[5),6)]. Thus, we anticipate their use in high-speed digital

Table 1. Materials and gases for RIE

	Material	Gas for RIE
Josephson junctions	$Nb/AlO_x/Nb$	$CF_4 + O_2$
Wiring	Nb	$CF_4 + O_2$
Insulation layers	SiO_2	$CHF_3 + O_2$
Resistors	Mo	$CF_4 + O_2$

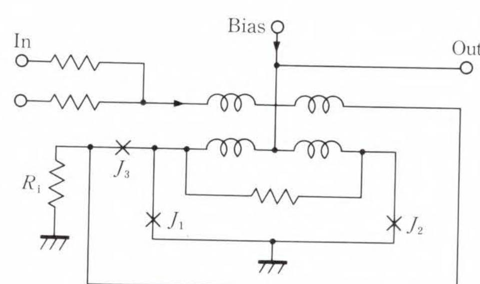
circuits and other applications. The controllability, stability, uniformity, and reproducibility of $Nb/AlO_x/Nb$ are much better than lead-alloys. Therefore we have applied the $Nb/AlO_x/Nb$ junction in the fabrication process of various high-speed digital circuits.

The materials and gases used in the Reactive Ion Etching (RIE) technique are listed in Table 1. Metals were deposited by DC magnetron sputtering in an Ar gas atmosphere at deposition rates of 200 nm/min for Nb, 130 nm/min for Mo, and 6 nm/min for Al. SiO_2 was deposited by RF sputtering in an Ar atmosphere at a deposition rate of 8 nm/min. The Al film surface was oxidized in ambient Ar + 10% O_2 gas at room temperature. The typical time required for the oxidation was 60 min. We can control the critical current density from 500 A/cm^2 to 5 000 A/cm^2 by changing the gas pressure from 100 Pa to 40 Pa. Thickness of the Mo resistor is typically 100 nm and its sheet resistance is 1.5 Ω/□.

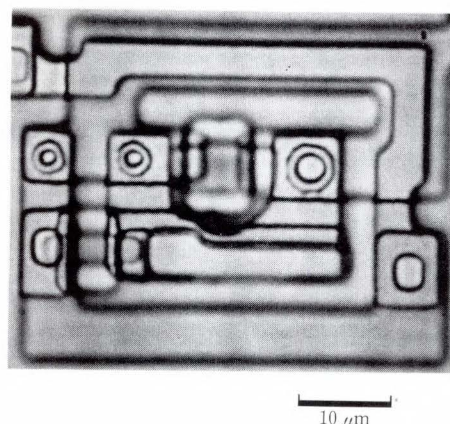
3. MVTL gate family

Josephson logic circuits are usually composed of OR and AND gates. They are operated in a dual-rail manner because there is no INVERTER without a timing signal. An AND gate is usually driven by the output signals of OR gates because an AND gate by itself cannot isolate the output signal from the input signal. The MVTL gate family we designed consists of OR, AND, and 2/3 MAJORITY gates. The TIMED INVERTER is sometimes combined with an OR gate and another signal junction.

The MVTL OR gate has an asymmetric interferometer and a magnetically coupled control line. The control current is injected into the interferometer after magnetic coupling.



a) Equivalent circuit



b) Photomicrograph

Fig. 1–MVTL OR gate.

Figure 1a) shows the equivalent circuit of the MVTL OR gate. The output current is isolated from the injected control current using the single junction J_3 and resistor R_i. Figure 1b) is a photograph of the OR gate. This gate has three Josephson junctions. The diameters of J_1 and J_3 are 2.5 μm. The diameter of J_2 is 4 μm. The gate size is 31 x 41 μm^2. The fastest gate speed obtained was 2.5 ps for a gate with a minimum junction diameter of 1.5 μm. The power consumption was 17 μW/gate[7]. This gate is faster than any other logic gate including semiconductor gates. The relation between the gate delay and the minimum junction diameter is shown in Fig. 2. These Josephson logic gates can attain a gate delay of less than 10 ps/gate without using sub-micron processing technology. Figure 2 suggests that gate delay times less than 1 ps can be achieved if we fabricate a 0.6 μm minimum diameter junction.

The AND gate is simply constructed using a single junction. It is always driven by the out-

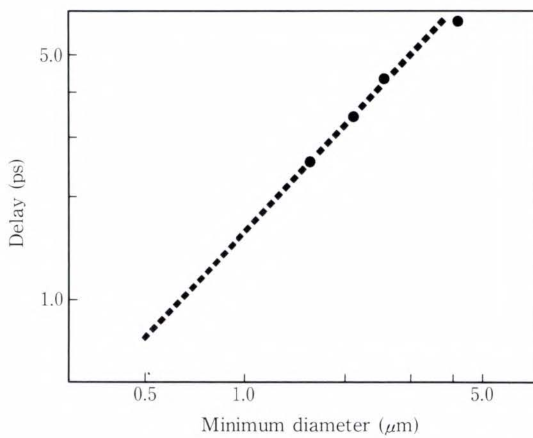


Fig. 2–Relation between gate delay and minimum junction diameter for MVTL OR gate.

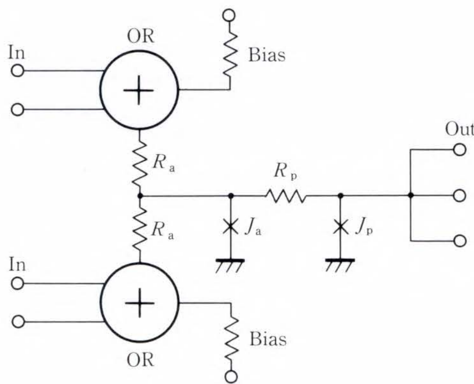


Fig. 3–Equivalent circuit of unit cell.

put signals of the OR gates. This is because the AND gate has no function to isolate the output signal from the input signal. Unit cells are combined using two OR gates and an AND gate. Figure 3 shows the equivalent circuit of the unit cell. The area of the fabricated unit cell is $82 \times 132\ \mu m^2$ when a minimum junction diameter of 2.5 μm is used. The gate delay of the unit cell was 16 ps when a minimum junction diameter of 4 μm was used, and 11.5 ps for a minimum diameter of 2.5 μm[8].

In an LSI logic circuit, the carry signal of a full adder can be obtained using only one 2/3 MAJORITY gate. The 2/3 MAJORITY gate of the MVTL gate family is basically the same as the unit cell except that another OR gate is connected to junction J_a. The operating margin of this gate is the same as that of the unit cell

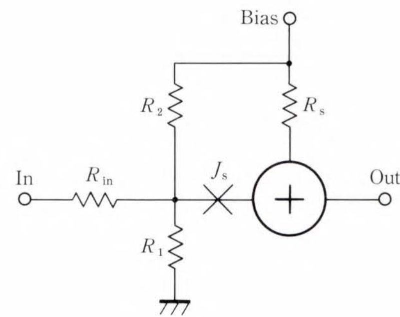


Fig. 4–Circuit diagram of TIMED INVERTER.

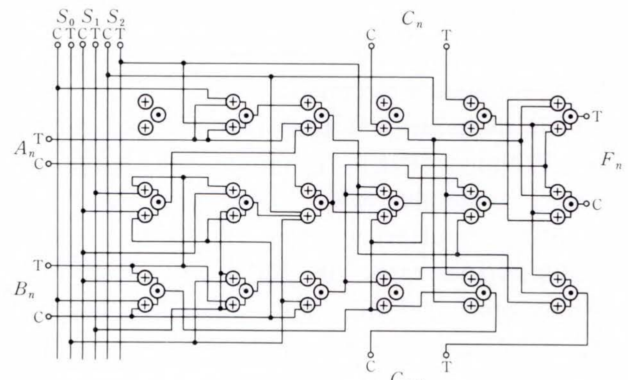


Fig. 5–Block diagram of 1-bit ALU.

because the margin is determined by J_a. The operating speed of the 2/3 MAJORITY gate was only evaluated for a gate having a minimum junction diameter of 4 μm. The gate delay was measured to be 21 ps[8].

The Josephson logic gate requires a timing signal for inversion. Therefore, an INVERTER gate must be constructed using the timing signal. This is called a TIMED INVERTER (TI), and is constructed as shown in Fig. 4. The TI operates correctly only when the signal current is applied before the bias current rises.

4. High-speed logic circuits

Using the above gate family, we fabricated various logic circuits to test the feasibility of these gates. They are a 16-bit Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU)[1], an 8-bit shift register[2], and a 4-bit microprocessor[3]. Performance of these circuits is described below. We also fabricated a single-chip SQUID[9]. The basic idea of the SQUID is also described below.

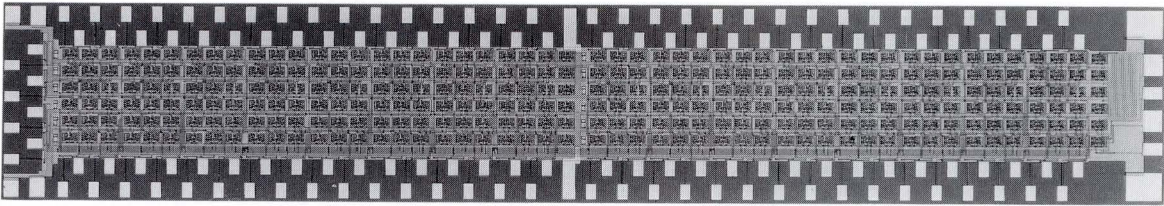


Fig. 6—Photomicrograph of 16-bit ALU.

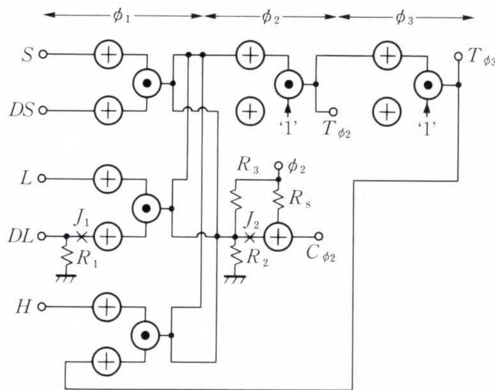


Fig. 7—Circuit diagram of 1-bit shift register.

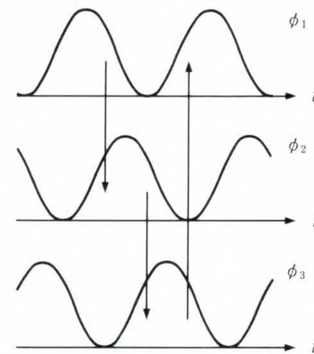


Fig. 8—Waveforms of three phase power.

4.1 16-bit ALU

We fabricated a 16-bit ALU which performs eight arithmetic and four logic functions. Figure 5 shows the block diagram of a 1-bit ALU. Eighteen unit cells were integrated in the block. The unit cell used in this circuit is the same as that described in the previous section. A multiple bit ALU can be achieved by serially connecting multiple blocks of 1-bit ALUs. For circuit layout simplicity, no special high-speed operation algorithm such as carry-look-ahead was adopted in the ALU. Therefore, the delay time on the critical path of the ALU is the sum of the delays in carry signal propagation in the adder mode.

The 16-bit ALU chip is shown in Fig. 6. The circuit size is 0.85×8.2 mm^2. There are 900 gates in the ALU, including 36 gates for measuring the critical path delay.

The critical path delay was measured to be 0.86 ns. The signal path during this operation included 83 stages of MVTL OR and AND gates. After subtracting the propagation delay of the interconnecting lines in the signal path which was calculated to be about 95 ps, the average gate delay was estimated to be 9.2 ps/gate. The total power consumption of the chip was 10.1 mW or an average of 11.3 μW/gate.

We have also fabricated a 16-bit multiplier critical path model[8]. The model includes 828 MVTL gates, which are extracted along the critical path from the multiplier in order to estimate the multiplication time. The observed multiplication time was 1.1 ns.

4.2 8-bit shift register

We also designed an 8-bit shift register using MVTL gates. It has the SHIFT, LOAD, HOLD, and CLEAR functions. Figure 7 shows the circuit for a 1-bit shift register. *S*, *L*, and *H* in the figure represent the control signals for SHIFT, LOAD, and HOLD. *DS* and *DL* represent the data for SHIFT and LOAD.

Five unit cells which are the same size as those in the ALU and multiplier model and one TI in each 1-bit shift register were used. They were supplied with three-phase power: ϕ_1, ϕ_2, and ϕ_3. The waveform of each phase is sinusoidal with DC offsets and the phases are 120 degrees apart as shown in Fig. 8. These sinusoidal wave forms can be replaced by trapezoidal waveforms.

The operating margin is slightly larger for the trapezoidal waveforms. However, it is easier to provide sinusoidal waves at high frequencies.

Figure 9 shows a photograph of the fabricated chip. The circuit area is 1.1×2.1 mm^2 and it contains 112 gates. The critical current density was 1 700 A/cm^2, while the design value was 2 100 A/cm^2. We confirmed that the 8-bit shift register operated correctly for all stages of all the control signals using an 80 μs clock speed.

High-speed operation was tested for this chip. The SHIFT function operated correctly up to a 2.3 GHz clock frequency. There is a voltage peak at the clock when the first stage is switched due to the voltage change of the chip ground induced by control and data signals. The total power consumption was 1.8 mW.

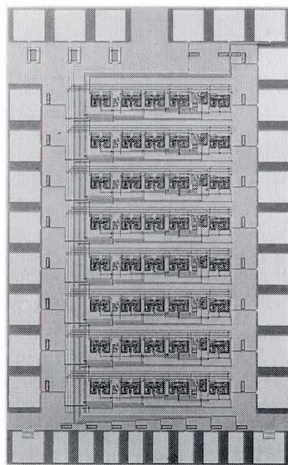


Fig. 9–Chip photograph of 8-bit shift register.

We also developed a pseudo random bit squence generator[10]. The circuit is constructed using nine stages of the one-bit shift register described above, with the output signal being fed back to the 5th stage through an exclusive-OR gate. Thus it can generate a pseudo random number with a 511-bit sequence. We confirmed that it operated correctly up to 2.2 GHz.

4.3 4-bit microprocessor

We have fabricated a 4-bit microprocessor[3] This is the first instance of applying Josephson devices to a microprocessor, so we wanted to verify the feasibility of the chip in comparison with a typical microprocessor constructed using semiconductor devices. We selected chip functions that were similar to those of the AM2901 microprocessor manufactured by Advanced Micro Devices Inc. This microprocessor has come to be regarded as the standard 4-bit microprocessor slice.

Figure 10 shows a block diagram of our microprocessor. It has a dual memory set which is used as a 16-word by 4-bit two-port RAM with a RAM shifter, an 8-function ALU, a Q

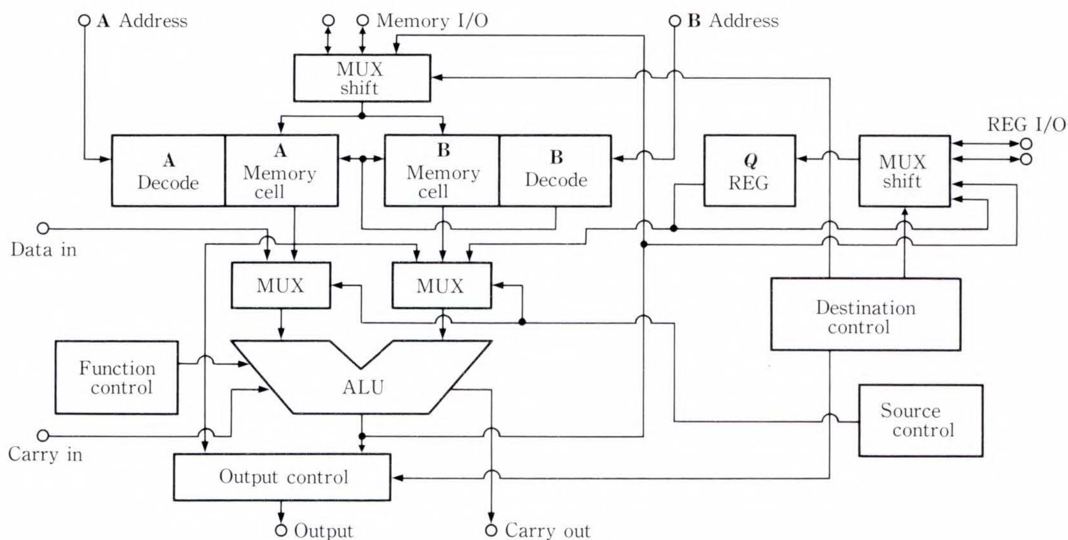


Fig. 10–Block diagram of 4-bit microprocessor.

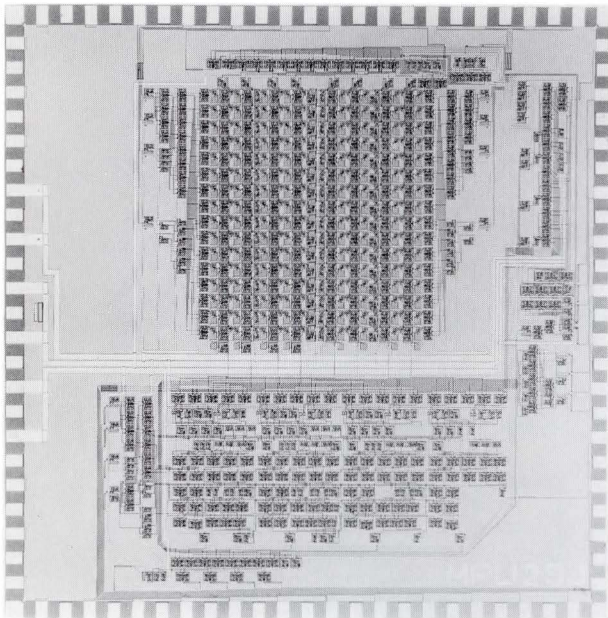


Fig. 11–Photomicrograph of 4-bit microprocessor.

register with a Q shifter, and several controllers. This circuit is driven by three-phase power: ϕ_1, ϕ_2, and ϕ_3. Dual-rail logic was adopted in the ALU and controllers of the microprocessor, and complementary signals are generated from the input signals using TIs powered by ϕ_1. Decoding operations are run in gates powered by ϕ_1, reading memory data by ϕ_2, and modifying and writing data by ϕ_3.

Both the minimum junction diameter and line width are 2.5 μm. The interconnecting lines are 4 μm wide. Figure 11 is a photograph of the fabricated chip. The basic gate is the MVTL as mentioned above, and the total number of gates is 1 841.

All functions and source combinations were confirmed at a clock frequency up to 100 MHz. The clock frequency was limited by the maximum clock of the word pattern generator. The operation along the critical path of the chip was tested using a high-speed pulse generator, and confirmed to operate correctly up to a clock frequency of 770 MHz. The gate power dissipation was 3.6 μW/gate, and the total power consumed by the chip was 5 mW.

We verified that the Josephson microprocessor operated at one-order faster clock frequency and consumed three-orders less power than a semiconductor microprocessor. Performance of AM2901 type microprocessors for three different materials are listed in Table 2.

Table 2. Performance of 4-bit microprocessor

Device	Si[note 1]	GaAs[note 2]	Josephson
Maximum Clock (MHz)	30	72	770
Power (W)	1.4	2.2	0.005

note 1: AMD, 1985 data book
note 2: Vitesse, 1987 GaAs IC Symposium

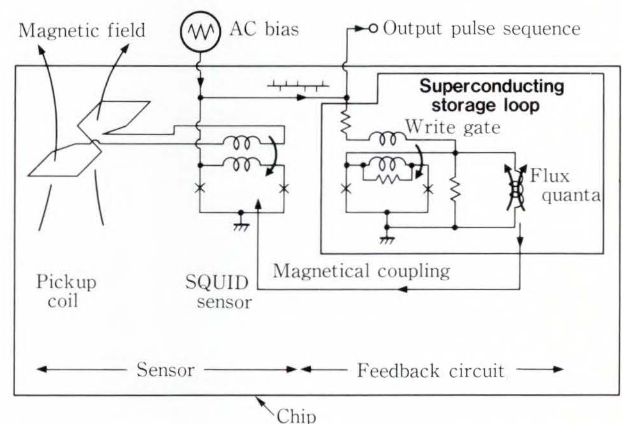


Fig. 12–Circuit of single-chip SQUID.

4.4 Single-chip SQUID

SQUID is a very high-sensitivity magnetic sensor. We expect it to be applied as an image sensor in medical and other applications. We fabricated a single-chip SQUID[9] which contains entire circuits such as the pickup coil, SQUID sensor, and feedback circuit. Conventional RF and DC SQUID magnetometers use analog-feedback circuits such as lock-in-amplifiers that make integration difficult. We introduced a digital feedback circuit and a superconducting storage loop. These made it possible to integrate SQUID onto a single chip.

The single-chip SQUID magnetometer requires only an AC bias, produces a digital output using no other electronics and operates at room temperature. The output pulse can be

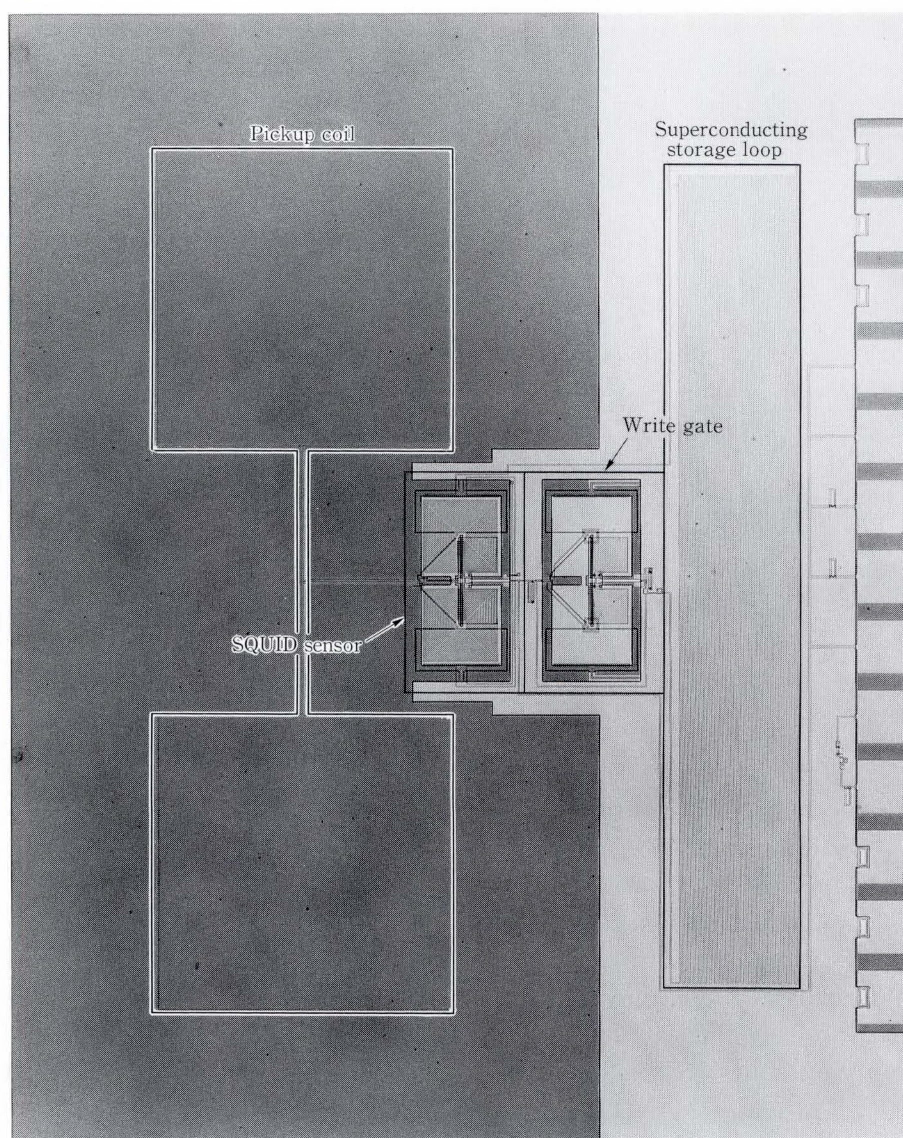


Fig. 13–Photograph of single-chip SQUID.

processed by a digital processor, or can be output to a display unit through a counter for direct monitoring of the input magnetic field waveforms.

Figure 12 diagrams the circuit. The figure-eight pickup coil transmits the magnetic flux to be measured to the SQUID sensor through two 20-turn integrated coils. The digital feedback circuit was fabricated using a superconducting storage loop and an interferometer as a write gate. The write gate receives a pulse sequence and writes a positive or negative flux quantum to the storage loop when a pulse arrives. Figure 13 shows the chip which uses $Nb/AlO_x/Nb$ junctions having a minimum diameter of 2.5 μm. The chip area is 3.0 mm x 3.5 mm. This includes the pickup coil which is 1.1 mm x 3.2 mm. The pickup coil is coupled magnetically to the SQUID sensor using two 20-turn winding coils made of a niobium line of 2.5 μm wide.

Magnetic flux coupled to the SQUID sensor as low as $7 \times 10^{-5}\ \phi_0/\sqrt{\mathrm{Hz}}$ was measured, where ϕ_0 is the flux quantum (2.07×10^{-15} Wb). This corresponds to a magnetic field of $4.7 \times 10^{-12}\ T\sqrt{\mathrm{Hz}}$, and a magnetic field gradient of $4.5 \times 10^{-9}\ T/\mathrm{m}\sqrt{\mathrm{Hz}}$ at the pickup coil. The sensitivity can be further improved

because we believe the experiment was limited by environmental noise, not by device noise. In any case, this device is more sensitive than magnetocardiograms which can only measure several 10^{-11} T.

5. Conclusion

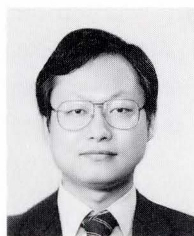
We have described recent advances of our Josephson IC technologies. Our technologies have progressed rapidly since we changed the junction material from lead-alloy to niobium. We view the niobium junction like a wild horse, that once tamed becomes quite gentle and reliable. We can now control this wild horse. We have not described it in this paper, but Josephson memory circuits are also feasible up to 4K bits with a half nano-second access time. Thus, we believe there is no problem in developing chips containing LSI circuits with ten thousands of junctions. The next step is to set these LSIs in a refrigerator and demonstrate their high performance.

The present research effort is part of the National Research and Development Program on "Scientific Computing Systems", conducted under a program set by the Agency of Industrial Science and Technology, Ministry of International Trade and Industry.

References

1) Kotani, S., Fujimaki, N., Imamura, T., and Hasuo, S.: A Subnanosecond Josephson 16-bit ALU. *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, **SC-23**, 2, pp. 591-596 (April 1988).
2) Fujimaki, N., Kotani, S., Imamura, T., and Hasuo, S.: Josephson 8-bit Shift Register. *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, **SC-22**, 5, pp. 886-891 (Oct. 1987).
3) Kotani, S., Fujimaki, N., Imamura, T., and Hasuo, S.: A Josephson 4-bit Microprocessor. Digest of Tech. Papers of 1988 International Solid-Circuit Conf. (ISSCC), San Francisco, 1988, pp. 150-151.
4) Gurvitch, M., Washington, M.A., and Huggens, H.A.: High Quality Refractory Josephson Tunnel Junction Utilizing Thin Aluminum Layers. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **42**, pp. 472-474 (Mar. 1983).
5) Morohashi, S., Shinoki, F., Shoji, A., Aoyagi, A., and Hayakawa, H.: High-Quality Nb/AlO_x-Al/Nb Josephson Junctions. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **46**, pp. 1179-1181 (June 1985).
6) Morohashi, S., Hasuo, S., and Yamaoka, T.: Self-Aligned Contact Process for Nb/AlO_x/Nb Josephson Junctions. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **48**, pp. 254-245 (Jan. 1986).
7) Kotani, S., Imamura, T., and Hasuo, S.: A 2.5-ps Josephson OR Gate. Tech. Digest of International Electron Devices Meeting, Washington, D.C., 1987, pp. 865-866.
8) Kotani, S., Fujimaki, N., Morohashi, S., Ohara, S., and Hasuo, S.: Feasibility of an Ultra-High-Speed Josephson Multiplier. *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, **SC-22**, 1, pp. 98-103 (Feb. 1987).
9) Fujimaki, N., Tamura, H., Imamura, T., and Hasuo, S.: A Single-Chip SQUID. Digest of Tech. Papers of 1988 International Solid-State Conf. (ISSCC), San Francisco, 1988, pp. 40-41.
10) Fujimaki, N., Imamura, T., and Hasuo, S.: Josephson Pseudorandom Bit Sequence Generator. Proc. of the Symp. on Low Temperature Electronics and High Temperature Superconductors, Honolulu, 1987, pp. 375-380.

Shinya Hasuo
Advanced Technology Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1967
Dr. of Electronic Eng.
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1972
Specializing in Superconducting Electronics



Norio Fujimaki
Device Development Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1975
Dr. of Electronic Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1980
Specializing in Superconducting Electronics

Takeshi Imamura
Device Development Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Physics
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1973
Dr. of Electronic Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1987
Specializing in Superconducting Electronics

UDC 621.377:681.327.67

Self-Timed RAM : STRAM

• Chikai Ohno

(Manuscript received September 6, 1988)

A STRAM is different from conventional RAMs because it has synchronous operation and an on-chip write pulse generator. Three types of STRAMs are presented in this paper. Each type is a standard device and has unique features which are useful in various applications. A system model using STRAM was evaluated and it was shown that STRAM can improve the system level cycle speed to twice that of a conventional RAM. Using already established process technology, Fujitsu has developed a 1K x 4 standard STRAM having a cycle time of 9 ns and 4K x 4 STRAM having a 13 ns cycle time.

1. Introduction

With the increasing system speed of high-performance data processing equipment, there is a corresponding need for high-speed memory devices. Improvement of the memory speed has mostly been achieved by the introduction of new process technology, but this is becoming increasingly difficult. Even if a high-speed memory device can be developed, it is questionable whether the device performance will be optimized at the system level. For conventional RAMs, timing requirements, including on-board signal skew, and the difficulty of generating a narrow write pulse under a heavy on-board load have made it difficult to improve the system level performance as much as the speed of the memory devices.

For these reasons, the "Self-Timed RAM" (STRAM) has been developed as a synchronous RAM having a new circuit architecture which can improve overall system performance[1]. The STRAM is built using the same process technology as conventional RAMs.

In this paper, the basic structure of the STRAM is described in Chap. 2 and the Latch and Register are defined in Chap. 3. In Chap. 4, three different STRAM configurations and their functions are explained based on the information given in Chaps. 2 and 3. Chapter 5 shows the advantages of STRAM over conventional RAM by comparing these two types of RAM using a system model. The 1K x 4 and 4K x 4 STRAMs that Fujitsu has developed are introduced in Chap. 6.

2. Basic structure

The basic block diagram shown in Fig. 1 shows that STRAM differs from a conventional RAM in the following ways:

1) STRAM has a circuit which temporarily stores the input and output data

The input buffer gate of each input of the conventional RAM: Address input (ADD), Data input (D_{IN}), Chip Select input ($\overline{CS}$), Write Enable input ($\overline{WE}$), is replaced by a data store circuit in the STRAM. For output, STRAM also provides a data store circuit in front of the output buffer gate.

2) STRAM has an on-chip write pulse generator

Due to the internally generated write pulse, it is no longer necessary to externally control the write pulse width using the $\overline{WE}$ input. $\overline{WE}$ input only provides state information to the RAM whether it is in the read cycle ($\overline{WE}$ = high level) or write cycle ($\overline{WE}$ = low level).

3) STRAM has a clock (CLK) input

The data store circuit and internal write pulse generator for articles 1) and 2) above are controlled by the clock (CLK) input. STRAM has synchronous read and write cycles.

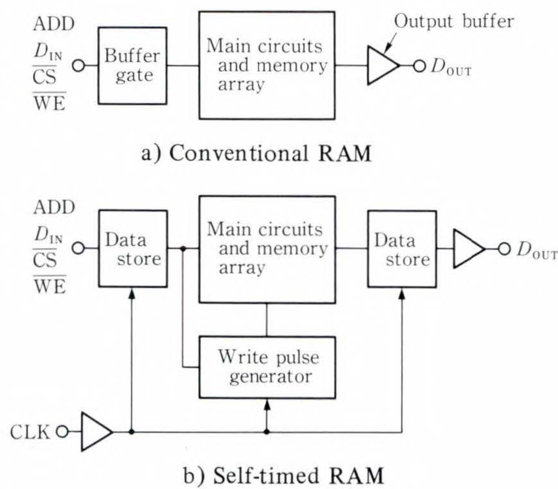


Fig. 1—Basic block diagrams of conventional RAM and STRAM

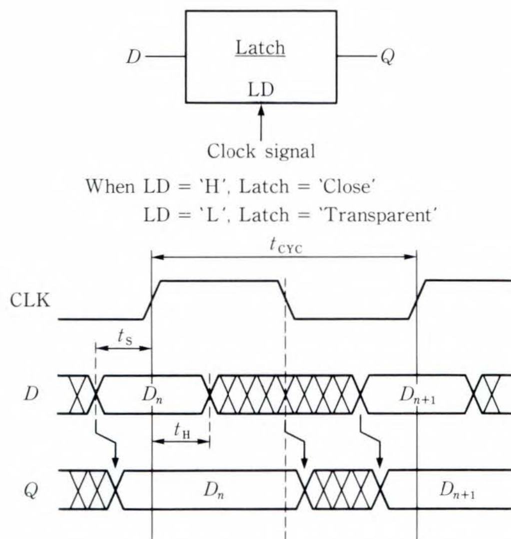


Fig. 2—Latch (Level sensitive type latch).

STRAM variations based on the type of data store circuit are described in the following sections.

3. Definition of latch register

The data store circuits shown in Fig. 1 can be a latch type or register type.

These two types are described below.

1) Latch

The latch defined here is a D-latch type or "level sensitive" type latch. Figure 2 shows that the input data (D) is controlled by the level of the LD input. D is transparent to the output (Q) when the LD input is low (L). The latch is closed and D cannot pass through the latch when the LD input is high (H).

The LD input is controlled by the clock input. Timing references between the external clock input (CLK), input data (D), and output (Q) are shown in Fig. 2. t_S is the setup time and t_H is the hold time of input (D) with respect to the rising edge of the CLK input. These provide the required conditions for the latch to hold the assigned input data.

2) Register

The register defined here is a pair of latches connected in series. One latch is controlled by the LD input and the other by an inverted LD input. Figure 3 shows the timing references between the CLK input, input (D), and output (Q). The register is edge sensitive and controlled by the edge of the CLK input. Therefore, output (Q) remains stable throughout the cycle (t_{CYC}) for the register, unlike the data-through mode for the latch.

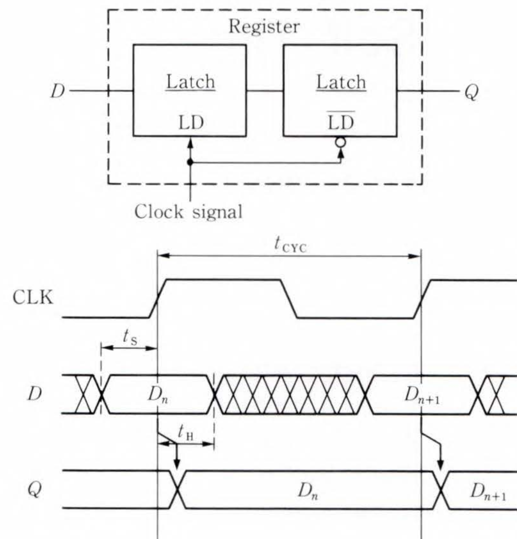


Fig. 3—Register (Edge sensitive type latch).

These latch and register structures are advantageous for chip layout because the latch or register can be easily built-in using metal option technology. Therefore, the different STRAMs explained in later chapters can be easily manufactured.

4. Types of STRAM

Various types of STRAMs can be manufactured depending on the type of input and output data store circuits. Use of the latch or register explained in the previous chapter is optional for the input and output data store circuits. Figure 4 shows three typical STRAMs that are described in this chapter. Figure 5 shows the timing charts of these STRAMs.

1) LL-mode

In the LL-mode STRAM, latches are used for both the input and output data store circuits. The latches are controlled by the internal clock signal. The clock signal to the output latch is inverted. Table 1 lists the input and output latch functions with respect to the CLK input. This table shows that the input latch and the output latch operate opposite to one another. For example, during the high CLK input state, the input latch is closed, the output latch is transparent, and data is read out at the output. Therefore, any change in the input state does not influence the output data. During the low CLK input state, the input latch becomes transparent, and data from the memory cell tries to pass through to the output. However, data read out does not occur before the next high level CLK input because the output latch is closed during that period.

A feature of the LL-mode STRAM access mode is that output data can appear at the output independent of the clock edge when the set-up time for address inputs is controlled to a relatively small value. This through-mode access ($t_{A(ADD)}$) shown in Fig. 5 is the same as the address access time of a conventional RAM.

In the write cycle, write operations must be completed during the high CLK input state only when the address data is fixed in the latch as explained in Chap. 3. Both read and write operations of the LL-mode STRAM are performed

Table 1. Input and output latch operation in LL-mode STRAM

CLK input	Input latch	Output latch
'L'	Transparent	Closed
'H'	Closed	Transparent

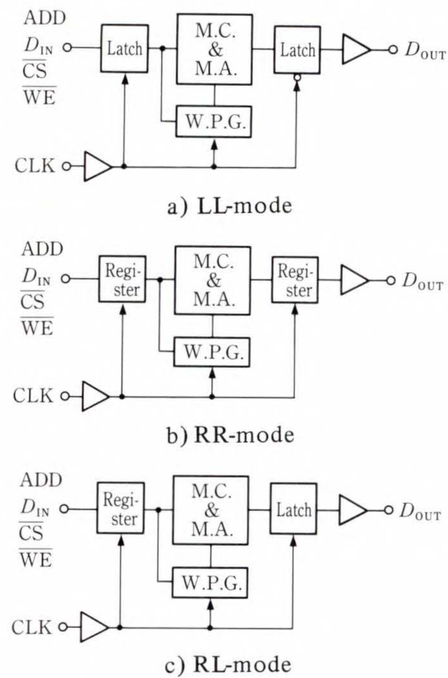


Fig. 4—Types of STRAM.

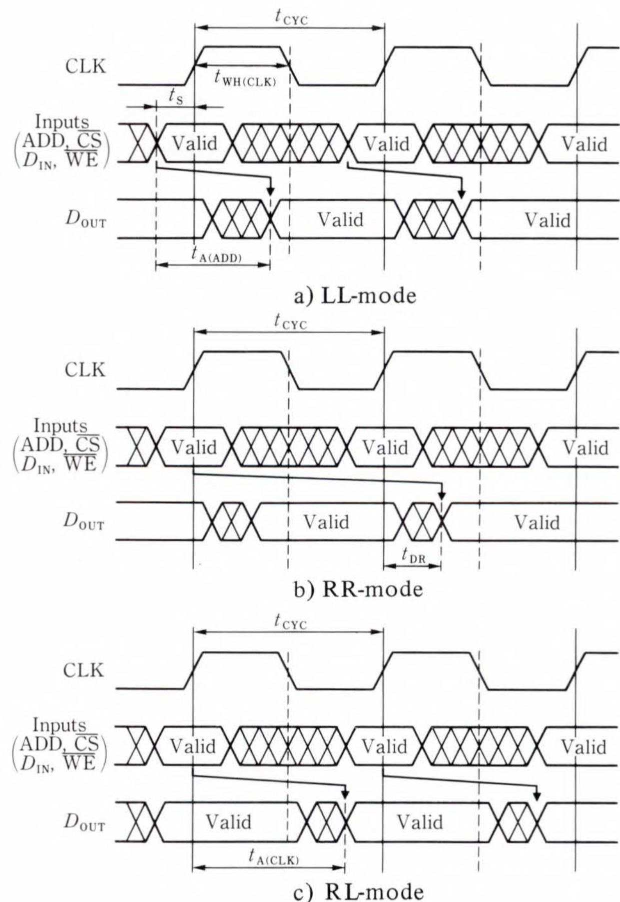


Fig. 5—Timing charts of three types of STRAM.

Table 2. Summary of features of three types of STRAM

Items \ Types	LL-mode	RR-mode	RL-mode
Clocking	Min required time to guarantee complete read or write operation during high CLK input high state.	Duty ratio free	Duty ratio free
Read cycle	Address access mode identical to the conventional RAM address access time (t_{AA}) is possible.	Data is available in the next CLK cycle, but high-speed access from the CLK edge is implemented.	Data is available in the same CLK cycle, but it is an access mode from the CLK edge.
Write cycle	Write operation is executed only for a CLK high state.	Write operation canbe executed through out the cycle.	Write operation can be executed through out the cycle.

during the high CLK input state. Thus, there is a minimum required time for the CLK input high duration ($t_{WH(CLK)}$).

2) RR-mode

The RR-mode STRAM uses registers for both the input and output data store circuits. A feature of the register, as stated in Chap. 3, is that both holding the input data and reading the output data are controlled by the CLK input edge, but the output data corresponding to specific input data does not become available due to the same CLK edge. In a RR-mode STRAM, the read out data is available in the next cycle as shown in Fig. 5. High-speed read operation is enabled because there is only a delay in the output register (t_{DR}) without going through the memory cell array.

In the write cycle, unlike the LL-mode, there is no minimum required time for $t_{WH(CLK)}$ to guarantee the complete write operation because input data remains stable throughout the cycle.

As stated above, duty ratio free CLK input is enabled in the RR-mode STRAM because read and write operations are initiated by the CLK input edge.

3) RL-mode

The RL-mode STRAM uses a register for the input data store circuit and a latch for the output data store circuit. Holding the input data and the write cycle is the same as for the RR-mode. It is different from the RR-mode STRAM in that output data is available in the same CLK cycle because the output latch is transparent during the low CLK input state. This is shown in Fig. 5.

Duty ratio free CLK input is also enabled in the RL-mode STRAM as in the RR-mode STRAM.

The main features of these three types of STRAMs are summarized in Table 2.

5. Comparison between conventional RAM and STRAM in a system model

To verify the advantages of STRAM over a conventional RAM on the system level, they were both applied in the system model shown in Fig. 6 and evaluated. Figure 6 shows a system model in which several RAM arrays are controlled by the CPU. The CPU driver generates an Address signal, $\overline{CS}$ signal, D_{IN} signal, and $\overline{WE}$ signal which are conveyed to each RAM array. These signals are generated synchronously by the system clock signal. Read out data from each RAM array is returned to the CPU and is held in the latch. This chapter compares the conventional RAM and STRAM for read cycle performance and write cycle performance when each device is used as the RAM array in this system. The LL-mode STRAM was used in this comparison. The same comparison can be made using the other two types of STRAMs. For simplification, clock skew and skew between the system clock and STRAM clock are ignored here. Only the essential signals required to understand system operation are considered.

1) Read cycle for conventional RAM

Figure 7 shows the timing diagram when conventional RAM is used in the system model. Address signals forwarded by the system clock run along the signal transmission paths to reach

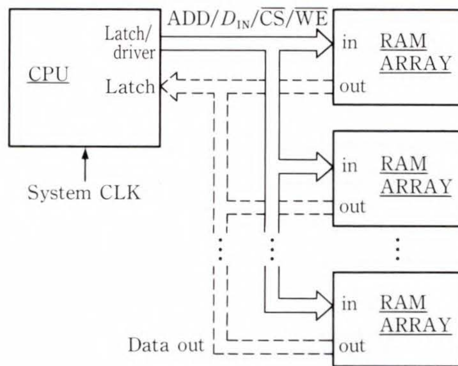


Fig. 6—Memory system model.

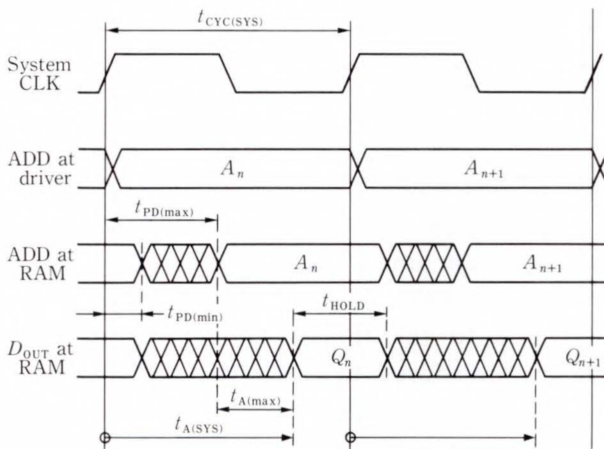


Fig. 7—System read cycle for conventional RAM.

a RAM array in $t_{PD(min)}$ for the fastest case and $t_{PD(max)}$ for the slowest case.

This propagation distribution mainly occurs due to the following factors:

i) Each RAM has a different length signal transmission path from the CPU.

ii) Input capacitance of the RAM varies between the maximum and minimum values.

iii) Speed of the CPU latch and CPU driver also have maximum and minimum values.

iv) The unit speed of the signal transmission path itself has a certain distribution.

by the system clock, RAM output data becomes valid after the skew between the RAM minimum access time ($t_{A(min)}$) corresponding to the fastest address signal ($t_{PD(min)}$) and the RAM maximum access time ($t_{A(max)}$) corresponding to the slowest address signal ($t_{PD(max)}$). In Fig. 7, $t_{A(min)}$ is assumed to be zero for simplification. After the RAM output becomes valid, it must be held at the output for a certain period of time so that the CPU can latch the data. This time is called t_{HOLD}.

The system cycle time ($t_{CYC(SYS)}$) for conventional RAM is expressed as follows.

$$t_{CYC(SYS)} = t_{PD(skew)} + t_{A(max)} + t_{HOLD},$$

where $t_{PD(skew)}$ is the skew of signals transmitted in the system and is given by $t_{PD(max)} - t_{PD(min)}$.

As an example, we applied the following assumptions to estimate the actual read and write cycle times in our system.

$t_{PD(skew)} = 10$ ns:
The transmission skew from the CPU to each RAM and from each RAM to the CPU is assumed to have the same value.

$t_{A(max)} = 10$ ns:
A RAM having an access time of 10 ns is assumed.

$t_{HOLD} = 13$ ns:
A RAM output valid time of 3 ns is assumed for the CPU to latch the data from each RAM. Thus, a data hold time of 13 ns is required for the RAM because of the previously assumed 10 ns transmission skew ($t_{PD(skew)}$) from the RAM to the CPU.

Based on these assumptions, the system cycle time is as follows.

$$t_{CYC(SYS)} = 10 \text{ ns} + 10 \text{ ns} + 13 \text{ ns} = 33 \text{ ns}.$$

Although these values partly depend on each system design, this result implies that RAM having an access time of 10 ns is degraded to about a three times slower cycle time in the system.

2) Read cycle for LL-mode STRAM

The system cycle time when a STRAM is used in the same system is evaluated below. Figure 8 shows the timing diagram. The address signals are conveyed to the STRAM with the same skew as assumed for the conventional RAM. After the STRAM clock edge is inserted within the required setup time (t_S) and the address data is latched in the STRAM, RAM output data is read out within the address access time during the high CLK input state. When the CLK input goes low after $t_{A(max)}$, (i.e. after the output data becomes valid) the

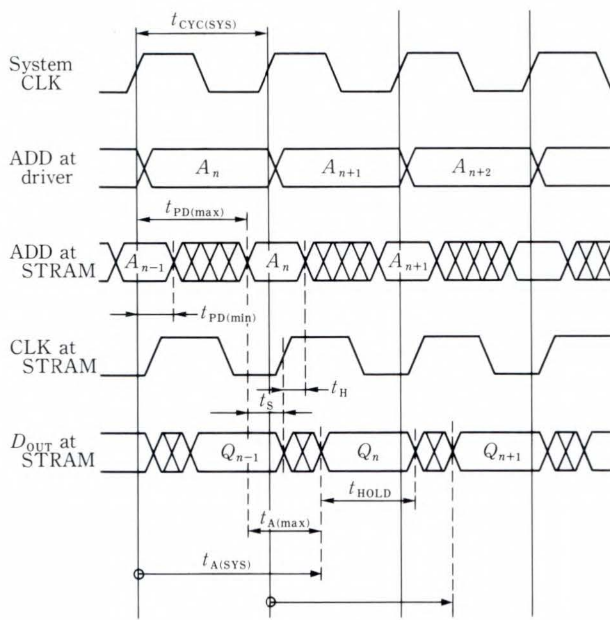


Fig. 8—System read cycle for LL-mode STRAM.

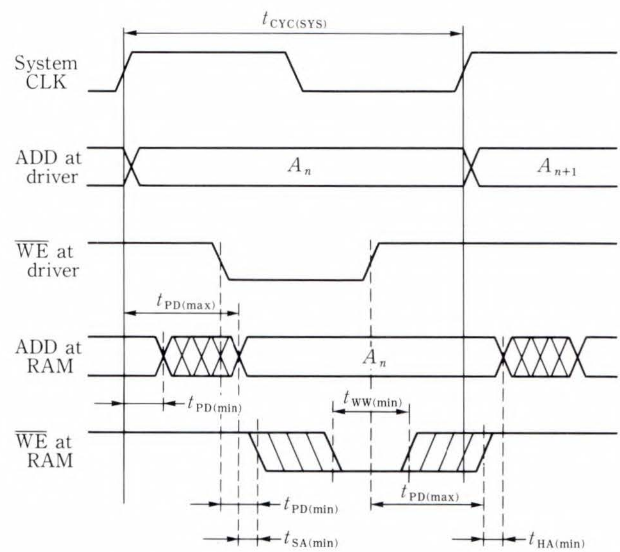


Fig. 9—System write cycle for conventional RAM.

data remains on the output for the data hold time (t_{HOLD}) because the output latch is closed. When the CLK input is high, the input latch is closed. Thus, address signals can be changed to prepare for the next address after the required hold time (t_H) expires.

Based on the functions described above, the system cycle time for the STRAM is expressed as follows.

$t_{CYC(SYS)} = t_{A(max)} + t_{HOLD} - t_S$,

or,

$t_{CYC(SYS)} = t_S + t_H + t_{PD(skew)}$.

The equation having the larger value dominates the cycle time. A smaller value of t_H can shorten the cycle time as indicated by the latter equation, t_S affects the cycle time calculation in opposite ways for the two equations. If we assume $t_{H(min)} = 2$ ns and $t_{A(max)}$, t_{HOLD} and $t_{PD(skew)}$ have the same values as for the conventional RAM, we can obtain the optimum t_S which minimizes the cycle time for both equations. That is,

$t_S = 5.5$ ns.

Using this value, the system level cycle time for the LL-mode STRAM is as follows.

$t_{CYC(SYS)} = 10 \text{ ns} + 13 \text{ ns} - 5.5 \text{ ns} = 17.5$ ns.

As described above, using STRAM can result in a faster system cycle time than conventional RAM under the same system conditions. Although these two types of RAMs have similar system access time ($t_{A(SYS)}$) as shown in Figs. 7 and 8, STRAM can improve the system cycle time due to the timing overlap feature that enables the address to be changed before system access becomes available.

3) Write cycle for conventional RAM

Figure 9 shows the write cycle timing diagram for conventional RAM when address signals and the $\overline{WE}$ signal are transmitted to each RAM with the same amount of signal skew. It is well known that for write cycle timing in a conventional RAM, the required conditions for the address signal setup time ($t_{SA(min)}$) and hold time ($t_{HA(min)}$) with respect to the $\overline{WE}$ signal and minimum pulse width ($t_{WW(min)}$) of the $\overline{WE}$ signal must be guaranteed. To meet these conditions in the system, the following timing conditions must be met (see Fig. 9):

i) $t_{SA(min)}$ during $t_{PD(min)}$ of $\overline{WE}$ signal after $t_{PD(max)}$ of the address signal

ii) $t_{HA(min)}$ during $t_{PD(min)}$ of the address signal after $t_{PD(max)}$ of $\overline{WE}$ signal.

iii) $t_{WW(min)}$ between $t_{PD(min)}$ and $t_{PD(max)}$ of $\overline{WE}$ signals

The system cycle that satisfies these conditions is expressed as follows.

$t_{CYC(SYS)} = t_{CYC(device)} + 3 \times t_{PD(skew)}$,

the $t_{CYC(device)}$ is the write cycle time of each

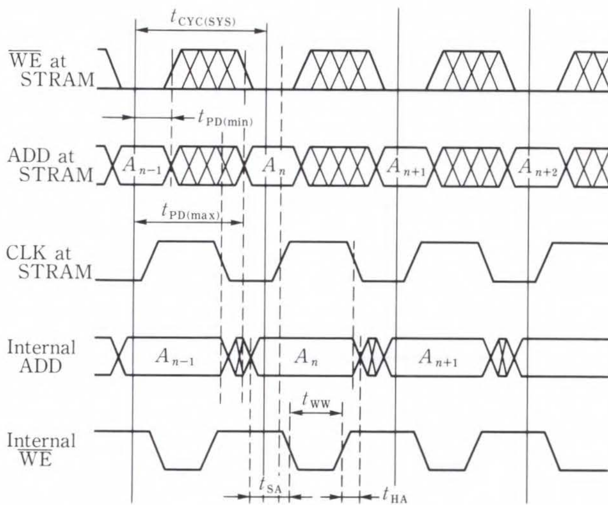


Fig. 10–System write cycle for LL-mode STRAM.

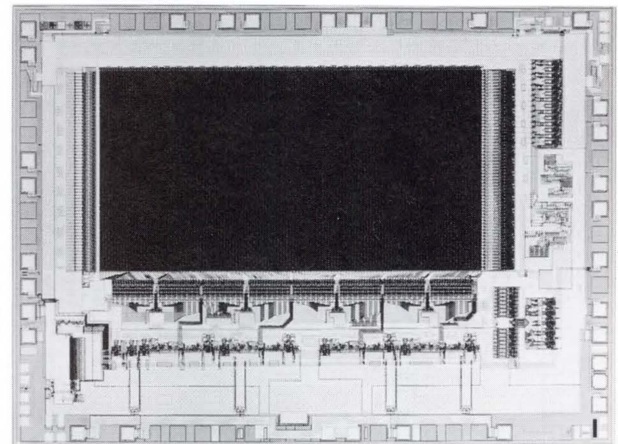


Fig. 12–4K x 4 STRAM chip (6.1 mm x 4.5 mm).

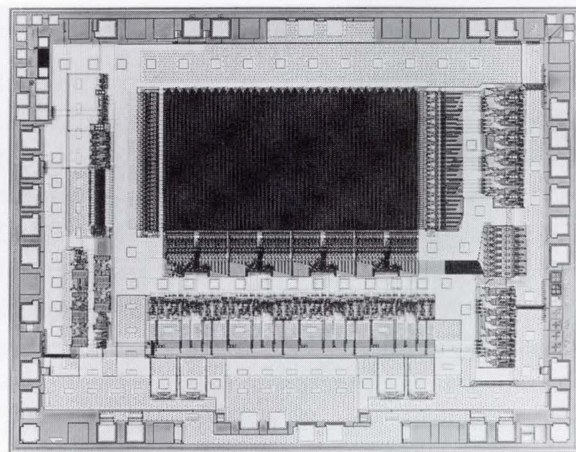


Fig. 11–1K x 4 STRAM chip (4.5 mm x 3.5 mm).

RAM. It is given by $t_{SA(min)} + t_{WW(min)} + t_{HA(min)}$. Let us assume that $t_{CYC(device)}$ is 10 ns.

$t_{CYC(SYS)} = 10$ ns $+ 3 \times 10$ ns $= 40$ ns.

This indicates that the system level cycle time can be as much four times that of the device level. As the device performance is improved, the ratio of signal skew in the total system cycle time becomes larger. The other problem associated with the write cycle time of high-speed conventional RAM is the difficulty in generating a narrow write pulse width under a large load in the system. Even if this is possible, it is very expensive.

4) Write cycle for LL-mode STRAM

The timing diagram shown in Fig. 10 shows that the skew of the address signals and $\overline{WE}$ signal can overlap because the $\overline{WE}$ signal is held at the STRAM CLK input edge in addition to the address signals. Immediately after receiving the low $\overline{WE}$ signal, the internal pulse generator automatically starts operating to guarantee an internal write pulse that satisfies the required conditions for the internal setup time and hold time with respect to the address signals. These operations are implemented during the CLK input high state with respect to the internal Address and $\overline{WE}$ timings as shown in Fig. 10. The LL-mode STRAM write operation can be completed within the same CLK input high state period as the read cycle because a general characteristic of RAM devices is that $t_{WW(min)}$ is almost the same as $t_{A(max)}$. This means that STRAM enables a write cycle time equivalent to the read cycle time. Using the values previously obtained as the STRAM read cycle time, $t_{CYC(SYS)}$ of the STRAM write cycle can be expressed as follows.

$t_{CYC(SYS)}$: WRITE $= t_{CYC(SYS)}$: READ $= 17.5$ ns.

As mentioned before, use of STRAM reduces the system level write cycle time to less than half that of conventional RAM.

6. Development of 1K x 4 and 4K x 4 STRAM

Figure 11 is a die photo of a 1K x 4 STRAM and Fig. 12 is a die photo of a 4K x 4 STRAM.

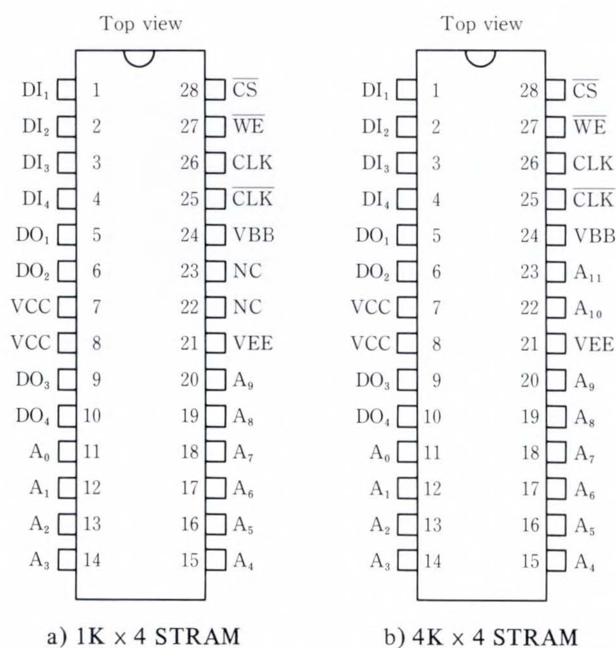


Fig. 13–Pin assignments.

Based on this die, three variations for the LL-, RR-, and RL-modes can be manufactured using metal option technology. Both 10K ECL I/O and 100K I/O can be supported for each mode. Figure 13 shows that the pin configuration is common to each mode. Expansion from 1K × 4 to 4K × 4 is possible.

Two CLK input pins can implement high-speed clocking by using the CLK input and $\overline{\text{CLK}}$ input simultaneously in the differential mode. Single ended mode of the CLK input or $\overline{\text{CLK}}$ input is also possible by connecting $\overline{\text{CLK}}$ or CLK to the internal reference voltage (VBB).

The process technologies used are the currently mature IOP-II (Isolation by Oxide and Polysilicon) technology and 1 μm lithography.

The main characteristics for the LL-mode STRAM are listed in Table 3.

Table 3. Main characteristics of 1K × 4 and 4K × 4 LL-mode STRAM

Parameter	Symbol	1K × 4 STRAM	4K × 4 STRAM
Cycle time	t_{CYC}	9 ns min	13 ns min
Clock pulse width high	$t_{WH(CLK)}$	6 ns min	10 ns min
Address access time	$t_{A(ADD)}$	7 ns max	10 ns max
Power supply current	I_{EE}	−380 mA min	

7. Conclusion

This paper introduces STRAM as a RAM having a new circuit architecture that can provide higher performance in the system than conventional RAM. This is achieved by adding relatively simple on-chip latch or register circuits and a write pulse generator using the same process technology. A system model is used to show that STRAM can improve the system cycle speed by more than twice that of conventional RAM. Thus, we can expect that STRAM will be widely used as a standard device in the future as a substitute for conventional RAM. STRAM will gain a reputation as an indispensable technology especially for higher-speed RAM devices because STRAM can avoid signal skews that are becoming a major factor in limiting the improvement of system performance[2].

References

1) Graham, A. and Sando, S.: Pipelined Static RAM Endows Cache Memories with 1 ns Speeds. *Electron. Design*, pp. 157-170, Dec. 27, (1984).
2) Lineback, J.R.: "SYSTEM SNAGS SHOULDN'T SLOW THE BOOM IN FAST STATIC RAMS". *Electronics*, **60**, 15, pp. 60-62, July 23, (1987).

Chikai Ohno
Bipolar LSI Design Dept.
FUJITSU VLSI LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
Aoyama Gakuin University 1972
Specializing in Design and Development of Bipolar Memories

UDC 621.377.621:681.327.67

3D Stacked Capacitor Cell for Mega Bit DRAM

• Tomio Nakano • Takashi Yabu

(Manuscript received June 20, 1988)

This paper discusses the three-dimensional stacked capacitor (3D STC) cell technology that Fujitsu used in 1-Mbit DRAMS (Fujitsu was the first to do this), and the development of 1-Mbit and 4-Mbit DRAMs using the 3D STC technology. 3D STC technology is the key to cell area reduction enabling densities higher than 1-Mbit. This technology provides mass production capability and a high immunity to alpha-particle-induced soft errors. To respond to market demands for low power consumption, high speed, and high reliability, 1-Mbit DRAMs were designed using CMOS technology. A 4-Mbit DRAM having an access time of 56 ns and low power consumption of 175 mW was also developed.

1. Introduction

Since the 1-Kbit dynamic memory (DRAM) was developed, the density and performance of MOS DRAMs have steadily improved and have led the semiconductor technologies of Fujitsu. In 1985, a three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell was developed[1] and first used in a 1-Mbit DRAM.

The three-dimensional design of a capacitor using this cell technology results in a large cell capacitance in a very small cell area and high scalability. These features have attracted much attention to this cell technology and it is being widely used for 4-Mbit DRAMs[2),3)]. This report discusses the three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell (3D STC) technology and the 1-Mbit and 4-Mbit DRAMs that use this technology.

2. Development of DRAMs having capacities up to 256 Kbits

Figure 1 shows the DRAM developments by Fujitsu. Since the development of the 1-Kbit DRAM in 1971, integration has quadrupled every three years. A 4-Mbit DRAM may be introduced to the market in 1989. The major points of this steady progress in high integration is reviewed below.

Figure 2 shows that the cell area has been reduced by a factor of 400 in the last 18 years. This area reduction was mainly due to the progress in fine lithography techniques, cell structure, and circuit technology. The standard DRAM design rule for fine lithography has been to make the lithography 0.7 times finer in each generation. The 4-Mbit DRAM must now be processed in units of submicrons. In each generation of DRAM, a cell area reduction technology has been developed (see Table 1).

The general progress of DRAMs can be viewed as the advance of memory cell technology. The memory cell of a 1-Kbit DRAM consists of three (or four) transistors (see Fig. 3a)[4]. Although this cell has a large area, it has the advantages of a current amplification capability and is easy to read. In the single-transistor cell system that was first incorporated in the 4-Kbit DRAM, a one-bit memory cell consists of a transistor as a switch and a capacitor that stores information as an electric charge (see Fig. 3b).

Because the single-transistor cell does not have current amplification capability, the signal voltage on a bit line is very small (100 mV to 200 mV). Advances in circuit technology, including the sense amplifier, has enabled this small signal to be detected at high speeds and has provided the basis for DRAMs ever since.

Table 1. Development of DRAM technology for each generation.

Capacity (bit)	Lithography technology		Cell structure	Circuit technology
	Design rule (μm)	Etching		
1K	9	Wet	3 transistors	pMOS dynamic
4K	8	Wet	1 transistor	nMOS dynamic
16K	6	Wet	Double poly-Si	MPX add. 16 pin PKG
64K	3	Dry	Double poly-Si	Single 5 V supply
256K	2.5	Dry	Triple poly-Si	Redundancy, high speed
1M	1.8	Dry	3D STC cell	CMOS dynamic
4M	0.8	Dry	4 layer poly-Si STC	Blocknized peripheral

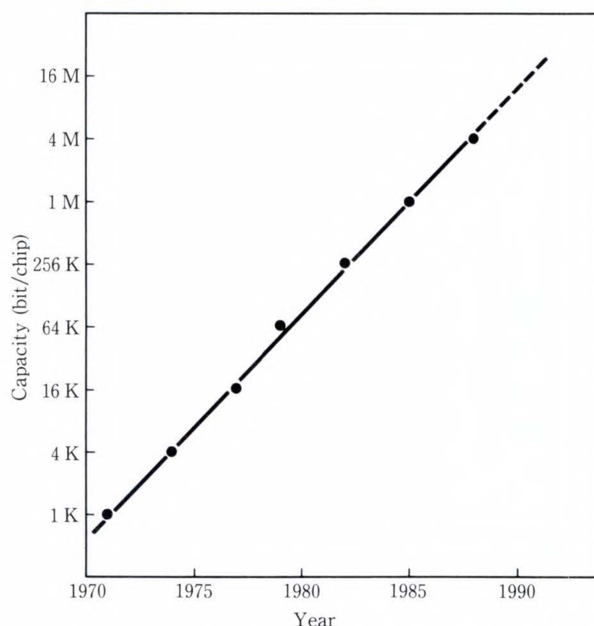


Fig. 1—DRAM development of Fujitsu.

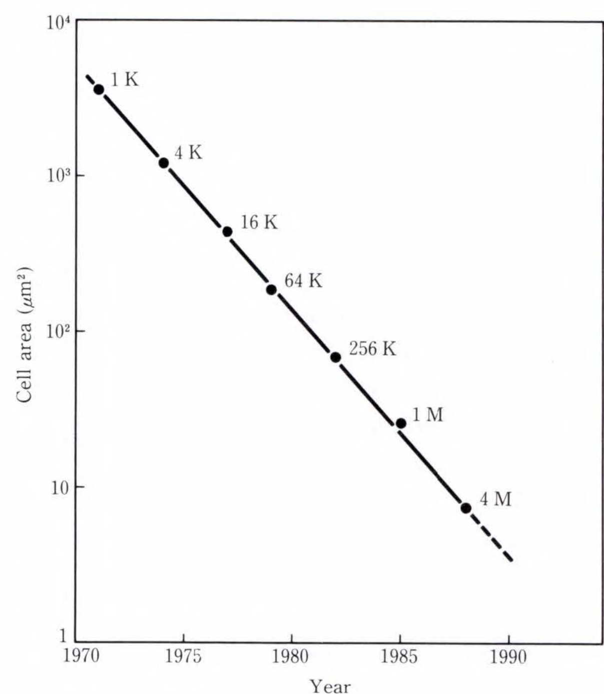


Fig. 2—History of cell area reduction (Cell area reduced by a factor of 400 in 18 years).

The following section explains the principle of operation of the sense amplifier for the single-transistor cell using the circuit of the 256-Kbit DRAM MB81256[5]) as an example.

2.1 Sense amplifier for single-transistor cell

Figures 4 and 5 show the major circuits of the sense amplifier and their operating waveforms. A sense amplifier consists of a dynamic flip-flop circuit having a pair of transistors (Q_1 and Q_2). A small differential voltage between the left and right bit lines is quickly amplified. That is, sense amplifier activation clocks A and B are set to a high level sequentially at time t_1 (see Fig. 5), and the differential voltage between nodes N_1 and N_2 increases. At time t_2 after amplification, the active restore circuit operates to recharge the bit line to the high level V_{cc}, and the series of read operations is completed.

The cell read signal voltage can significantly affect the stability of sense amplifier operation. This is analyzed in a simplified manner below. In Fig. 4, the bit line capacitance is C_{BL}, cell capacitance is C_S, dummy cell capacitance is C_D, and the cell potential at time t_0 is V_s. The

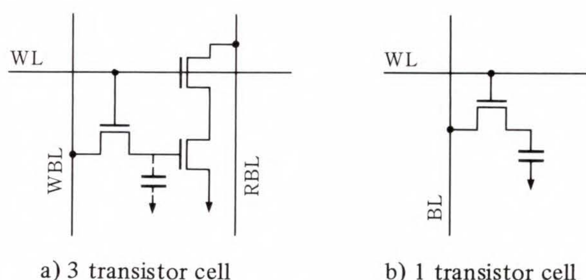


Fig. 3—DRAM memory cell circuit.

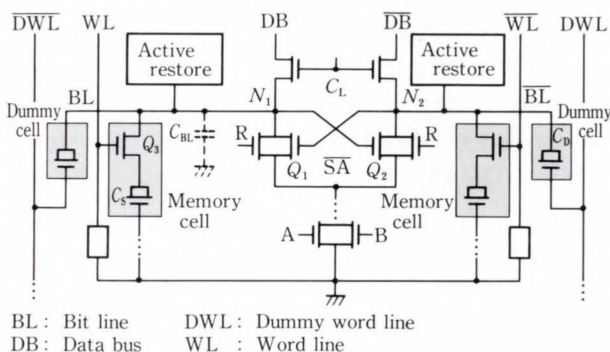


Fig. 4—Sense amplifier circuitry of 254-K DRAM.

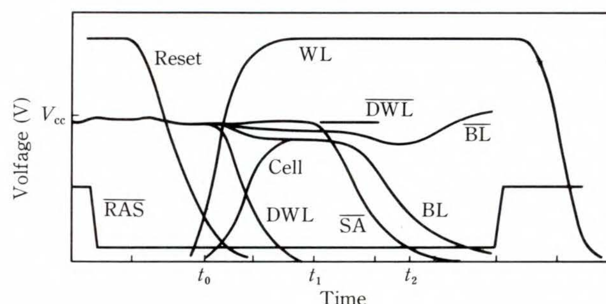


Fig. 5—Operational waveforms of sense amplifier.

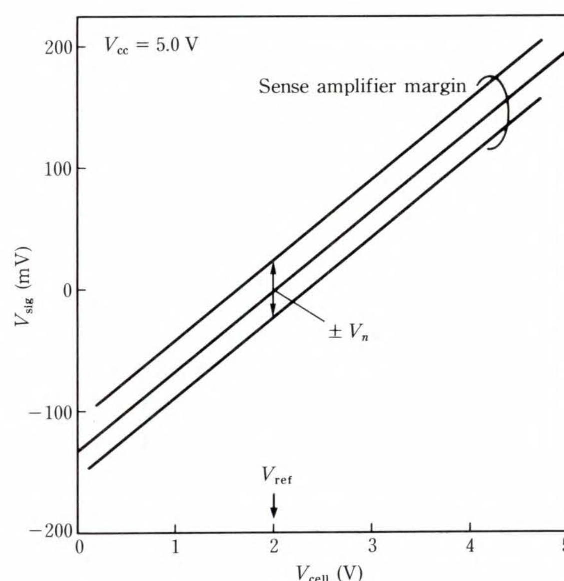


Fig. 6—Relation between V_{cell} and V_{sig} (Dummy cell is adjusted to fit $V_{ref} = 2$ V).

potential difference (or signal voltage) V_{sig} between sense amplifier input nodes N_1 and N_2 at time t_1 is determined by the ratio of cell and bit line capacitances and is expressed as follows.

$$V_{sig} = -\frac{C_S}{C_{BL}+C_S}(V_{cc} - V_s)\cdot \gamma + \frac{C_D}{C_{BL}+C_D} V_{cc}\cdot \gamma \pm V_n.$$

In the above expression, γ is the cell read efficiency and V_n is the noise voltage to the sense amplifier. From the above expression and the MB81256 cell capacity, the relation between cell potential V_s and signal voltage V_{sig} is obtained as shown in Fig. 6. In this example, the reference voltage is set to 2 V and the read margin at the high level is set above the read margin at the low level because of the leakage at the p-n junction and the cell charge loss due to alpha particles[6].

2.2 DRAMs and cell technology before 1-Mbit DRAM

The 64-Kbit DRAM can be operated by a single 5 V power supply while conventional DRAMs require three power supplies (+12 V ±5 V). This design enabled the DRAM to be connected to peripheral circuitry more easily and expanded the field of DRAM applications from main storage in large computers to personal computers. This resulted in a dramatic increase in the demand for DRAMs. nMOS technology, which had been used for DRAMs having capacities of 4 Kbits to 256 Kbits, was replaced by CMOS technology when 1-Mbit DRAMs were developed to reduce power consumption and increase speed.

The objective of cell structure development at this time was the promotion of multilayer and

three-dimensional designs. For DRAMs having 4 Kbits or less, the capacitor and transistor consist of a single poly-silicon layer whose capacitor area occupies only a small portion of the cell area. Double poly-silicon layer technology was first used for a 16-Kbit DRAM. The double poly-silicon layer structure provides the first-layer for the capacitor electrode and the second layer for the transistor gates. This increases the capacitor area occupancy ratio. In addition, the function of each poly-silicon layer can be limited, enabling the optimum gate oxide thickness for the capacitor and transistor to be selected individually. Thus the maximum capacitance can be provided in a very small cell area.

The multilayer poly-silicon design was further advanced. The resulting three-layer poly-silicon technology developed for the 256-Kbit DRAM has increased the speed even more. This technology provided the basis for the smooth development of 1-Mbit three-dimensional stacked capacitor (3D STC) cells. The cells of DRAMs having 256 Kbits or less use the surface of the silicon substrate for the capacitor and transistor and are classified as planar cells. If the cell area was reduced by using only fine lithography together with the planar technique to obtain capacities of 1 Mbits to 4 Mbits, the cell capacity required to guarantee immunity from alpha-particle-induced soft errors could not be achieved. To solve this problem, the three-dimensional design was employed based on the concept of a stacked capacitor cell which overlays the capacitor on the transistor for efficient use of the silicon surface.

3. Stacked capacitor cell technology

3.1 Features of mega bit DRAM cells

Various cell structures have been proposed for mega bit DRAM memory cells having three-dimensional structures. The stacked cell forms a capacitor on a single-transistor cell access transistor. The trench cell forms a capacitor in a trench dug in the silicon substrate. Many of the suggested cell structures were trench cell types, but planar cells, which were mainly used for DRAMs having capacities of 256 Kbits or less, are generally used for the 1-Mbit DRAMs now in mass production.

However, the planar cell is reaching the limit of its capability. When the future capacity of DRAMs is considered, it is now necessary to select other cell types as the memory cells for 4-Mbit to 16-Mbit DRAMs. Recently, the developments in stacked capacitor cells have gained attention for their applicability to fine lithography and high scalability.

Fujitsu led other manufacturers by developing the three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell and using it for 1-Mbit DRAMs. Fujitsu subsequently developed a memory cell for a 4-Mbit DRAM having the smallest cell area reported so far using fine lithography technology. Furthermore, Fujitsu has promoted the development of stacked capacitor cell technology combined with a dielectrically encapsulated trench (DIET) capacitor cell[7) which combines the advantages of trench cells and stacked cells.

3.2 Three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell

The memory cell structure is most important for the design of a DRAM. The memory cell almost determines the performance and mass producibility of the DRAM. The memory cell size of the 1-Mbit DRAM must be reduced to about one-third that of the 256-Kbit DRAM. The memory cell size of the 4-Mbit DRAM must be reduced to about one-third that of the 1-Mbit DRAM by using a scaling factor of 0.6 to 0.7. When Fujitsu developed the 1-Mbit DRAM, it planned to develop a basic structure for the memory cell that could be used for at least two generations. After investigating various memory cell structures such as the stacked cell, trench cell, and planar cell, Fujitsu selected the stacked capacitor cell structure due to its high scalability and thus the expandability to 4-Mbit DRAMs.

3.2.1 Folded bit line configuration

The basic idea of a stacked cell has existed since 1978[8),9)]. This idea, however, simply stacks the capacitor on the access transistor of the cell and has an open bit line configuration.

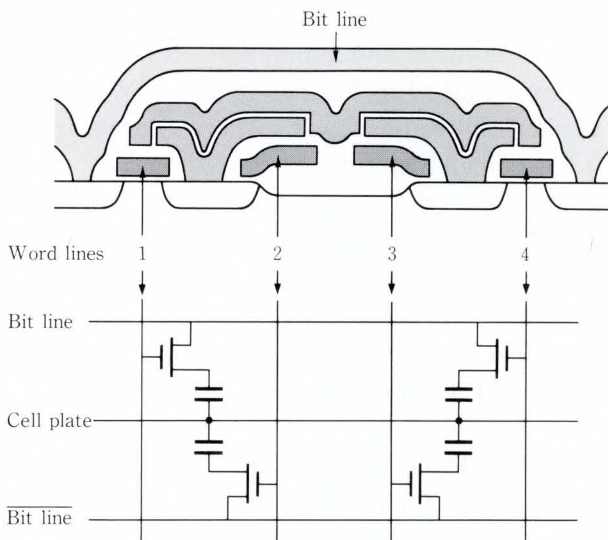


Fig. 7–3D stacked capacitor cell.

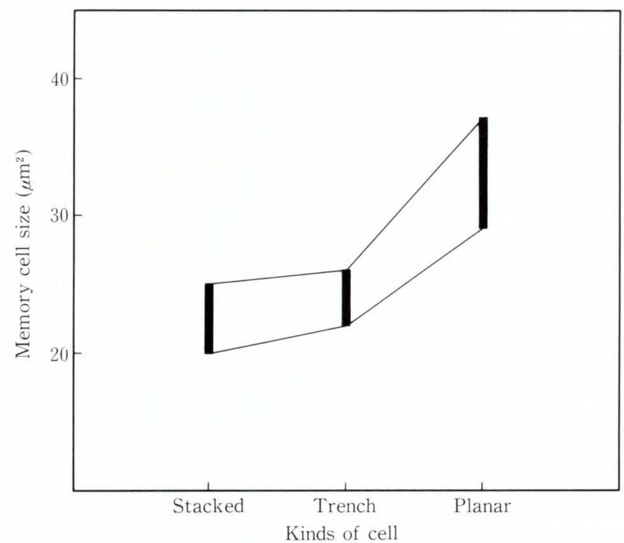


Fig. 8–Comparison of cell size for three types of cell structure.

Fujitsu has also used the open bit line configuration for its 64-Kbit and 256-Kbit DRAMSs. However, mega bit DRAMs which have reduced memory cell size require a cell structure that enables the folded bit line configuration for an improved noise margin. Fujitsu has improved the conventional stacked capacitor cell structure by locating word lines under the second polysilicon layer that forms the charge storage electrode (see Fig. 7). This structure forms a memory cell at every other intersection of a bit line and a word line and enables the folded bit line configuration.

3.2.2 Cell size

A planar cell forms a flat capacitor on the surface of a substrate. The capacitor area is reduced in proportion to the reduction of memory cell size. Even when the fine lithography technique is fully implemented, it has a limited ability to provide a large capacitance in a small area. Because a trench cell has a trench in the substrate in which the capacitor is formed, the capacitor is also formed on the surface of the side walls within the trench. If the trench is deep, a relatively large memory cell capacitance can easily be provided.

A stacked cell forms the capacitor on the access transistor. Therefore, the memory cell capacitance can be increased because the capacitor is formed on the top and sides of the poly-silicon layer for storage node. The bent shape of the storage node also contributes to the capacitance increase.

The memory cell areas of the stacked cell, trench cell, and planar cell were compared when the same lithography technique was used and the capacitor areas were the same (see Fig. 8). The results show that the three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell is the best for reducing the memory cell size.

3.2.3 Soft error immunity

A soft error is an event in which cell information is destroyed. The charge generated by an alpha particle beneath the charge storage region of the cell is absorbed in the diffusion layer, and the voltage potential of the cell is lowered causing cell information to be destroyed.

The first method to prevent soft errors is to suppress the generation of alpha particles by increasing the purity of the package material or by preventing alpha particles from entering the silicon substrate. The second method is to increase the charge storage capacitance to reduce the adverse effect of the charges generated by the alpha particles. The third method is to design a memory cell structure having high resistance to soft errors by lowering the charge collection efficiency of the diffusion layer.

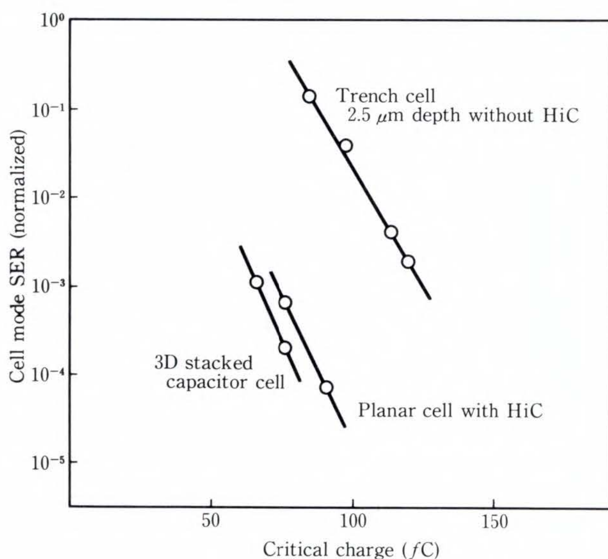


Fig. 9—Comparison of SER for three types of cell structure.

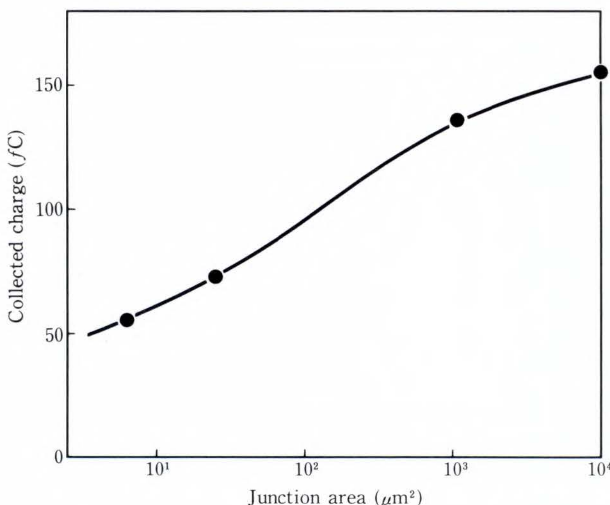


Fig. 10—Dependence of collected charge on junction area.

To increase the storage capacitance, the thickness of the capacitor film must be reduced and the storage electrode areas must be increased. To lower the charge collection efficiency, the diffusion layer area must be reduced or a potential barrier must be formed. For example, a HiC structure[10] or memory cell formation in a p-well[11] is required.

When the stacked capacitor cell was developed, three test devices having the stacked capacitor cell, planar cell, and trench cell structure were made and actual soft error rates were measured (see Fig. 9). The results show that the stacked cell causes fewer soft errors even though it has a small memory cell capacitance.

Because the capacitor is formed on polysilicon in the stacked cell structure, its diffusion area is very small and the collected charge amount is reduced. On the other hand, the capacitor area in a planar or trench cell is equivalent to the diffusion layer area and the edge of the drain is added to this area. The diffusion layer in the charge storage region is therefore enlarged and the collected charge amount become large. Although a large memory cell capacity can theoretically be maintained by the trench cell structure, the critical charge amount must be increased because the diffusion layer area increases according to the increase in the capacity. For this reason, an additional countermeasure, including a potential barrier on the side walls of the capacitor, is required.

This characteristic can also be illustrated by the results of an experiment in which collected charge amounts are measured using test devices having various junction areas (see Fig. 10). If the junction area is small in comparison to the charge amount to be collected, the collected charge amount is reduced because the effective funneling length is shortened by the electric field distortion at the junction edges, and because adjacent cells partially absorb the charge.

3.2.4 Charge retention characteristic

The charge retention characteristic of the memory cell is important in relation to the refresh time of the DRAM. In a 256-Kbit DRAM, the refresh time is 256 cycles/4 ms. That is, 1 024 memory cells are refreshed by one refresh operation and the operation must be executed 256 times in 4 ms. In a 1-Mbit DRAM, the refresh time is 512 cycles/8 ms, and the refresh time of a 4-Mbit DRAM is 16 ms if the refresh overhead time is the same as that of the 1-Mbit DRAM. The refresh time doubles for each DRAM generation.

To prolong the charge storage time, all sources of leakage current must be reduced.

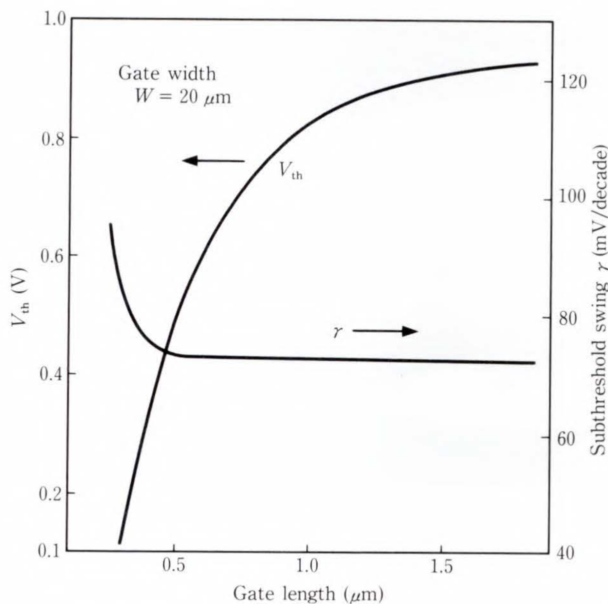


Fig. 11—Threshold voltage as a function of gate length.

When compared with other cell structures, the stacked capacitor cell has a small p-n junction area of the capacitor and lower leakage current. The stacked capacitor cell can also incorporate conventional isolation techniques, resulting in sufficient isolation width and a lower leakage current.

The leakage current of the capacitor dielectric film on the poly-silicon is not more than 10^{-16} A per cell when the film thickness is 5 nm (effective oxide thickness) and the electric field in the insulating film is 5 MV/cm.

When the transistor becomes very small, the characteristic degradation due to hot carriers and short and narrow channel effects become a problem. The stacked cell can use a large access transistor in comparison with the planar and trench cells. Alternatively, if the same size transistor is used, the stacked cell can have a smaller memory cell size than that of other memory cell structures. Figure 11 shows that the subthreshold swing even in the submicron gate length is 80 mV/decade and the leakage current can be suppressed enough to eliminate the adverse effect on the charge retention characteristic.

3.3 Development of 4-Mbit DRAM memory cell

A 4-Mbit DRAM memory cell was developed by further scaling the three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell developed for 1-Mbit DRAMs. The basic memory cell structure is common to 1-Mbit and 4-Mbit DRAMs. The 1-Mbit DRAM incorporates three-layers poly-silicon and one-layer Al process technology, where polycide is used for word lines, and Al wiring is used for bit lines. The 4-Mbit DRAM uses further advanced technology having four-layers poly-silicon and a one-layer Al process.

In the 4-Mbit DRAM, contacts with the Al word lines are made at eight positions in the cell array to minimize the delay time due to the polycide word lines on the first poly-silicon layer. The bit line is formed by the 4th layer of polycide on which it is easy to form a fine bit line pitch. This eliminates stray capacitances that would be occur if thick Al bit lines were formed. This design resulted in a ratio of bit line capacitance to cell capacitance C_B/C_S of about eleven, which is sufficient for signal sensing.

In addition, a cell capacitance of 27 *f*F was realized by the development of a capacitor insulating film having a thickness of 10 nm (effective exide thickness) or less and by virtue of the three-dimensional structure of the stacked cell. Thus, a 7.5 μm^2 cell was developed and put into use in a practical device.

3.3.1 Four-layer poly-silicon process

Figure 12 shows the process to make the 4-Mbit DRAM memory cell. The substrate is p-type silicon. After isolation and formation of the n-well of CMOS for peripheral circuitry using conventional methods, gate electrodes, including those for the access transistor, are formed on the first poly-silicon layer (polycide). Then the source drain area is formed by ion implantation in Fig. 12a). After an oxide film is grown by the CVD method and the contact holes are formed by imprinting a mask pattern, the second poly-silicon layer for the storage nodes is grown. To process the second poly-silicon layer, which affects the storage capacity, accurate patterning was performed while avoiding the influence of the first poly-sylicon layer in Fig. 12b). For this process, new lithography and etching techniques to delineate an exact pattern of the reticule and a new

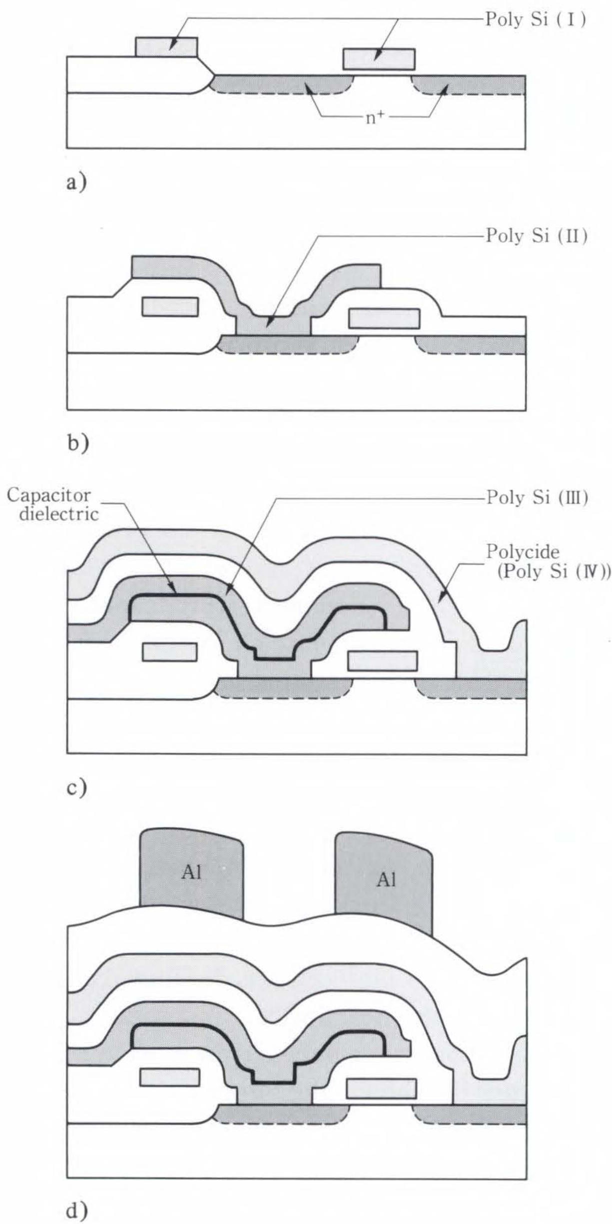


Fig. 12–Schematic veiw of 3D stacked capacitor cell and fabrication process.

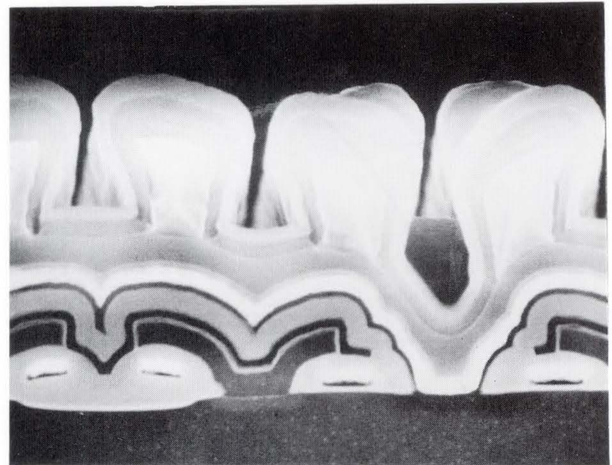


Fig. 13–SEM cross sectional view of 3D stacked capacitor cell.

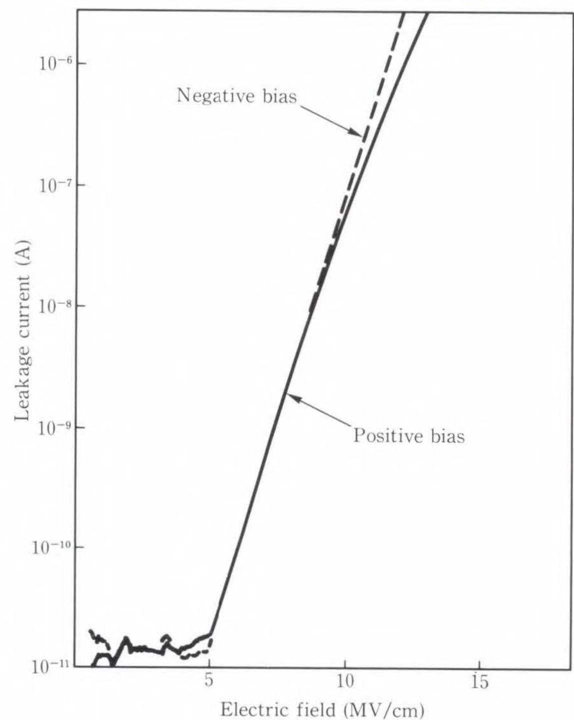


Fig. 14–Leakage current of capacitor film.

technique of producing accurate and defectless reticules were developed.

After the capacitor dielectric film is formed, the third poly-silicon layer for the cell plate is grown. After the oxide films between layers are grown, the bit line contact holes are opened and bit lines are formed by the fourth silicon layer (polycide) in Fig. 12c). Then, aluminum word lines are formed by the conventional method in Fig. 12d). Figure 13 shows the cross-sectional SEM view.

3.3.2 Capacitor dielectric film

A key technique of the process for the stacked capacitor cell is the formation of the capacitor dielectric film on the poly-silicon. The 4-Mbit DRAM requires a film thickness not more than 10 nm (effective oxide thickness). There is also a physical limit for the silicon oxide film thickness. When the thickness be-

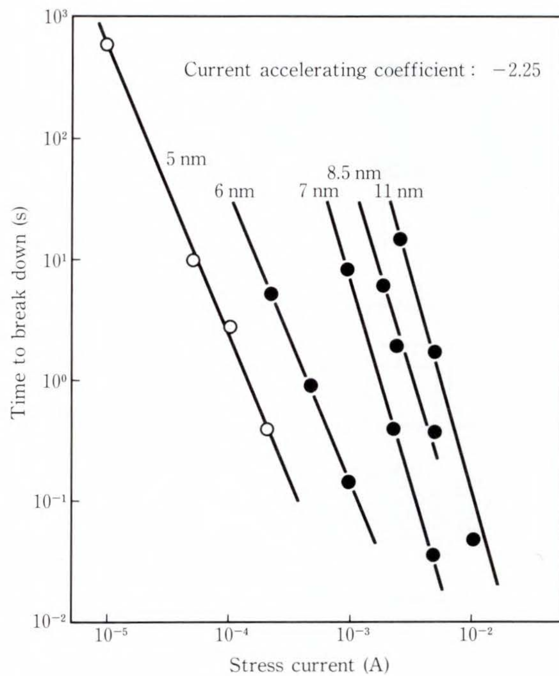


Fig. 15—Stress current on lifetime (0.1% cumulative failure).

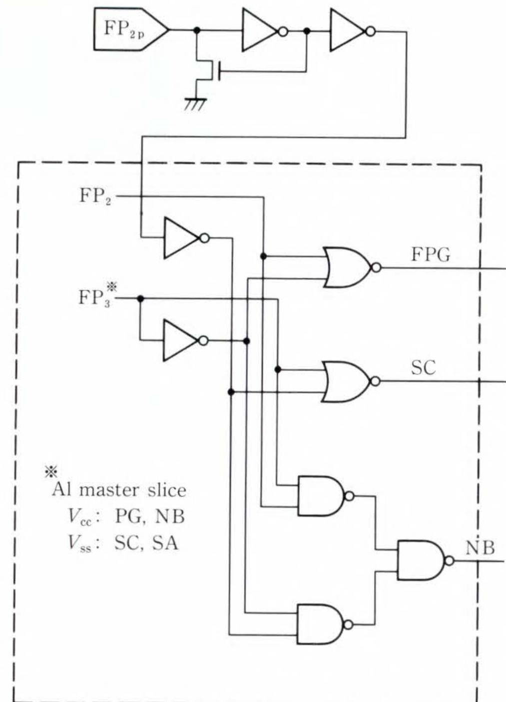


Fig. 16—Master slice/wire bond option control circuitry.

comes 5 nm or less, the conductivity mechanism of the film is changed and its dielectric characteristics rapidly deteriorate. Therefore, the film cannot be thinner than this limit.

To determine the minimum limit of film thickness, I-V characteristics were measured as shown in Fig. 14 using a film 5 nm thick (effective oxide thickness) which is close to the physical limit, and by using a test pattern having a 40 mm^2 capacitor area and having the equivalent steps as a 4-Mbit DRAM. This measurement confirmed that the leakage current per cell under the device operating conditions is not more than 10^{-16} A.

In addition, the time dependent dielectric breakdown (TDDB) of the capacitor film was estimated by an accelerated test using constant-current stress (see Fig. 15). The operating life of the capacitor film calculated using the current acceleration factor obtained from the test result was essentially infinite even for a film thickness of 5 nm.

The results of these measurements showed that the capacitor dielectric film on the polysilicon has sufficient charge retention characteristics and operating life even when its thickness is close to the physical limit. Consequently, a capacitor film having a 7 nm to 8 nm thickness was selected considering fluctuations in the production process.

4. Development of mega bit CMOS DRAM

4.1 Eight types of 1-Mbit DRAM on the same chip

This section explains the circuits and features of Fujitsu's CMOS DRAMs that use the three-dimensional stacked capacitor cell and CMOS peripheral circuits described in the preceding chapter.

The MB81C1000/1/2/3 series having 1-Mbit × 1-bit organization and the MB81C4256/7/8/9 series having 256-Kbit × 4-bit organization from eight different types of 1-Mbit DRAM fabricated on the same bulk chip. The type of DRAM product is selected by means of the aluminum master-slice and wire bonding in the assembly step. Figure 16 shows the control circuit for these DRAMs. When FP_2 and FP_3 are pulled up to V_{cc} or down to V_{ss}, the FAST PAGE (FPG), NIBBLE (NB), STATIC COLUMN (SC),

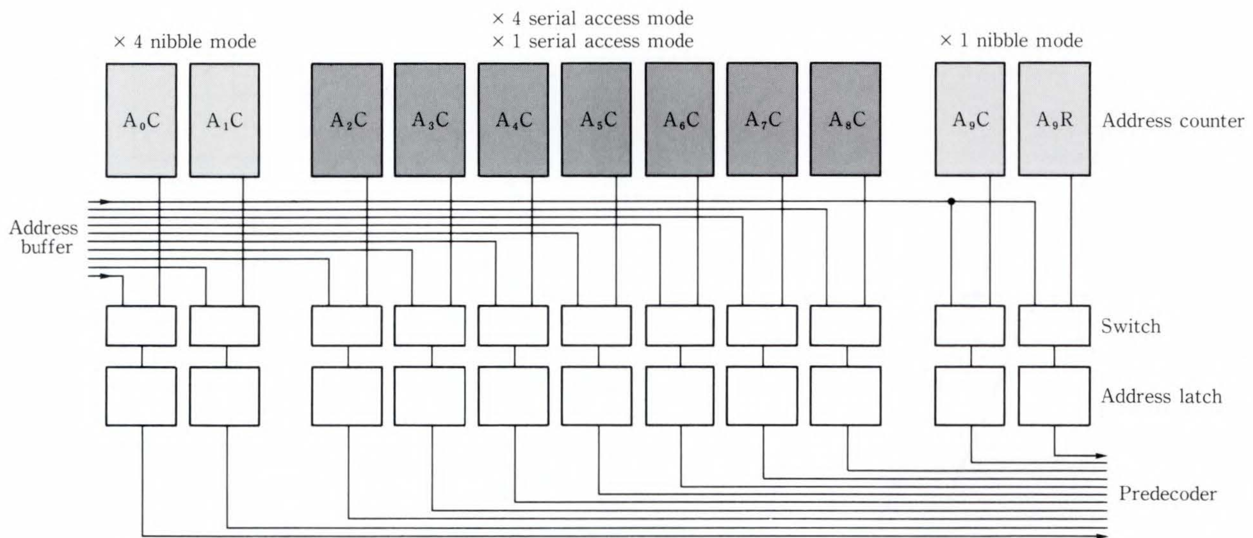


Fig. 17—Address counter block diagram for nibble mode and serial access mode.

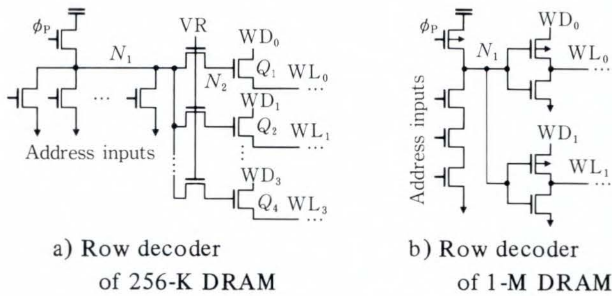


Fig. 18—Compariosn of row decoder between nMOS and CMOS.

or SERIAL ACCESS (SA) mode can be selected.

Figure 17 shows the address counter connections to provide the SA mode. In the 256-Kbit × 4-bit organization, continuous 2-Kbit data can be accessed at high speed by operating all counter bits A_0C to A_8C. If the two low-order bits of this counter are used, the NB mode can be provided. In the 1-Mbit × 1-bit organization, the counter operation is the same as in the 256-Kbit × 4-bit organization except that the address boundary is A_0C to A_9C.

4.1.1 Power consumption

The MB81C1000 series uses a p-type substrate and n-well CMOS technology to provide low power consumption and high speed operation at the same time. Figure 18a) shows the circuit of the row decoders used in MB81256 based on conventional nMOS technology. During address decoding in MB 81256, all other decoders except the selected one repeat charging and discharging at every memory cycle. In the MB81C1000 shown in Fig. 18b), only the selected 1-bit decoder repeats charging and discharging. All other decoders are in the standby state (NODE N_1 = H). Because of this feature, the gate capacitances of large transistors Q_1 to Q_4 are not charged and discharged every cycle, and unnecessary power consumption is avoided. Furthermore, ground noise and substrate noise caused by discharging can be eliminated, resulting in stable operation of the sense amplifier.

Because the reset level of the bit lines is set to about 1/2 V_{cc}, the charging and discharging current (which significantly affects the power consumption of the DRAM) is reduced to about 35 percent that of the conventional V_{cc} resetting method. In addition, each bit line is divided into four sections by the shared sense amplifiers located on both sides of the column decoder in the middle. This enables the elimination of charging and discharging bit lines that are not operated for reading and writing. With this design an effective reduction in power consumption is also achieved.

4.1.2 Reliability

Setting the bit line reset voltage to 1/2 V_{cc} results not only in low poer consumption but also in improved reliability.

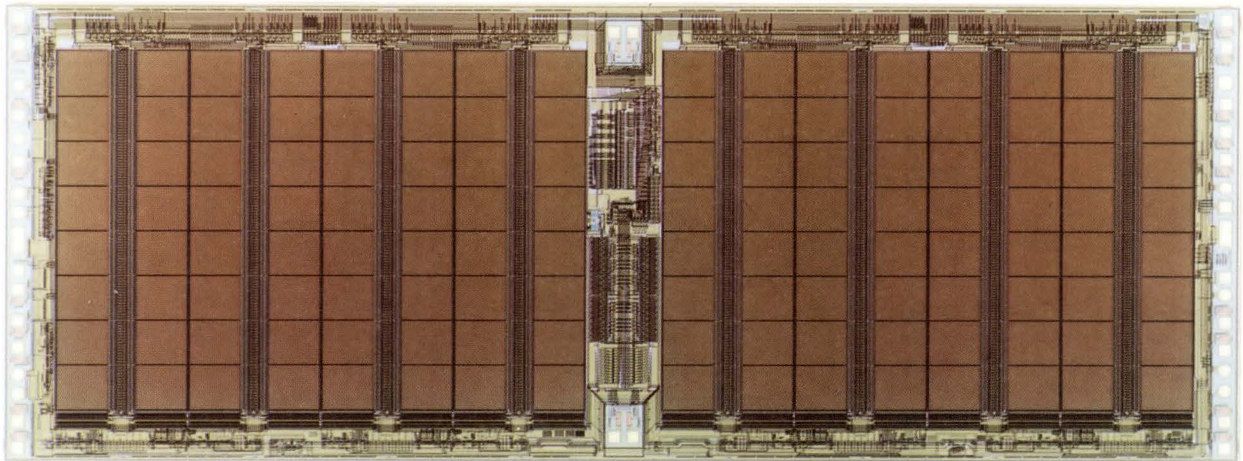


Fig. 19—Photomicrograph of 4M DRAM (Chip size is ($4.92 \times 13.22\ mm^2$).

First, by making the voltage potential of the bit line reset level equal to that of the capacitor plate of the cell, the electric field at the capacitor film is reduced by half. This enables the capacitor film to be much thinner, reduces alphaparticle-inducec soft errors, and improves the time dependent dielectric breakdown (TDDB) of the capacitor film itself.

Second, the potential of the capacitor plate of the cell and the bit line reset voltage are set to follow the fluctuation in the power supply (V_{cc}). This stabilizes the read signal voltage to the sense amplifiers regardless of fluctuations in V_{cc}, and makes the device highly resistant to V_{cc} noise (V bump).

Third, boost circuits, including the word driver, can be eliminated and fully static circuits are used for all internal circuits. As a result, the memory not only has the advantageous feature of a CMOS circuit that is highly resistive to small leakage current but also eliminates the characteristic degradation, including that due to hot carriers.

The fourth advantage of the $1/2\ V_{cc}$ reset system is the reduction in the peak current of the V_{cc} power supply. Excessive peak current causes noise which adversely affect memory device operation. This has frequently caused troubles in users' boards.

In the MB81C1000 series, the peak current is lowered to 100 mA or less by using the $1/2\ V_{cc}$ reset system as well as other techniques, making it possible to produce a device easy to use.

4.2 Development of 4-Mbit DRAM MB814100/814400 series

A 4-Mbit DRAM that can be mounted in a 300 mil dual in-line package (DIP) has been developed[12] through the incorporation of a memory cell having the three-dimensional stacked capacitor structure using four-layers of poly-silicon and the scaling of CMOS devices. Figure 19 shows a photograph of the chip.

The major technical issue when mounting a 4-Mbit DRAM to a 300 mil DIP is how to assure the cell area under the restrictions imposed by the package while maintaining cell capacitance and immunity to alpha-particle-induced soft errors. Considering the immunity to alpha-particle-induced soft errors of the stacked capacitor cell, Fujitsu has set the cell area at $7.5\ \mu m^2$; this is the minimum reported cell area for a 4-Mbit DRAM. This cell area was selected because it enables a chip area of less than $70\ mm^2$ and because the memory device can be mounted in a conventional package.

The development of the 4-Mbit DRAM MB814100/814400 series had three objectives:

1) Electric characteristics, including the alpha-particle-induced soft error rate, must be at least equivalent to those of existing DRAMs.
2) The 4-Mbit DRAM must be compatible with various packages and capable of being

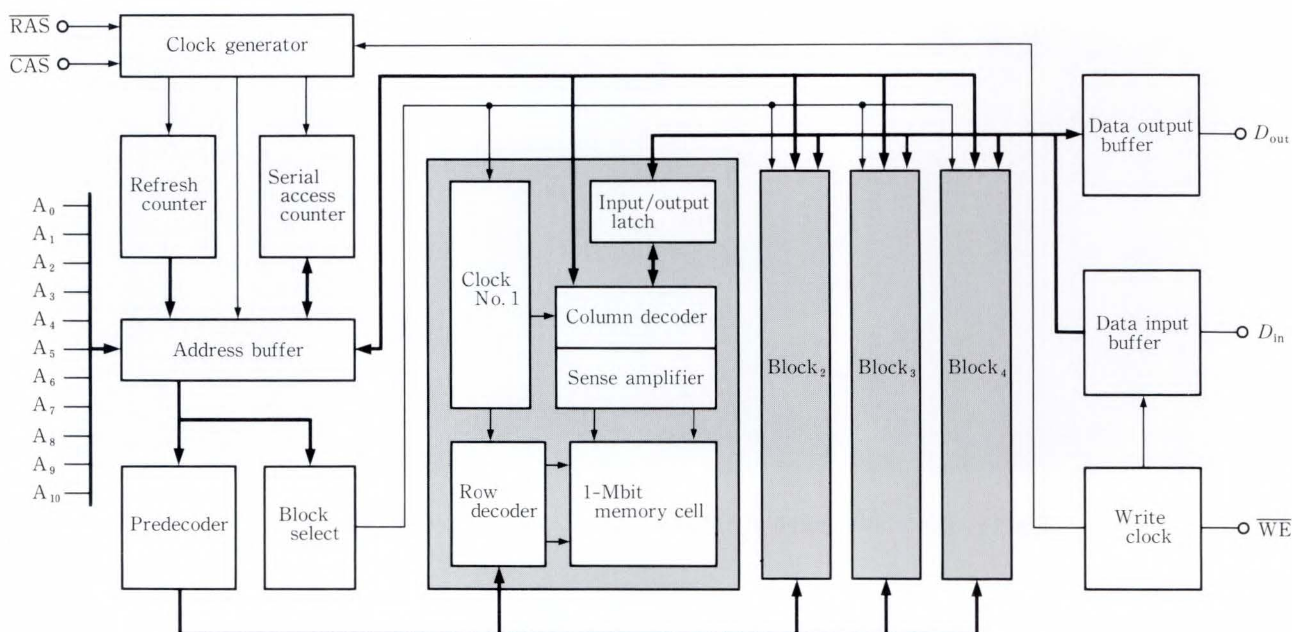


Fig. 20—Block diagram of 4M DRAM (Address clocks shape whole chip, but each 1-Mbit blocks has its own clock generator).

produced in various types.

3) High-quality and inexpensive memory must be supplied to users by using stacked capacitor cells which have already been mass-produced.

4.2.1 Design concept of 4-Mbit DRAM

The chip area of the newly developed 4-Mbit DRAM is small (65 mm). It can be mounted not only to the 300 mil DIP but also to various packages such as the Small Outline J-leaded package (SOJ) and Zigzag In-line Package (ZIP) which have the same size as a 1-Mbit DRAM. The circuit design followed that of the 1-Mbit DRAM as much as possible but with improved power consumption and operating speed. The design improvements are the 1/2 V_{cc} reset system for the cell plate and bit lines, determination of word × bit organization by wire bonding, and positioning of partial peripheral circuits in the middle of the chip.

For a large-capacity DRAMs of 1-Mbit or more, the division of the memory cell array is very important for determining the overall characteristics of the DRAM. This is because the length of aluminum wiring in a chip is increased to 10 mm to 20 mm and the delay time in wiring becomes an important factor in the DRAM speed. In many cases, the power supply and ground line may receive the noise generated when all decoders and sense amplifiers in the array are operated at the same time. This restricts the margin of device operation. In addition, electro-migration must be considered in order to determine the power line width.

4.2.2 1-Mbit blocking organization

Because the sense amplifier pitch in the 4-Mbit DRAM can be reduced due to the use of polycide bit lines, 1 024 sense amplifiers are positioned in an array in the *Y* direction (direction of shorter side). Therefore, the length of the shorter side of the chip is 4.84 mm; this is less than the maximum length for a plastic 300 mil DIP. A cell array of 1 024 columns × 512 words (512 Kbits) is considered a unit. Eight blocks of this array are laid in the *X* direction (direction of longer side) to configure a 4-Mbit array. When compared with the 1-Mbit DRAM, the chip area of the 4-Mbit DRAM is increased by only 28 percent (comparison between Fujitsu products).

Although the bit line reset voltage is set to 1/2 V_{cc} to reduce the power consumption, the charging or discharging current of bit lines reaches 70 mA (t_{RC} = 180 ns) when all arrays of

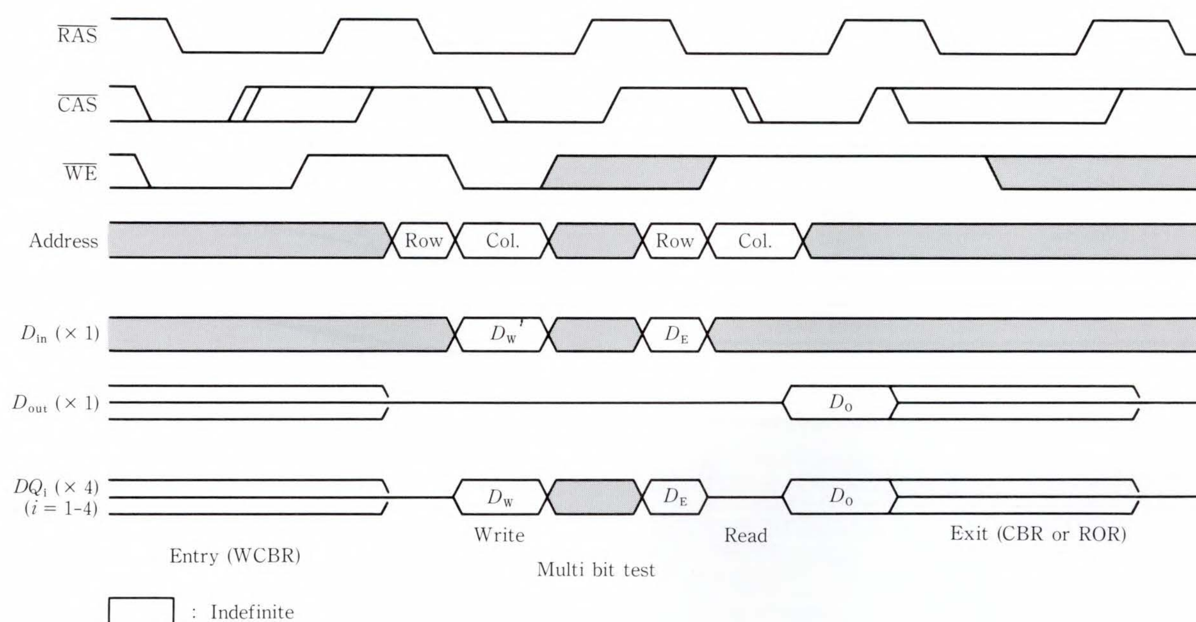


Fig. 21—Timing diagram of 16-bit multi bit test (D_W, D_R, D_E are write, read, expected data).

the 4-Mbit DRAM operate at the same time. In the 1-Mbit DRAM, the charge and discharge current were reduced to three-fourths of the conventional value through the divisional driving of arrrays. In the 4-Mbit DRAM, only one-fourth of the arrays are driven and the current consumption by bit lines is reduced to about 18 mA. After current consumption by arrays is reduced, the power consumption of peripheral circuits becomes the next problem.

The increase in power consumption due to the increase of DRAM capacitance, and the deterioration in access time due to the wiring delay time have been suppressed by improving the DRAM performance through the scaling of the transistor size. However, for a large capacity of 4 Mbits, the improvement in memory device performance made only by scaling the transistor is approaching its limit. This is because the wiring delay time becomes the dominant performance factor as described before.

To solve this problem, the blocking of circuits, including peripheral circuits, is used and the power delay product in the peripheral circuits is greatly improved (see Fig. 20). A 1-Mbit array containing a cell array and a clock generator circuit to drive the array is considered a unit block. The 4-Mbit memory is configured by four such blocks. During normal reading or writing, only the selected 1-Mbit block is operated. Consequently, the chip can maintain high speed and low power consumption because it operates under an internal load as small as that of a 1-Mbit DRAM.

4.2.3 Test mode

Since the development of the 1-Mbit DRAM, the issue of increasing the test time as the memory capacity increases has arisen. This is a serious problem even for the 4-Mbit DRAM. For example, when a DRAM of 4-Mbit × 1-organization is tested with a cycle time of 300 ns, a test time of about 15 s is required even when a simple marching pattern is used. For the 1-Mbit DRAM, the parallel test mode is activated by applying a voltage higher than V_{cc} to the Test Enable (TE) pin which used to be an NC pin. However, for the 4-Mbit DRAM, reduction of the test time is strongly desired at the board level and there is no unused pin. Therefore, the 4-Mbit DRAM is designed to have an 8-bit parallel test mode controlled by the TTL logic input.

Table 2 lists the test functions employed for the 4-Mbit DRAM. Figure 21 shows their timing charts. The parallel test mode entry is

Table 2. Function of Multi bit test

Organization	Test entry	Test exit	Result	No. of MBT
4-M x 1	$\overline{\text{WE}}$, $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ before $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ (WCBR)	$\overline{\text{CAS}}$ before $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ or $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ only refrech	Pass = 1 Fail = 0 from D_{out},	8
1-M x 4	Ditto above		Pass = 1 Fail = 0 from *DOs*	8

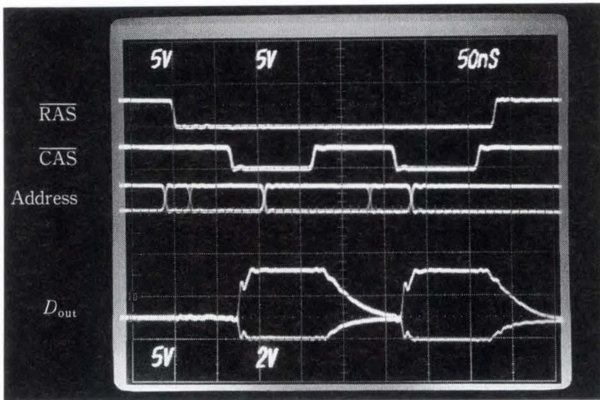


Fig. 22—Output wave form operating in a fast page mode.

done by the $\overline{\text{WE}}$, $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ before $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ (WCBR) cycle. The exit cycle is done by the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ only refresh or $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ before $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ cycle. During test mode operation, refresh can be executed in either the simple read cycle or WCBR entry cycle.

For the test result output, the D_{out} pin outputs "1" for "pass" when all data of the eight parallel read bits matches, and "0" for "fail" when at least one bit of data does not match. The 3-state output method which uses a high impedance state for test result output is not used, thus the test can be executed easily on the borad.

4.3 Characteristics of 4-Mbit DRAM

The 4-Mbit DRAM designed as described above operates at high speed with low power consumption. Figure 22 shows the output waveform of the DRAM in the fast page mode. The measurement conditions are: power voltage V_{cc} is 5 V, ambient temperature is 25 °C, and

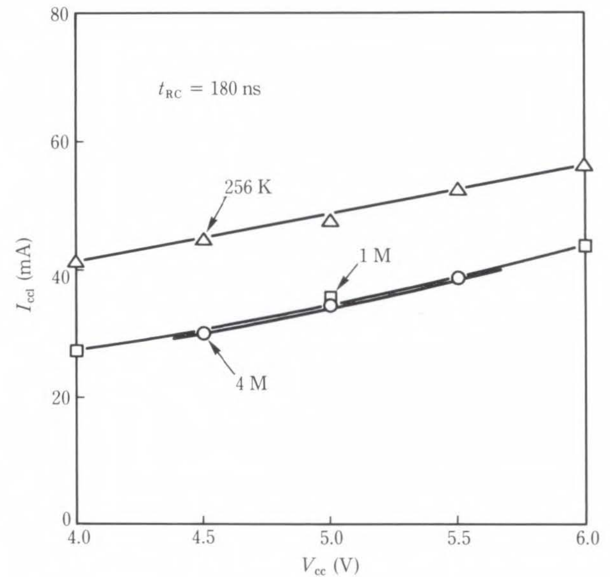


Fig. 23—Average V_{cc} current (I_{ccl}) vs V_{cc} voltage.

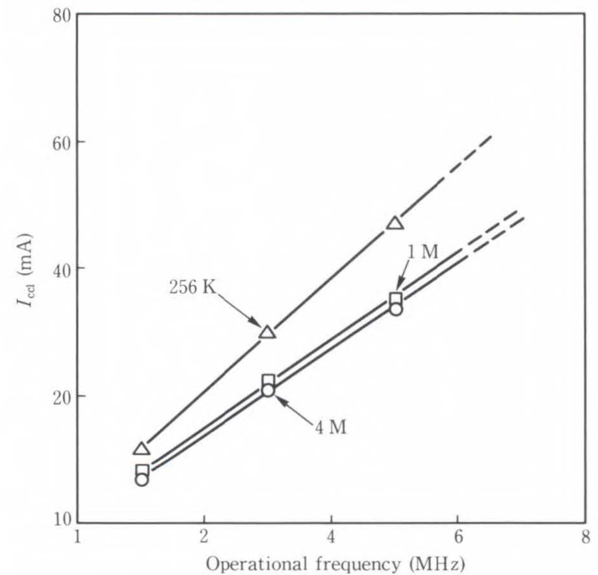


Fig. 24—Average V_{cc} current (I_{ccl}) vs operational frequency.

$\overline{\text{RAS}}$-$\overline{\text{CAS}}$ delay time t_{RCD} is $t_{RCD\,max}$. As shown in the figure, the $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ access time is typically 56 ns. This is faster than that of 256-Kbit and 1-Mbit DRAMs.

Figure 23 shows the average operating current (V_{cc}) dependency of the power voltage (I_{ccl}). Figure 24 shows the cycle time dependency of I_{ccl}. For reference, data of a 4-Mbit DRAM is compared with data of a 256-Kbit

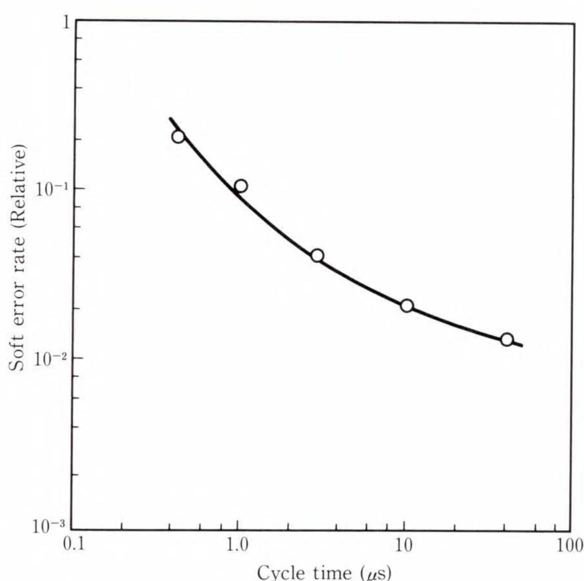


Fig. 25—Accelerated alpha particle induced soft error result.

DRAM (MB81256) using nMOS technology. Under typical conditions, the operating current of the 4-Mbit DRAM is 34 mA, while that of the 256-Kbit DRAM is 48 mA. The comparison reveals a large reduction in the operating current. This results from the array division. The memory cell array is divided into eight sections and configured in four blocks consisting of independent 1-Mbit blocks, including the peripheral circuits to drive the arrays.

The 4-Mbit DRAM has the same power consumption as a 1-Mbit DRAM because it executes operations equivalent to that of a 1-Mbit DRAM using its internal circuits, including peripheral circuits. This is a large advantage for PC board assembly. The memory board capacity can be increased four times by using the 4-Mbit DRAM without changing the power supply or cooling system.

The peak current of the 4-Mbit DRAM is rather low (100 mA) compared to a 256-Kbit DRAM.

Reduction of the alpha-particle-induced soft error rate is a large problem if the reliability of mega-bit DRAMs is to be increased. Figure 25 shows an example of the test results for soft errors using an accelerated test. In this test, alpha rays were irradiated onto the chip surface and the soft error rate was measured while altering the DRAM operation cycle time. As shown in the figure, the major cause of soft errors is the bit line mode. Few soft errors are observed in the cell mode partly because only a small charge is collected by the stacked capacitor cell[13]: It has already been confirmed that the soft error rate of the 4-Mbit DRAM is lower than that of the 1-Mbit DRAM because of the scaling of the p-n junction area[14].

Regarding the packages for the MB814100/814400 series, the 300 x 675 mil^2 SOJ can be used as described previously. In addition, new 300 mil DIP and 400 mil ZIP are under development. The JEDEC standard for the 4-Mbit DRAM package has not yet been established (except 350 x 675 mil^2 SOJ) because of the large restriction imposed by the various chip sizes of different manufacturers. If the JEDEC standard is established, Fujitsu will develop the corresponding package. In addition, Fujitsu plans to study the possibility of using a 300 mil SOJ having compatibility with a 1-Mbit DRAM in order to realize a single in-line module (SIM) mounted with 4-Mbit DRAM.

5. Future objectives

Currently, 1-Mbit DRAMs are mass-produced, 4-Mbit DRAMs are being accepted in the market, and the concept of 16-Mbit DRAMs is being considered. In this age of mega-bit capacities, the device and process technologies are changing rapidly.

As the process technology improves, a new concept of memory cell technology is required. Fujitsu plans to promote the further miniaturization of stacked capacitor cells to be used for 16-Mbit DRAM memory cells.

As a part of this advance in technology, Fujitsu presented a DIET capacitor cell at IEDM in 1986. DIET combines the advantages of both the stacked cell and trench cell. It can theoretically achieve a large cell capacitance and could be realized by burying a three-dimensional capacitor cell into an insulated trench capsule. In addition, a system to supply cell-plate voltage from the capsule layer in the substrate has been developed. To supply cell-plate voltage from

inside the substrate is a new system.

As shown by the above discussion, the process technology to realize a new memory cell must be found by trying various process technologies and looking at all possibilities. Such methods of development do not determine one choice only, but also expand the overall potential. Fujitsu will continue to develop the technologies for those device designs that respond to the diverse needs of the market.

In device technology, Fujitsu plans to develop products having added value and more functions in the field of ASICs (including video products) that are based on the general-purpose products described in this report. Fujitsu will continue to introduce high-quality, high-performance devices for the market.

6. Conclusion

Quadruple integration every three years has still been maintained in the Mega bit era. The 3D STC was the key technology for this steady progress of DRAM development. To develop this type of DRAM cell, over-all process design was needed, such as fine lithography, ultra thin capacitor film, cell capacitance, and α-immune cell structure.

Combining the high performance CMOS DRAM circuits with the STC cell technology, we developed the industry's smallest 4-Mbit DRAM having an access time of 56 ns.

Reference

1) Takamae, Y., Ema, T., Nakano, M., Baba, F., Yabu, T., Miyasaka, K., and Shirai, K.: A 1MB DRAM with 3-Dimensional Stacked Capacitor Cells. ISSCC Dig. Tech. Papers, 1985, pp. 250-251.
2) Mochizuki, H., Kodama, Y., Nakano, T., Ema, T., and Yabu, T.: A 70ns 4Mb DRAM in a 300mil DIP using 4-Layer Poly. ISSCC Dig. Tech. Papers, 1987, pp. 284-285.
3) Ishihara, M., Miyazaki, K., Shimohigashi, K., and Kimura, K.: An Experimental 4Mb DRAM with x1/x4 Organization. NIKKEI ELECTRONICS, 418, 1987-04-06, pp. 149-163.
4) Rigitz, W.M., and Karp, J.: A Three-Transistor cell, 1024Bit, 500ns MOS RAM. ISSCC Dig. Tech. Papers, 1970, pp. 42-42.
5) Nakano, T., Yabu, T., Noguchi, E., Shirai, K., and Miyasaka, K.: A Sub-100ns 256K DRAM with Open Bit Line Scheme. *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits,* **SC-18**, 5, pp. 452-456 (1983).
6) May, T.C., and Woods, M.H.: A New Physical Mechanism for Soft Errors in Dynamic Memories. 16th Proc. 1978 Int. Reliab. Phys. Symp., 1978, pp. 33-40.
7) Taguchi, M., Ando, S., Higashi, N., Goto, G., Ema, T., Hashimoto, K., Yabu, T., and Nakano, T.: Dielectrically Encapsulated Trench Capacitor Cell. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., 1986, pp. 136-139.
8) Koyanagi, M., Sunami, H., Hashimoto, N., and Ashikawa, M.: Novel High Density, Stacked Capacitor MOS RAM. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., 1978, pp. 348-351.
9) Koyanagi, M., Sakai, Y., Ishihara, M., Tazunoki, M., and Hashimoto, N.: A 5-V Only 16K bit Stacked Capacitor MOS RAM. *IEEE J. Solid-State Circuits*, **SC-15**, 4, pp. 661-666 (1980).
10) Yamada, M., Taniguchi, M., Yoshihara, T., Takano, S., Matsumoto, H., Nishimura, T., Nakano, T., and Gamou, Y.: Soft Error Improvement of Dynamic RAM with Hi-C Structure. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., 1980, pp. 578-581.
11) Fu, S.-W., Mohsen, A.M., and May, T.C.: Alpha-Particle Induced Charge Collection Measurements and the Effectiveness of a Novel p-Well Protection Barrier on VLSI Memories. *IEEE Trans. Electron Devices*, **ED-32**, 1, pp. 49-54 (1985).
12) Nakano, T., Mochizuki, H., Kodama, Y., and Ema, T.: 63.7mm^2 4Mb DRAM with Scaled Stacked Cell. NIKKEI MICRODEVICE, Special Vol., 1987-05-15, pp. 117-130.
13) Ando, S., Taguchi, M., and Nakamura, T.: Comparison of DRAM Cell the Simulation of Soft Error Rates. Symp. VLSI Tech. Dig. Papers, 1985, pp. 90-91.
14) Takeda, E., Takeuchi, K., Yamasaki, E., Toyabe, T., Ohshima, K., and Ito, K.: The Scaling Law of Alpha-Particle Induced Soft Errors for VLSIs. Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., 1986, pp. 542-545.

Tomio Nakano
Memory Design Dept.
MOS Devision
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Shizuoka University 1971
Master of Electrical Eng.
Shizuoka University 1973
Specializing in MOS DRAM Design

Takashi Yabu
Process Engineering Dept.
MOS Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Material Science
Hiroshima University 1971
Specializing in MOS Process

UDC 621.3.049.774

Development of Sea of Gates

● Yoshiyuki Suehiro ● Nobutake Matsumura ● Gensuke Goto

(Manuscript received August 19, 1988)

Sea of gates was introduced as an LSI that can integrate circuits of system level including memory functions. With this new type of LSI, highly integrated and high-performance CMOS LSI of 30K to 160K gates have been successfully developed. The LSIs are fabricated with 1.0 μm or 1.2 μm CMOS triple-metal-layer process technology. An original basic cell structure makes it easy to construct both memories and random logic circuits on the LSI chip. Furthermore, the unique structure of an I/O buffer cell and the improvement in assembly technology realized multiple pins. Cavity-down packages of up to 401 pins were developed.

1. Introduction

Because of advances in the LSI design environment, customer design of LSI has become comparatively easy and there are an increasing number of engineering work stations (EWS) in use. At the same time as these improvements, customer-specific LSI devices called Application Specific Integrated Circuits (ASICs) have been developed. These devices significantly reduce the cost of the products and are unique to the customer. Due to their high integration and short delivery time, the CMOS gate array in particular now has a strong position in the ASIC field as the products of related electronic equipment diversify and their life cycle is shortened.

Larger scale and higher-performance CMOS gate arrays are now possible because of advances in LSI design technology and semiconductor manufacturing technology. To make them compact, high density, large-scale systems using LSI, logic circuits and memory functions such as RAM and ROM must be packaged onto the LSI chip. Taking this into consideration, we studied the production of a CMOS gate array[1] with a RAM built into a dedicated area. However, these approaches could not adequately meet the various system requirements because of severe restrictions on the number of memory devices to be packaged and on the bit/word configuration. The Sea of Gates is a new CMOS gate array chip architecture designed to overcome these problems. In the Sea of Gates, we used the triple-metal-layer process technology. This technology has been used successfully in the mass production of 20K-gate CMOS gate arrays and in production of basic cells with structures suitable for memory cell configuration. Firstly, five types of CMOS gate arrays with 30K to 100K gates were produced as the AU series. The 160K-gate Sea of Gates was then developed using 1.0 μm process technology.

The Sea of Gates can be used in such areas as industrial computers, high performance metrological equipment, and in digital audio equipment such as VTR and DAT.

This paper describes the development and features of Fujitsu's Sea of Gates. It also discusses future problems.

2. Description and development of the Sea of Gates

2.1 Sea of Gates

As shown in Fig. 1, Fujitsu CMOS gate arrays incorporate the latest in process technology. They are highly-integrated high-speed devices. A fixed channel CMOS gate array is used for devices containing up to 20K gates. This LSI device consists of many basic cells

of a 2-input NAND gate. Circuits are configured by arranging the cells into columns and then wiring them on a standard silicon chip that has a wiring channel area between the columns.

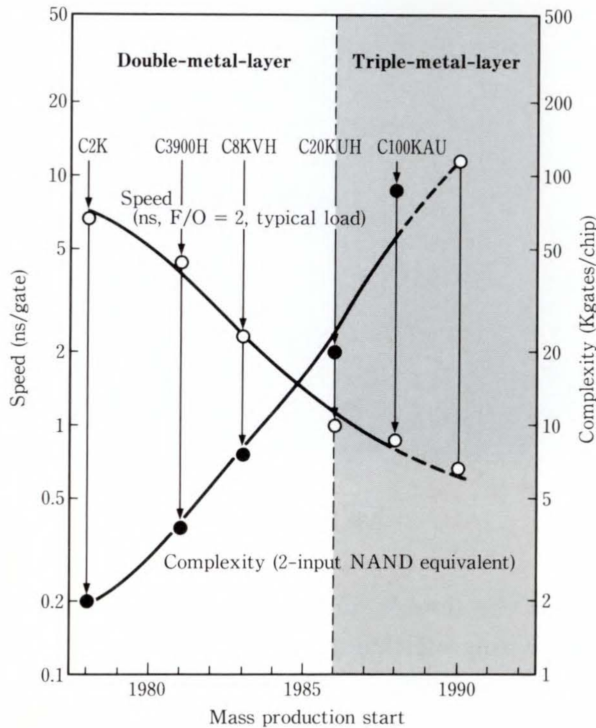
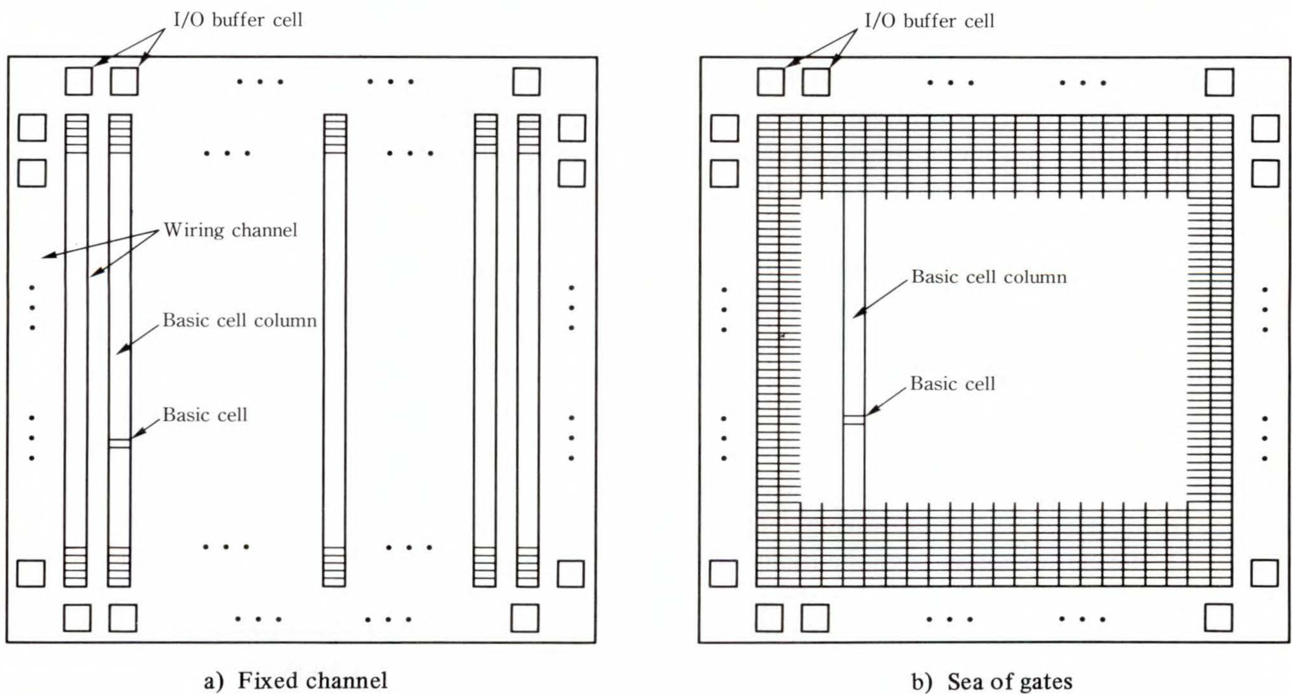


Fig. 1—Trend of speed and complexity in Fujitsu CMOS gate arrays.

The Sea of Gates is also called a channel-less type gate array. The basic cells are distributed over the entire internal chip area without any wiring area between the cell columns. The customers' circuits are obtained by simply using the wiring process by which the standard silicon chip is provided. This method is exactly the same as that use for the fixed channel type CMOS gate array. Figure 2 shows the configuration of the fixed channel type gate arrays and the Sea of Gates.

The wiring channel region of the fixed channel type gate array has a redundancy that allows a computer to automatically connect complicated wiring. Because of this, the integration cannot be increased. However the wiring channel width and position of the Sea of Gates can be freely set by using the area over basic cells as wiring regions when required. For this reason, integration is higher than in fixed channel type gate arrays. Since the Sea of Gates can spread a hard macro such as a multiplier circuit including RAM and ROM over two or more basic cell columns, a high-performance hard macro can be obtained with a high area ef-



a) Fixed channel

b) Sea of gates

Fig. 2—Comparison of chip configuration.

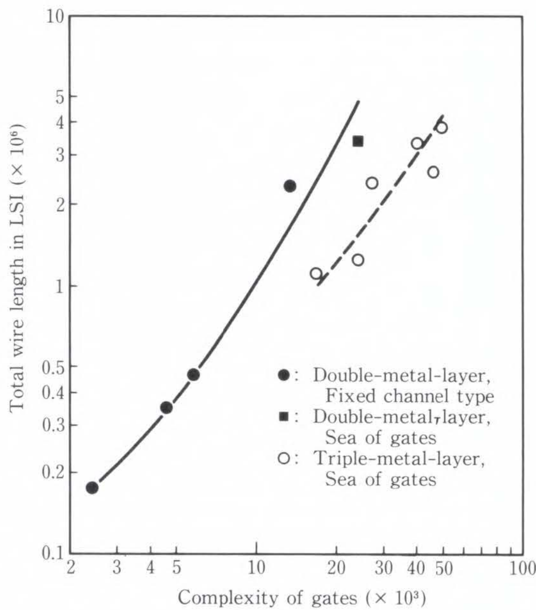


Fig. 3—Total wire length vs. complexity.

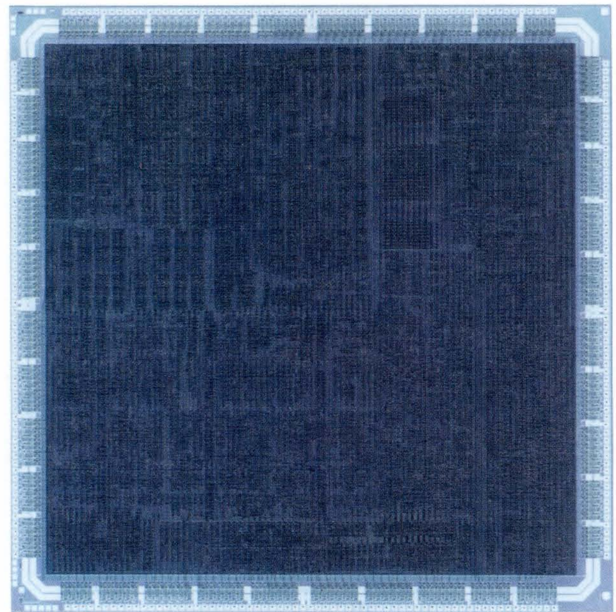


Fig. 4—CAP LSI.

ficiency and an optional size.
with a high area efficiency and an optional size.

As shown in Fig. 1, we were the first in the world to use the triple-layer-metal process technology in a 20K-gate CMOS gate array and apply it to the Sea of Gates. Because the wiring length exponentially increases with the gate scale, the integration does not increase for the conventional double-layer-metal process technology. Large-scale cells such as RAM and ROM can often be packaged into the Sea of Gates. In double-layer-metal process technology the wiring is blocked by these cells. This considerably reduces the wiring efficiency. In triple-layer-metal process technology, if these cells consist of the first and second metal layers, the reduction in wiring efficiency can be prevented because the third metal layer can pass over the cells.

Figure 3 shows the total wiring length of an LSI device versus the integration of Fujitsu's CMOS gate array. The total wiring length of the LSI device increases exponentially with the integration of the LSI device. In areas in which the integration exceeds 10 000 gates, the wiring efficiency can no longer be increased by the double-metal-layer wirings only.

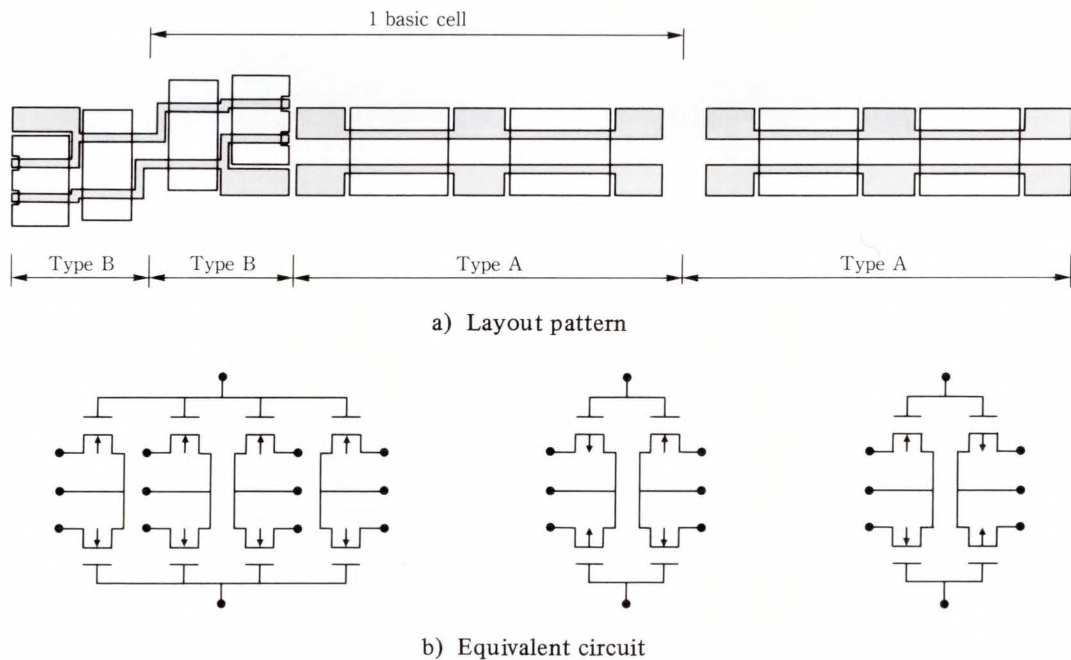
As can be seen from the figure that compares the double and triple-metal-layer wirings, the wiring efficiency is improved by the triple-metal-layer wirings. The triple-metal-layer technology is especially effective for the Sea of Gates.

2.2 Details of development

First, we manufactured a prototype Sea of Gates of 29 234 basic cells on a 13 x 13 mm chip[2] with a gate length of 1.8 μm using the double-metal-layer process. The basic cells had a total of eight transistors, four n-channel transistors, and four p-channel transistors.

These Sea of Gates were used to manufacture an approximately 24K-gate cellular array processor (CAP) LSI device[3),4)]. Figure 4 shows a photograph of the chip (CAP LSI). Although we used the double-metal-layer process, we achieved a high basic cell utilization of about 71 percent. This was achieved by packaging cells that could be repeatedly used as the hard macro such as first-in-first-out (FIFO).

Next, when marketing these devices, we improved the basic cells. The basic cells were structured so that the hard macro of the conventional Fujitsu CMOS gate array could be used when logic cells (hereafter referred to as a unit cell) such as 2-input NAND gates



a) Layout pattern

b) Equivalent circuit

Fig. 5—Structure of basic cell.

were formed. The cells were also structured so that the SRAM and ROM memory cells could efficiently be configured. By using this basic cell structure, we achieved a high-order compatibility and sharing of libraries for our fixed channel type CMOS gate array.

We developed a CAD tool (cell compiler) that automatically generates the SRAM or ROM required by the customer as the hard macro. We also developed a layout program for the triple-metal-layer technology.

We then put the AU series on the market as our first Sea of Gates.

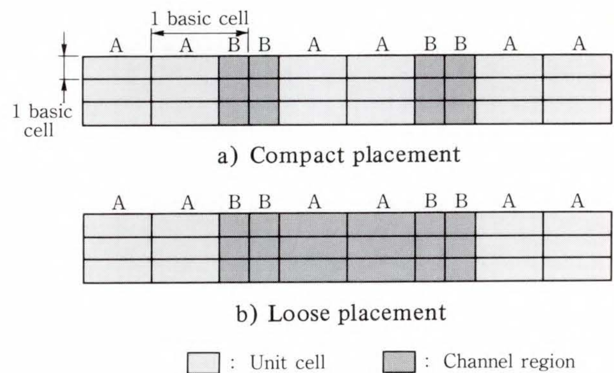


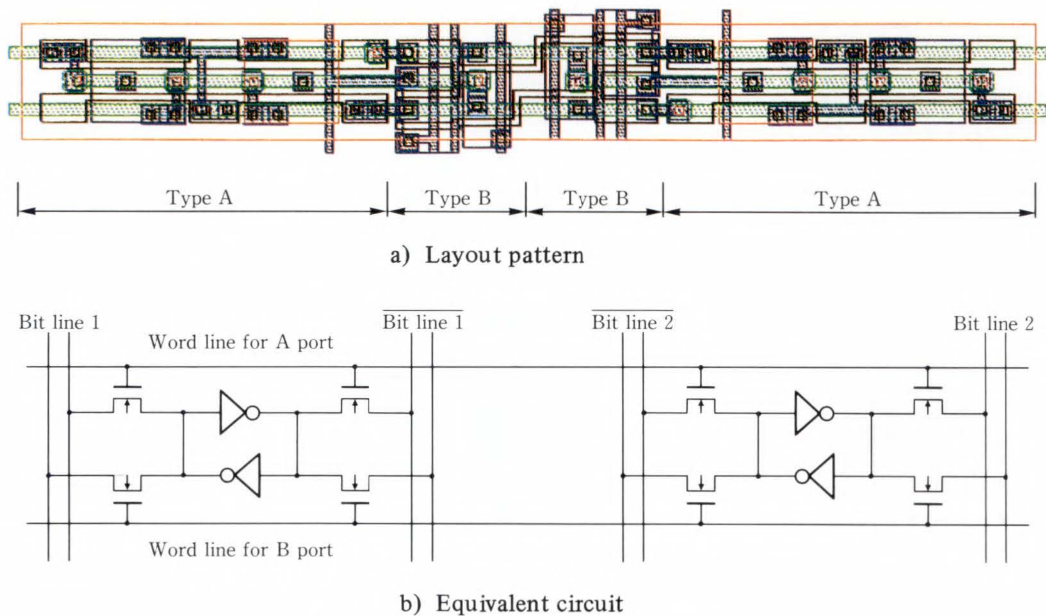
Fig. 6—Placement of unit cells and channel allocation.

3. Features of our Sea of Gates

3.1 Basic cell and metal wiring

Figure 5 shows the basic cell layout pattern and its equivalent circuit. The basic cell consists of two types of elements, types A and B. Type A is composed of two pairs of n-channel and p-channel transistors with a common gate electrode. Type A has the same shape as our fixed channel type CMOS gate array basic cell. Type B is composed of four n-channel transistors with small channel widths. The gate electrodes of adjacent type Bs are common. The two adjacent type Bs are of a point symmetrical type for the center of the layout pattern so that they can be laid out even if the cell containing them is rotated by 180 °.

Since the conventional unit cell is constructed using type A only, type B adjacent to it is used as the wiring channel region. Figure 6 shows examples of the unit cell layout and wiring channels. If the wiring channels are insufficient in such placement of unit cells as shown in Fig. 6 a), the type A section is also used as a wiring channel as shown in Fig. 6 b). The triple-metal-layer process increases the vertical wiring channel by about 50 percent.



a) Layout pattern

b) Equivalent circuit

Fig. 7—Memory cells of dual-port SRAM.

```
USER        : FUJITSU  ;
SYSTEM      : MB63x999 ;
REVISION    : 0001     ;
DATE        : 88/11/18 ;
DESIGNER    : FUJITSU  ;
 NAME       : RAM00    ;
 FUNCTION   : PCRAM    ;
 SEGMENT    ;
 BIT        :    12    ;
 WORD       :  1024    ;
 COLUMN     :     1    ;
 ENDSEGMENT ;
 ENDNAME    ;
ENDUSER ;
```

Fig. 8—Description example of input data for the cell compiler.

3.2 Memory cell

The type B section of the basic cell was added to efficiently configure the SRAM memory cell; type B is used as the transfer gate of an SRAM memory cell. In the memory cell, type A is used to form a latch. One basic cell can configure one bit of a single-port SRAM memory cell. Figure 7 shows the layout pattern and an equivalent circuit of the dual-port SRAM memory cell. Also in the dual-port SRAM, one basic cell can create one bit of the SRAM memory cell. By configuring the memory cell as described above, the single-port SRAM using the Sea of Gates can be made in an area of about 2.5 times, in ease of a 16K-bit SRAM, as compared to the area required when using the same process technology of our standard cell method. If a circuit equivalent to the single-port SRAM is constructed by combining circuits in a fixed channel type CMOS gate array, the area will exceed three times that of the Sea of Gates.

The ROM memory cell can create four bits with a single basic cell. In this case, only the type B n-channel transistors are used.

SRAM and ROM are automatically generated by the cell compiler described below.

3.3 Cell compiler

When packaging SRAM or ROM in an LSI device, the bit/word configuration normally differs according to the customer's requirements. Therefore, SRAM or ROM required by the customer must be created at the beginning. For this purpose, we developed a cell compiler for SRAM and ROM. An example for SRAM is shown in Fig. 8. The cell compiler automatically generates the layout pattern and the libraries such as the cell simulation model used in logic simulation by wiring and entering the cell specifications in a simple language. Figure 9 shows a layout example of a single-port SRAM

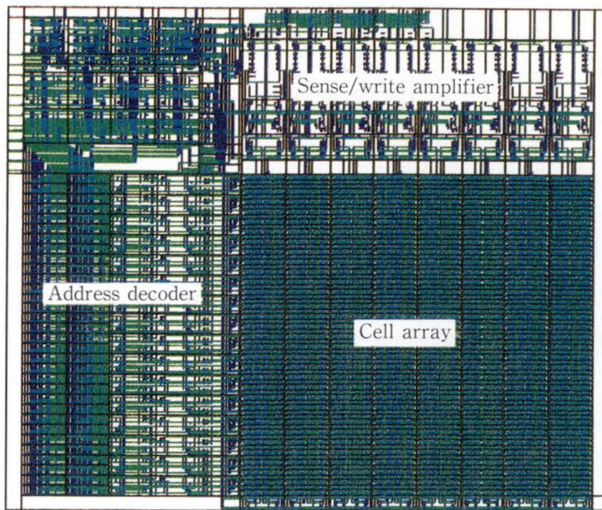


Fig. 9—Layout example of single-port SRAM (8-bit x 128-word).

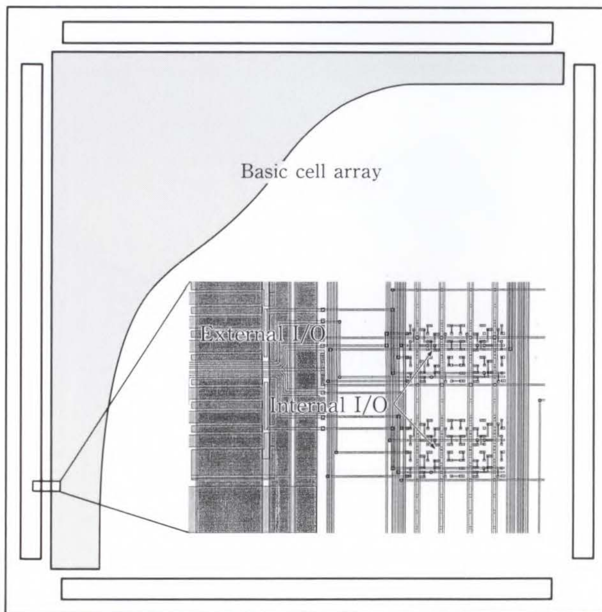


Fig. 10—Placement example of I/O buffer cells.

generated by the cell compiler.

We have been working towards automatic generation of up to four types of layout patterns for one logical specification of these cells. Such generation increases the layout efficiency of the LSI chip when SRAM or ROM is used.

3.4 I/O buffer cell

The I/O buffer cell of the internal/external circuit interface of the LSI device is made by

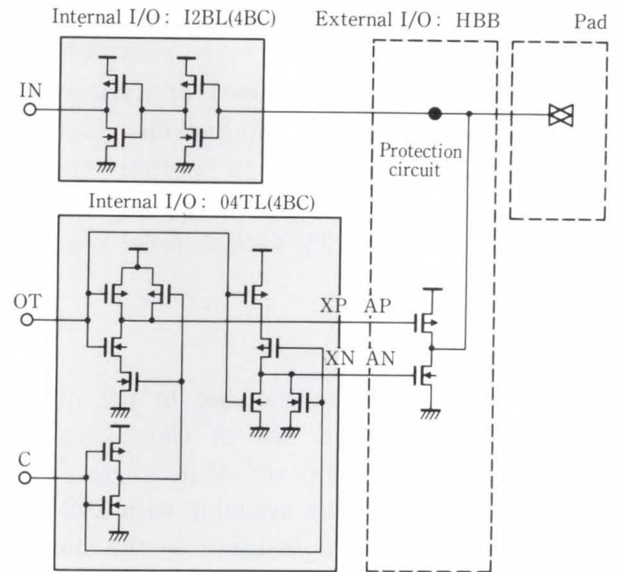


Fig. 11—Circuit example of I/O buffer cell.

dividing a cell into a dedicated cell (external I/O) laid out on the chip peripheral region and logic cell (internal I/O) laid out on the basic cell region; these two cells are then connected to each other. The internal I/O consists of type A basic cells. Figure 10 shows a layout example of an I/O buffer cell of an actual chip. The internal I/O is best laid out close to the external I/O to be connected to avoid reduction in the I/O buffer cell performance.

Figure 11 shows a bi-directional buffer as an example of an I/O buffer cell.

In the conventional CMOS gate array layout, the I/O buffer cell region in the chip periphery uses all the circuit elements to form the bi-directional buffer. However, since the chip peripheral region in this system only uses the circuit elements that form the external I/O in Fig. 11, the area of the peripheral region of the chip occupied by a single I/O buffer cell can be reduced. As a result, the number of I/O buffer cells (number of I/O pads) of the chip and the number of signal pins were increased. The 100K-gate AU series has 400 I/O pads including the power supply pads on a 14.5 x 14.5 mm chip.

The internal I/O is a unit cell and can easily be configured using basic cells. I/O buffer cells with various functions can easily be created

by changing the internal and external I/O combinations.

With the increasing speed of devices, malfunctions caused by simultaneous switching noise and ringing noise of output pins are becoming apparent. We have solved these problems by providing various noise reduction circuit buffers.

3.5 Package

To cope with an increase in the number of I/O pads in the Sea of Gates, we have developed pin grid array (PGA) packages.

These packages are available with 299, 321, 361 and 401 pins in addition to the standard packages of up to 256 pins.

The 299-, 321-, 361-, and 401-pin packages use a cavity down method to improve the heat dissipation and can be fitted with cooling fins.

To guarantee the quality of the LSI device, the LSI chip junction temperature during operation must be kept below a certain value. We recommend a maximum junction temperature of 150 °C for ceramic packages.

The chip junction temperature increases with the power consumption of the LSI device. In the Sea of Gates, the power consumption may exceed 5 W depending on the number of gates and the operating frequency. Figure 12 shows the relationship between integration and the calculated value of power consumption during operation of the AU series of the Sea of Gates. However, assume that about half of the number of gates are occupied by SRAM and that the number of I/O signal pins of the LSI device is the maximum in the series.

At a power consumption of 5 W, a still air heat resistance (ceramic package) of 22 °C/W and an ambient temperature of 70 °C, the junction temperature reaches 180 °C. If fins are fitted and the LSI device is forcibly cooled with air at 3 m/s, the junction temperature can be kept below 100 °C.

Figure 13 shows a photograph of the 401-pin PGA package. Wire bonding is used.

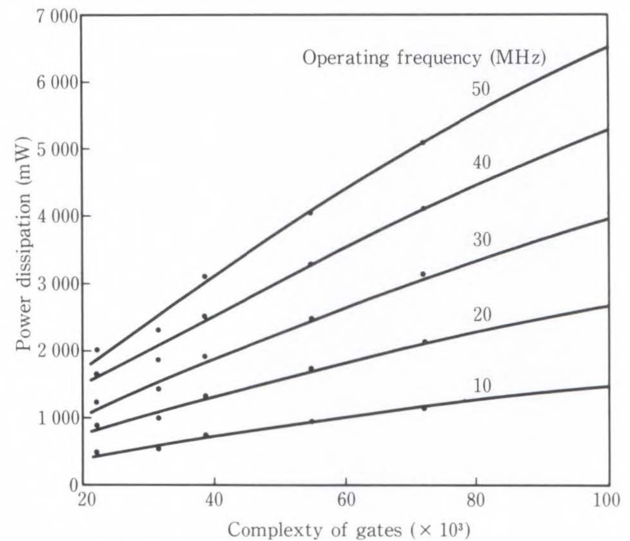


Fig. 12—Power dissipation vs. complexity in AU series.

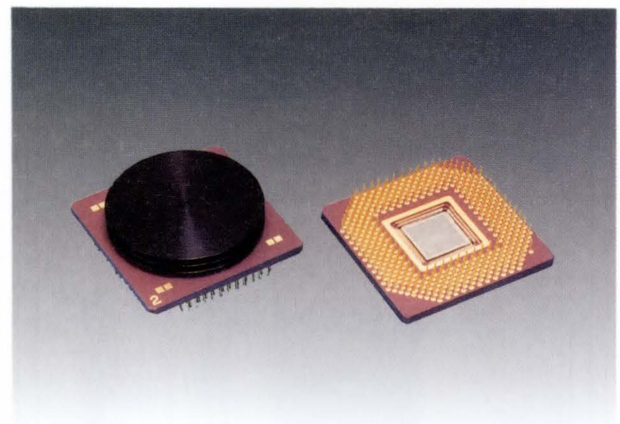


Fig. 13—A 401-pin PGA package.

3.6 AU series

Table 1 lists our AU series CMOS Sea of Gates.

Since a single basic cell can create one 2-input NAND gate (actually only type A is used), one basic cell is equivalent to one gate.

Table 2 lists the main features of the AU series. Table 3 lists the AU series package options.

3.7 160K-gate Sea of Gates

3.7.1 Features of LSI device

To expand our Sea of Gates series, we developed a Sea of Gates with about 160 000 basic cells on the chip[5]. This LSI device has

Table 1. AU series CMOS sea of gates

Device name	Part number	Number of basic cells on chip	Usable basic cells logic with SRAM or ROM	Number of I/O pads
C-100KAU	MB630XXX	102 144	76 608	400
C-75KAU	MB631XXX	75 140	56 355	344
C-50KAU	MB632XXX	52 164	39 123	288
C-40KAU	MB633XXX	41 184	30 888	256
C-30KAU	MB634XXX	31 500	23 625	224

Table 2. Main features of AU series

Process	1.2 μm triple-metal-layer CMOS
2-input NAND gate delay (F/O = 2)	0.8 ns
Power 2-input NAND gate delay (F/O = 2)	0.58 ns
18Kbits single-port SRAM Access time	21 ns
Configurable SRAM, ROM Single, dual & triple-port SRAM ROM	 32 bits-18 K bits 128 bits-64 K bits
Gate utilization Logic with SRAM or ROM Logic only	 75% max 50% max

Table 3. AU series package options

Device name	Ceramic pin grid array package								Plastic flat package	
	135	179	208	256	299	321	361	401	120	160
C-100KAU	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
C-75KAU	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
C-50KAU	○	○	○	○	○					
C-40KAU	○	○	○	○					○	○
C-30KAU	○	○	○						○	○

a gate length of 1.0 μm and was obtained using the most advanced process technology with greater microminiaturization than that of the AU series. Table 4 lists the basic features of the 160K-gate Sea of Gates. The actual measurement results of the ring oscillator show that the propagation delay time of the inverter with a fan out of 1 is 230 ps. The maximum number of usable basic cells is about 120 000 (75 percent) when SRAM or ROM is used.

Table 4. Basic features of 160K-gate sea of gates

Technology	p-substrate, twin-tub
Gate length	1.0 μm
First metal pitch	2.9 μm
Second metal pitch	3.8 μm
Third metal pitch	5.8 μm
Chip size	14.5 mm x 14.5 mm
Total basic cell counts	160, 170
Total I/O cell counts	400
Supply voltage	5 V
Inverter delay (ring oscillator)	230 ps

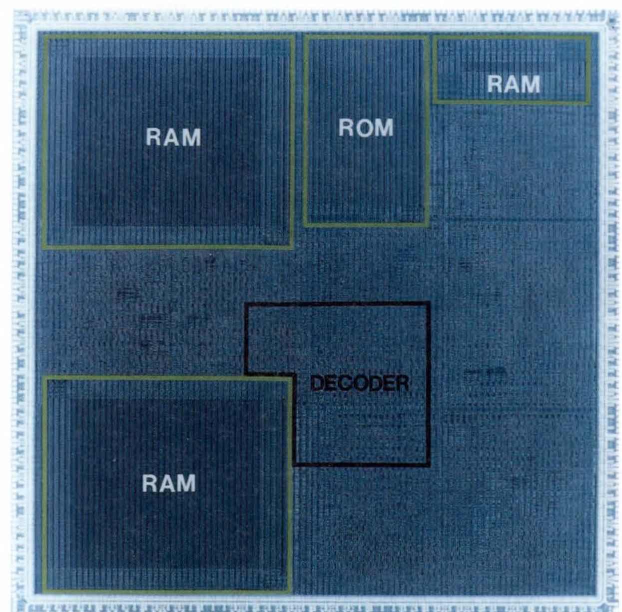


Fig. 14—FDSP4 on sea of gates.

3.7.2 Test chip

Our 160K-gate Sea of Gates achieved the same circuit function as that of our 32-bit floating point digital signal processor (FDSP 4: MB86232). Figure 14 shows the FDSP4 realized on a Sea of Gates. RAM and ROM were automatically generated by the cell compiler. The decoder section of the original LSI device was composed of nine PLAs. However, for this test chip, the decoder section is composed of the logic gates that have been expanded using our logical synthesizer system "ZEPHCAD[6)]".

Table 5 lists the circuit organization of the test chip. The basic cell utilization is 72.5 percent.

Table 5. Circuit organization of the test chip

32-bit x 512-word dual-port SRAM x 2	55 384 basic cells
32-bit x 16-word dual-port SRAM	5 292 basic cells
32-bit x 1 024-word ROM	12 672 basic cells
Random logic	42 798 basic cells
Total basic cell counts	116 146 basic cells
Basic cell utilization	72.5 percent

4. Future problems

The high integration and speedup of the LSI device have raised various problems with LSI design and practical use. The Sea of Gates is no exception to these problems. This section describes the problems and methods of solving these problems.

A increase in LSI circuit scale significantly decreases the development efficiency. This is because of a large increase in the work required for logic design, logic simulation, and test data creation and in the time required for computer processing. To make the most of the Sea of Gates' advantage of quick prototyping, the development time including the logical design time must be reduced.

To achieve these targets, the following should be considered:

1) Logic design
   i) Use of a tool that automatically generates FIFO and ALU. Use of library such as the functional blocks.
   ii) Use of logical synthesizer system
   This system writes the LSI logical circuit specification with a high-level language such as the finite state machine language and then automatically converts it to the logical circuit that uses the LSI cell library.
2) Logic simulation

For logic simulation of an LSI device exceeding several tens of thousands of gates, the simulation tool must process large amounts of data and must therefore be speeded up. The use of the dedicated system called the simulation accelerator also helps us to solve these problems. If this system is used, the processing time will be reduced up to least ten times that of EWS simulation.

3) Test data creation

The work required to create the test data increases greatly as the circuit scale increases and can no longer be handled manually.

To solve this problem, the following should be considered:

   i) Logic design that uses scan-flip-flop and automatic generation of test patterns[7]
   ii) Built-in test circuit[8]
   iii) Unit test of megacells.

This method configures the circuit so that megacells such as RAM and ROM packaged on the LSI device can be tested directly using the LSI external pins.

4) Use of automatic layout tool

To achieve high performance of a large-scale LSI device, the layout of the LSI device is best designed by a logic designer. Recently, a dedicated automatic layout tool that can be used by the customer has been developed. We think that this tool will be increasingly used.

The Sea of Gates has the following problems:

1) Increase in power consumption
2) Switching noise resulting from the speedup of the LSI output buffer.

The high-speed operation of the output buffer causes noise in the PC board on which the LSI device is mounted. This noise causes various problems. There are two types of noise: simultaneous switching noise and a ringing/reflected noise. The first type is suppressed by reinforcing the ground inside the LSI device and by restricting the number of simultaneous switching pins for each ground. The latter is caused by the high-speed switching of the LSI device, stray capacitance of the PC board, and impedance. This noise is suppressed by connecting damping resistors and terminating resistors on the PC board.

5. Conclusion

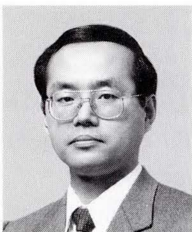
A variety of large-scale ASICs containing more than 100K gates have been able to be developed using the Sea of Gates. These devices can be manufactured in a short period and also

in small quantities, as required.

Although there are problems such as the LSI development efficiency and packaging noise for the large scale ASIC, we believe we can solve these problems and develop the Sea of Gates that meets the customer's requirements.

References

1) Takayama, Y., Fuji, S., Tanabe, T., Kawauchi, K., Yoshida, T., and Yamashita, K.: A 1 ns 20K CMOS Gate Array Series with Configurable 15 ns 12K Memory. ISSCC Dig. Tech. Pap., 1985, pp. 196-197.
2) Takahashi, H., Sato, S., Goto, G., Nakamura, T., Kikuchi, H., and Shirato, T.: A 240K Transistor CMOS Array with Flexible Allocation of Memory and Channels. ISSCC Dig. Tech. Pap., 1985, pp. 124-125.
3) Kubosawa, H., Goto, G., Tsutsumi, S., Suehiro, Y., and Shirato, T.: Layout Approaches to High-density Channelless Masterslice. Proc. CICC, 1987, pp. 48-51.
4) Ishihata, H., Kakimoto, M., Inoue, K., Ishii, M., Goto, G., and Hatano, Y.: VLSI for the Cellular Array Processor. Proc. Int. Conf. Comput. Design, 1987, pp. 320-323.
5) Suehiro, Y., Miura, D., Naitoh, M., Tsutsumi, S., and Shirato, T.: A 120K-Gate Usable CMOS Sea of Gates Packing 1.3M Transistors. Proc., CICC, 1988, pp. 20.5.1-20.5.4.
6) Sato, H., Sugiura, Y., and Fujita, M.: Speed Tunable Finite State Machine Compiler: ZEPHCAD^{TM}. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **29**, 4 (Special Issue on Semiconductors), pp. 464-468 (1988).
7) Akiyo, T., Hatano, Y., Ishii, J., Karasawa, N., and Fuji, S.: An Automatic Test Generation System for Large Scale Gate Arrays. Dig. Pap. COMPCON Spring, 1986, pp. 445-449.
8) Sato, S., Takahashi, H., Machida, Y., Goto, G., Nakamura, T., and Shirato, T.: On-Chip Testing for 30K-Gate Masterslice. Proc. CICC, 1986, pp. 311-314.



Yoshiyuki Suehiro
MOS LSI Design Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Osaka University 1976
Specializing in CMOS Gate Array Design

Gensuke Goto
Semiconductor Devices Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Osaka University 1969
Dr. of Electrical Eng.
Osaka University 1978
Specializing in VLSI Design

Nobutake Matsumura
MOS LSI Design Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
Tohoku University 1972
Specializing in CMOS Gate Array Design

UDC 621.3.049.774:681.323

Development of Microcontroller: F²MC

• Jyoji Murakami

(Manuscript received September 6, 1988)

The Fujitsu Flexible Microcontroller (F²MC) has been developed to meet the market's need for a high-performance application specific controller. This microcontroller features high-speed (0.33 μs cycle time), efficient object code, and flexible design and can be applied to many areas.
The CPU architecture, design philosophy, and technology features of the CPU are described and various application products are shown.

1. Introduction

Microcomputers have been used in various types of electronic equipment since the 4004 microcomputer was introduced in 1971. Depending on the application, microcomputers can be classified as data processors (MPU) such as the CPU used in personal computers, and real-time processing controllers (MCU) that are built into household appliances and office business equipment. The MCU integrates the CPU and all control and storage circuits including those for peripheral hardware devices and memory on a single silicon chip. It is also called a single-chip microcomputer.

To meet the above requirements, we developed an 8-bit CPU core having a 16-bit internal processing feature called the Fujitsu Flexible Microcontroller (F²MC). Based on this CPU core, we have developed various MCU products. Chapters 2 to 4 outlines the CPU core and its features. Chapter 5 introduces the various MCU products.

2. Architecture of F²MC CPU

2.1 Market requirement

Figure 1[1] shows the market shipment statistics and forecast for this classification. The figure shows that market demand for 8-bit MCUs is very strong because the application fields have expanded. Many new technical requirements are now desired; these are summarized below.

1) High-speed performance corresponding to the high performance of the system.
2) High efficiency of object codes suitable for single-chip structure.
3) MCUs that form the foundation of Application-Specific Integrated Circuit (ASIC) microcomputers that enable the system to be differentiated.
4) Debugging capability that facilitates the development of complex programs.

2.2 Development goals

To determine the F²MC CPU architecture, we established the following goals according to the market demand described in section 2.1.

1) Realization of high-speed performance

High-speed instructions must be achieved. High-speed performance when the task environment is switched (i.e. high-speed response for interrupt processing) must also be achieved.

2) Improvement of object code efficiency

A single-chip microcomputer in which the capacity of mounted ROM is physically restricted requires high object code efficiency. This is especially true if it is to be economical.

3) An ASIC design and manufacturing processes that can quickly cope with the market and user requirements must be developed.
4) Improvements in debugging

A system that can debug a realtime processing program even in the mounted state must be realized.

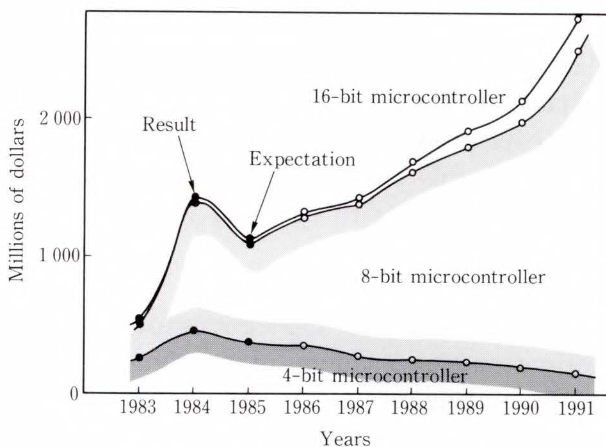


Fig. 1—Shipment of microcontroller units[1].

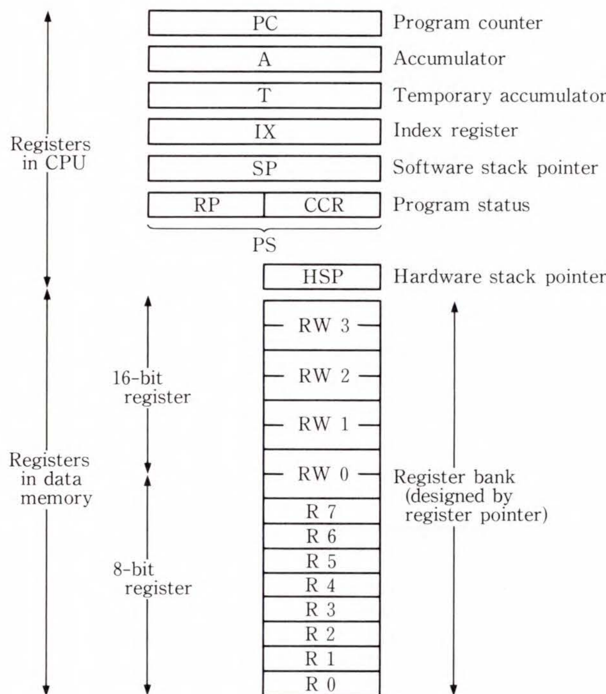


Fig. 2—Resister set of F^2MC.

2.3 Implementation of architecture

This section describes how the goals described in section 2.2 have been achieved.

1) Register set

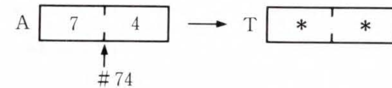
Figure 2 shows the F^2MC register set. The accumulator of this register set has a unique design. In addition to the conventional accumulator (A), a temporary accumulator (T) is provided. When data is transferred to A, the previous contents of A are automatically transferred to T.

The example of logical AND of #74 and #05 is shown below.

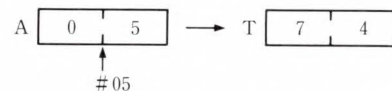
a) MOV A. #74
b) MOV A. #05
c) ANDW A

The dataflow of operations a) to c) are as follow:

a) #74 is transferred to A, and at the same time the contents of A are saved in T.



b) #05 is transferred to A, and at the same time the contents of A (#74) are saved in T.



c) The logical AND of A (#05) and T (#74) results in A, where as the contents of T holds the same value.

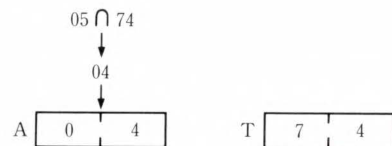


Fig. 3—Operation of temporary accumulator.

Instructions are provided so that two-term operations having low frequencies of use can be executed between A and T. Thus, two-term operations can be executed without deteriorating the object code efficiency.

Another feature is that the register size that changes with the size of the task can be adjusted in the built-in RAM by providing the register in memory. At the same time, the overhead for task switching is reduced.

Also, the pointer register can use memory registers RW0 and A in addition to the one index register. Figure 3 describes an example of a term operation between A and T.

2) Instruction set

Several benchmark tests were performed to determine the instruction set. As a result of these tests, short codes were assigned to the transfer and branch instructions that occur frequently in the applications that occur frequently in the MCU application program. However, even if branch instructions did not occur frequently (such as in multiplication and

division) there were cases in which the speed and object code efficiency of the two-term operations severely deteriorated when the instruction function was not provided. To avoid this, the A-T operation instructions described in article 1) were used. Figure 4 shows the occurrence frequency in comparison with a general 8-bit CPU[2)].

The result is a powerful instruction system including the operation of a 16-bit register that is successfully contained in an 8-bit operation code (see Table 1).

3) Interrupt

Because a high-speed interrupt was considered important, the save/return path when an interrupt occurs uses a direct path with a

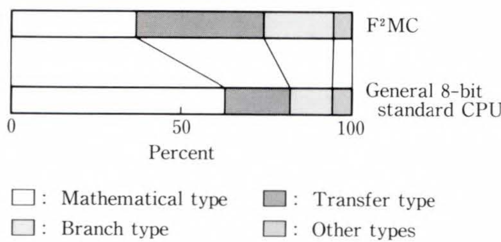


Fig. 4—Constitution of instruction set.

32-bit RAM instead of the conventional 8-bit data path. For this reason, the stack pointer uses a hardware stack pointer that is independent of the software stack pointer for subroutine calls.

Using this mechanism, registers A, T, PC, and PS were able to be saved within four bus cycles.

4) Mode

To expand the applications of the CPU, various modes including an external memory mode are required.

A conventional MCU sets the modes by controlling the pins. However, the pins are an important resource in a single-chip microcomputer. Therefore, only the vector was fetched at the start (either internally or externally from the chip) by controlling the pins. The mode is assigned from the third byte of the vector at the start.

As a result, many modes can be provided including a test mode and one-time ROM mode.

5) Debugging

To improve the debugging efficiency during program development, we used a system in which the debugging signal was sent to and received from the emulator using the pins at the

Table 1. Operation code map

L \ H	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NOP	PF1	DECW IX	INCW IX	CBNE R0, #, rel	XCHW A, T	XORW A	ANDW A	MOV @A, T	MOV dir, A	MOV @IX+off, A	MOV @RW0	↑	↑	ADDW IX, A	SUBW IX, A
1	PF0	TEST A	DECW A	INCW A	CBNE R1, #, rel	EXT	ADDW A	SUBW A	MOV A, @A	MOV A, dir	MOV A, @IX+off	MOV A, @RW0			CMPW A	CMP A
2	MOVW IX, A	MOVW A, IX	RORC A	ROLC A	CBNE R2, #, rel	MOV HSP, A	ADDC A	SUBC A	ADD @A	ADD A, dir	ADD A, @IX+off	ADD A, @RW0			ADDDC A	SUBDC A
3	MOVW SP, A	MOVW A, SP	SHRW A	SHLW A	CBNE R3, #, rel	MOV A, HSP	ORW A	NOTW A	SUB @A	SUB A, dir	SUB A, @IX+off	SUB A, @RW0			DIVU A	MULU A
4	MOVW RW0, A	MOVW A, RW0	ADDW A, RW0	SUBW A, RW0	CBNE R4, #, rel	MOVW RW0, #	DECW RW0	INCW RW0	MOVW @A, T	MOVW dir, A	MOVW @IX+off, A	MOVW −RW0, A			SWAP	↑
5	MOVW RW1, A	MOVW A, RW1	ADDW A, RW1	SUBW A, RW1	CBNE R5, #, rel	MOVW RW1, #	DECW RW1	INCW RW1	MOVW A, @A	MOVW A, dir	MOVW A, @IX+off	MOVW A, @RW0			RETI	BRA rel10
6	MOVW RW2, A	MOVW A, RW2	ADDW A, RW2	SUBW A, RW2	CBNE R6, #, rel	MOVW RW2, #	DECW RW2	INCW RW2	CBNE A, #, rel		JMP ext	JMP @A			SWAPN	
7	MOVW RW3, A	MOVW A, RW3	ADDW A, RW3	SUBW A, RW3	CBNE R7, #, rel	MOVW RW3, #	DECW RW3	INCW RW3	CWBNE A, #, rel		CALL ext	XCHN A, @RW0	CALLV vct	MOVN A, #4	RET	↓
8	MOV R0, A	MOV A, R0	ADD A, R0	SUB A, R0	DBNE R0, rel	MOV R0, #	DEC R0	INC R0	SETB bit	MOV A, #	MOVW A, #	MOVW ext, A			PUSH A	BZ/BEQ rel
9	MOV R1, A	MOV A, R1	ADD A, R1	SUB A, R1	DBNE R1, rel	MOV R1, #	DEC R1	INC R1	CLRB bit	MOV RP, #	MOVW IX, #	MOV ext, A			PUSHW A	BNZ/BNE rel
A	MOV R2, A	MOV A, R2	ADD A, R2	SUB A, R2	DBNE R2, rel	MOV R2, #	DEC R2	INC R2	MOVB bit, A	ADD A, #	ADDW A, #	MOVW A, ext			PUSHW IX	BC/BLO rel
B	MOV R3, A	MOV							SBBS	SUB	SUBW A, #	MOV A, ext			PUSHW PS	BNC/BH… rel
…												MOV @IX				

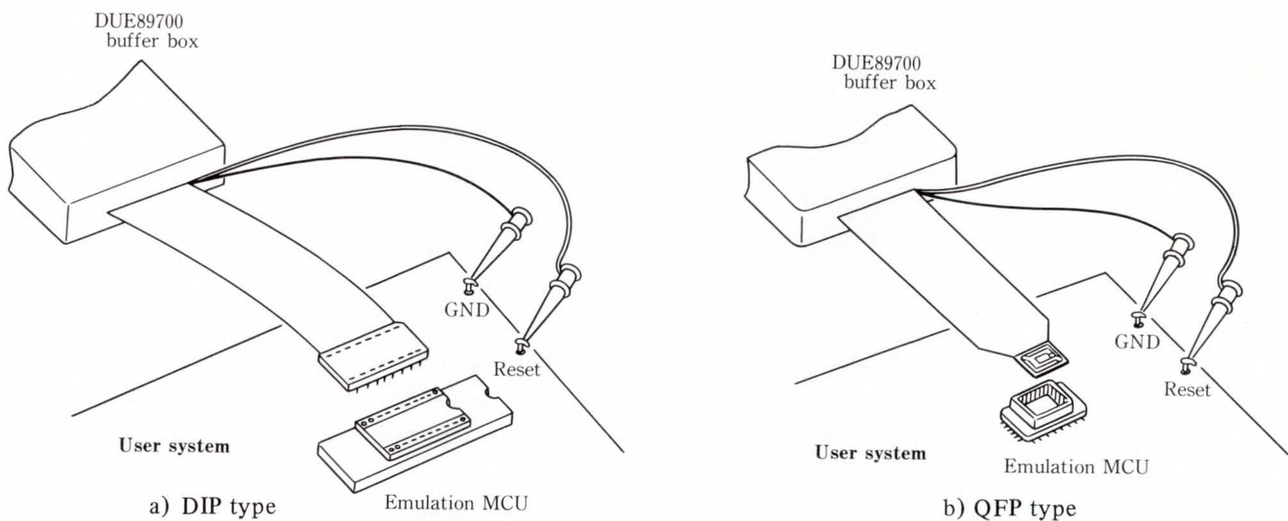


Fig. 5—Piggy back devices interfacing the emulater.

upper part of the package in the piggyback mode.

Therefore, a piggyback-chip for evaluation can be used for both EPROM-installed packaging evaluation and break and trace debugging by connecting the emulator (see Fig. 5).

In addition, the debugging efficiency in realtime processing was improved by adding functions that enabled the internal time base timer to temporarily halt when a break occurred.

6) Test

The CPU runs in the test mode according to the contents of the third byte of the vector as explained in article 4). An important feature of the test mode is that the bus connected to the CPU inside the device is disconnected from the CPU in this mode. Memory devices and peripheral resources other than the CPU can be directly tested from the device pin via the bus without CPU instructions. This system achieves compression and portability of the test patterns. This system is especially suitable for manufacturing systems such as for an ASIC that combines peripheral hardware devices according to user's requests.

3. Hardware design

3.1 State machine and PLA

This CPU design is based on a 5-bit state counter and a PLA control circuit that includes an instruction decoder. The PLA system was used because it has only a few complicated instructions such as multiplication and division. The advantages of speed and cost were also considered.

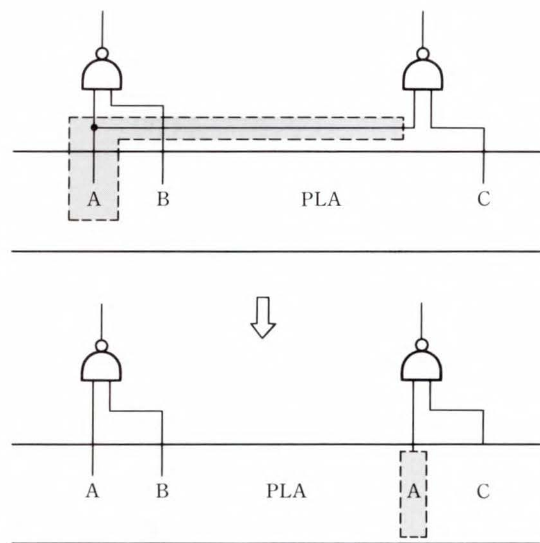


Fig. 6—Optimization of PLA (The long routing area is reduced by adding one redundant decoding).

One advantage of the PLA design is that redundant decoding is possible according to the layout. For example, Fig. 6 shows that when the decoder output is located far from the last gate, the wiring area can be reduced by decoding at another decoder location.

To achieve high-speed performance, a 1-byte

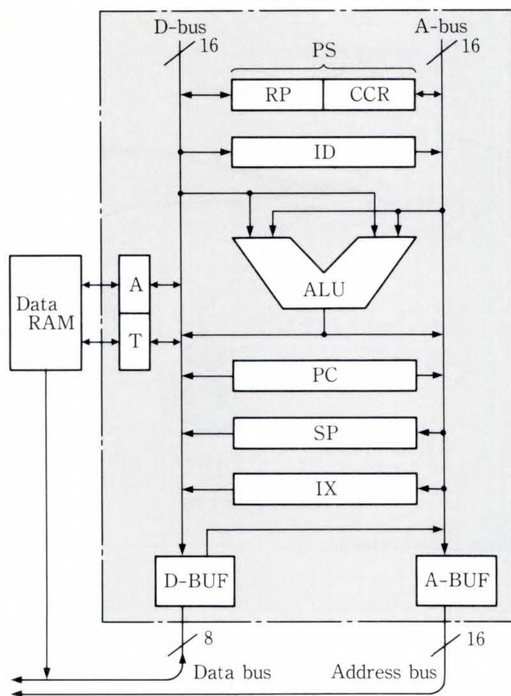


Fig. 7—Block diagram of CPU.

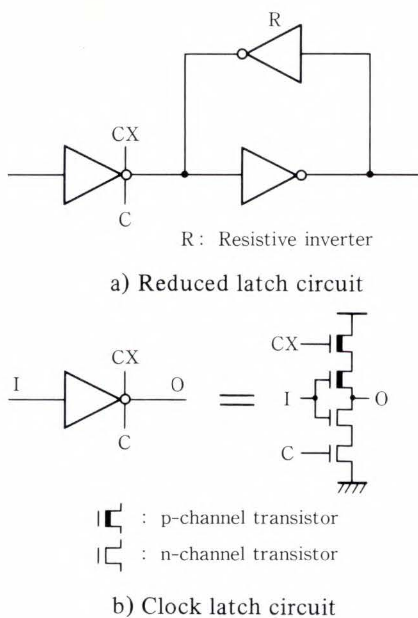


Fig. 8—Static latch circuits.

queue is provided and instructions are prefetched in the non-memory cycle. The queue was not made any longer because of costs and to prevent debugging from getting too complicated.

3.2 Bus and register

Figure 7 shows the configuration of the register and ALU inside the CPU. The accumulator (A) and ALU are connected using two 16-bit buses (A and B). A and T are actually placed at the edge of the RAM. The CPU and RAM are connected using a 32-bit bus and can be saved and returned at high speed during interrupt. Therefore, although the RAM has a circuit configuration that can be accessed from both the bus and CPU, it is not a dual port RAM because it cannot be accessed simultaneously.

3.3 Static design

The design goal of this CPU is to have a high-speed area within its application range and to include portable equipment in its applicable range. Thus, the CPU must have a wide range of operation speed (including low speed) and low voltage and low current operation. A static design was used to satisfy these requirements. For example, Fig. 8 shows that the design uses a latch circuit to maintain the static characteristics without increasing the size of the circuit.

3.4 Test circuit

As explained in chapter 2, this CPU enters the test mode using the third byte instruction when it is started. In the test mode, the CPU can externally drive a bus by setting the bus buffer in tri-state.

The interrupt test is also important because an interrupt can be caused by many factors. In the conventional test method, a great number of test vectors must be recreated each time the peripheral resource is changed. This is because the CPU uses a multiple interrupt to make its levels programmable. To avoid these problems, we have provided an interrupt register and have separated the interrupt processing in the CPU from interrupts caused by peripheral resources. This method cnables portability of the interrupt occurrence test vector of peripheral equipment.

4. Technology and performance

Table 2 lists the CPU hardware specifications used in the actual design. Although a 1.5 μm CMOS process having two Al layers is currently

being used (design rules allow a reduction up to about 1.0 μm), manufacturing using a 1.3 μm process is being evaluated. Currently, the 12 MHz clock (330 ns cycle) is the maximum operating frequency. We expect to achieve 20 MHz by applying the 1.3 μm process.

5. Application and products

Using the completed F^2MC CPU core, we developed various types of general-purpose and dedicated microcomputers[3]. Table 3 lists the F^2MC series products. When developing these products, we reduced the layout area by using the circuit elements shown in Fig. 8 in the peripheral hardware devices to be mounted. We also reduced the development turn around time by sharing general-purpose peripheral devices such as timers and Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitters (UARTs). Figure 9 shows an example of the products.

Development of various types of products is continuing. We plan to work further on a method to enable quick development of an ASIC microcomputer to meet the user's requirements.

The F^2MC CPU core design can be used to developed such an ASIC microcomputer.

6. Conclusion

This paper describes in detail the F^2MC microcontroller developed by Fujitsu. Its

Table 2. Hardware specification of F^2MC series

Item	Contents
PLA	18 000 transistors
Resister, ALU, random logic	10 000 transistors
Interrupt control	1 700 transistors
Process	1.5 μm, 2-layer metal
Area	11.8 mm^2

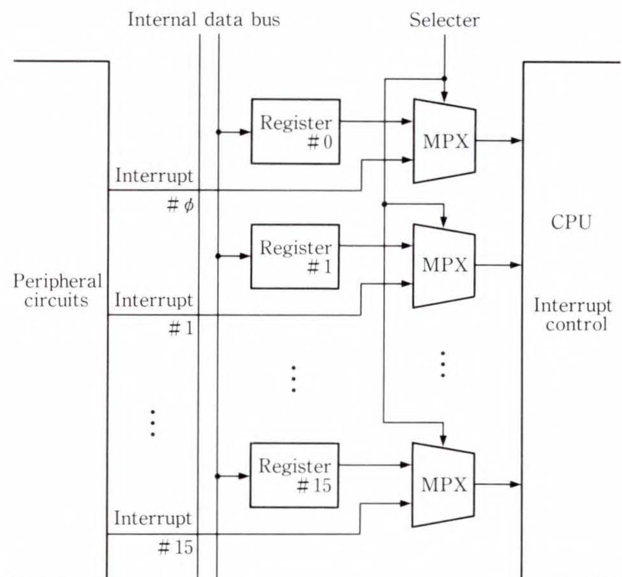


Fig. 9—Interrupt test circuit diagram.

Table 3. Products of F^2MC series

Product number	ROM	RAM	Timer	Serial I/O	Additional hardware	Package	Application
MB8971*X*	8-16 Kbytes (internal) 64 Kbytes (external)	256-512 bytes (internal) 64 Kbytes (external)	16-bit x 4 (input and output)	UART 8-bit x 1	PWM timer A/D converter	64 SDIP 64 QFP	General purpose
MB8973*X*	8-16 Kbytes (internal)	256-512 bytes (internal)	8-bit x 1 16-bit x 1	–	A/D converter VED driver	64 SDIP	VFD display
MB8976*X*	16 Kbytes (internal) 64 Kbytes (external)	512 bytes (internal) 64 Kbytes (external)	8-bit x 2 16-bit x 1	UART 16-bit x 1	A/D converter PWM timer	80 QFP	Servo control
MB89795	16 Kbytes (internal)	512 bytes (internal)	8-bit x 1 16-bit x 1	8-bit x 1	Remote- and disk-control circuits A/D converter	80 QFP	Video disk

architecture reflects the market's requirements for microcontrollers. The F^2 MC uses the most advanced design and technology and is also optimized for use in ASIC microcontrollers.

Products have already been developed for some application areas, and the CPU core will continue to be used in various applications in the future.

References

1) MOS Microcontroller Market-Forecast Dataquest Incorporated December. 1986.
2) Yamada et al.: 8-bit Flexible Microcontroller. (in Japanese), Res. Rep. of J. Inst. Electron. Commun. Eng., Jpn., SSD-86-92, pp. 7-12 (1986).
3) Mori, S., Ito, M., and Murakami, J.: 32-bit Microprocessor and ASIC Microcontroller. (in Japanes), *FUJITSU*, **39**, 3 pp. 259-264 (1988).

Jyoji Murakami

Microcomputer Design Dept.
MOS Devision
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Physics
The University of Tokyo 1972
Dr. of Applied Physics
The University of Tokyo 1977
Specializing in the Design of Microcomputer

UDC 621.3.049.774:681.323

Development of 32-Bit Microprocessor Family Products: G_{MICRO} F32

• Shosuke Mori • Koichi Fujita • Haruyasu Itoh

(Manuscript received September 6, 1988)

The technological trend toward higher integration and expanded functions of microprocessors has become increasingly important in the design of workstations and embedded controllers.

This paper outlines the G_{MICRO} F32 and key technologies for its development.

1. Introduction

The functions and performance of information processing units such as the latest office computers and workstations has recently greatly improved. The performance of conventional microprocessors is insufficient for them to form the nucleus of these devices. Thus, development of 32-bit microprocessor family products having high performance and expanded functions to meet the needs of the 1990's is required.

Fujitsu has developed the G_{MICRO} F32 32-bit microprocessor family products to meet these needs.

This paper describes an outline of these products and the key technologies required for their development.

2. Background and deveopment objectives

2.1 G_{MICRO} F32 family

The G_{MICRO} F32 family products make up a total system consisting of a high performance 32-bit microprocessor unit (MPU), peripheral LSIs, support software, and board computers[1]. This MPU is the first one having architecture that conforms to the realtime operating system nucleus (TRON) proposed by Sakamura[1)-3)].

To broadly meet the future requirements of the diversified market for 32-bit microprocessors, three versions (high performance version, standard version, and low cost version) of the MPU have been developed. Emphasis has also been placed on the compatibility of register sets, instruction sets, addressing modes, and data formats.

The G_{MICRO} F32 family peripheral LSI was developed to provide a system with a well-balanced configuration that makes use of the high performance G_{MICRO} MPU.

The basic objective of the development of support tools was to provide an environment that is easy for the users to use by taking advantage of the MPU's features.

3. Configuration of G_{MICRO} F32 family products

3.1 MPU

There are three current versions of the MPU: F32/300, F32/200, and F32/100. These MPUs conform to the TRON specification, and the register sets, instruction sets, addressing modes, and data formats are compatible between each version[2)]. The outline of each MPU is described below. Figure 1 shows the relative capabilities of each MPU.

3.1.1 F32/300

The F32/300 has the highest performance of this family of products because of the increased built-in cache memory capacity and the enhanced built-in memory management unit

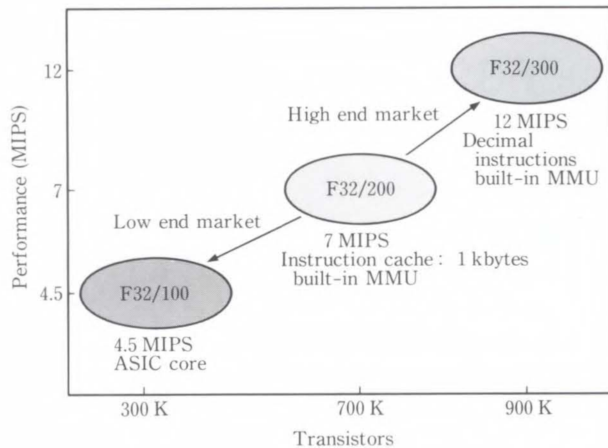


Fig. 1–Positioning of G_{MICRO} MPUs.

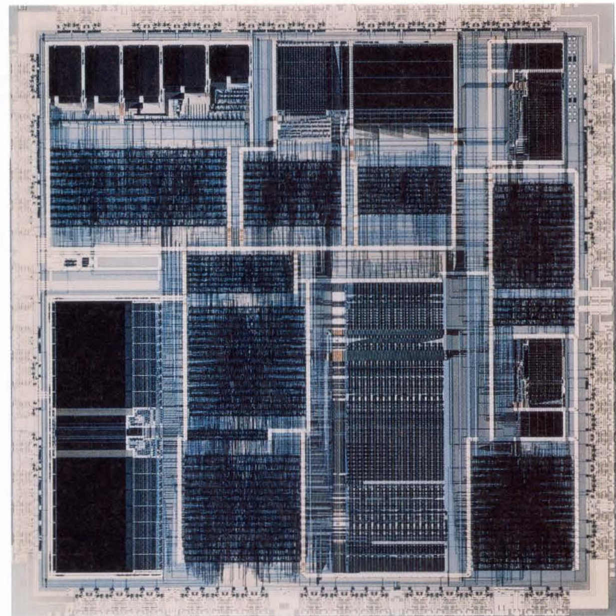


Fig. 2–F32/200 MPU (chip size: 14.0 x 14.1 mm^2)

(MMU) functions. This product also has enhanced decimal instructions for the minicomputer-class throughput-oriented market and can effectively execute COBOL[3]. It contains approximately 900 000 transistors and can execute 12 MIPS (at 20 MHz operation) in the EDN benchmark.

3.1.2 F32/200

The F32/200 is the intermediate performance product. It also has an internal 6-stage pipeline structure and incorporates several types of cache memory. This product contains approximately 700 000 transistors (see Fig. 2) and can execute 7 MIPS in the EDN benchmark.

3.1.3 F32/100

The F32/100 has good performance at a low cost. It is supported only by real storage. This product contains approximately 300 000 transistors and can execute approximately 4.5 MIPS in the END benchmark.

The biggest difference between the F32/100 and the two family products described earlier is that the F32/100 incorporates the peripheral functions in the chip with the MPU to form the core. Therefore, this product can satisfy the market trend towards application specific ICs (ASICs).

3.2 G_{MICRO} F32 peripheral LSI

Table 1 lists the G_{MICRO} F32 family LSIs that are now being developed. Figure 3 shows an example of a system configuration comprised of these LSIs. The peripheral LSI devices connected to the system bus are treated as system components; this is a new concept. This enables a high-performance total system to be constructed taking advantage of the yearly improvements in the performance of the MPU resulting from, for example, the use of built-in cache memory and a pipeline control system.

The concept of system components includes the MPU, peripheral LSI devices, and various support tools. The system components are designed to be used as components in which the LSIs themselves determine the system instead of the device products. This differs from the image of a component currently held by conventional system designers.

Consequently, the system designer can easily design an optimum system having good performance by combining these system components.

The outline of each LSI is described below.

3.2.1 Floating point Processing Unit (FPU)

The FPU executes high speed arithmetic operations and floating point operations of functions as the MPU coprocessor. The FPU has a special high speed communication protocol

Table 1. G_{MICRO} F32 family LSI

	Product	Function	Transistor	Technology	Package
MPU	F32/300	32-bit MPU: high end version 20 MHz/12 MIPS	900K	CMOS 1.0 μm Al 3-layer	PGA-179
	F32/200	32-bit MPU: standard version 20 MHz/ 7 MIPS	700 K	CMOS 1.0 μm Al 2-layer	PGA-135
	F32/100	32-bit MPU: low end version 20 MHz/4.5 MIPS	−300 K	CMOS 1.0 μm Al 2-layer	PGA-135 QFP-160
Peripheral LSI	FPU	32-bit floating point processing unit	−550 K	CMOS 1.0 μm Al 2-layer	PGA-135
	DMAC	32-bit DMA controller	380 K	CMOS 1.2 μm Al 2-layer	PGA-179
	IRC	32-bit interrupt request controller	9 200	CMOS 1.2 μm Al 2-layer	SDIP-64 PLCC-68
	CPG	Clock pulse generator	−100	Bi-polar	DIP-12
	TAGM	Tag memory	220 K	CMOS 1.0 μm Al 1-layer	PGA-64
	CCM	Cache controller & memory	−1 200 K	CMOS 1.0 μm Al 2-layer	PGA-124

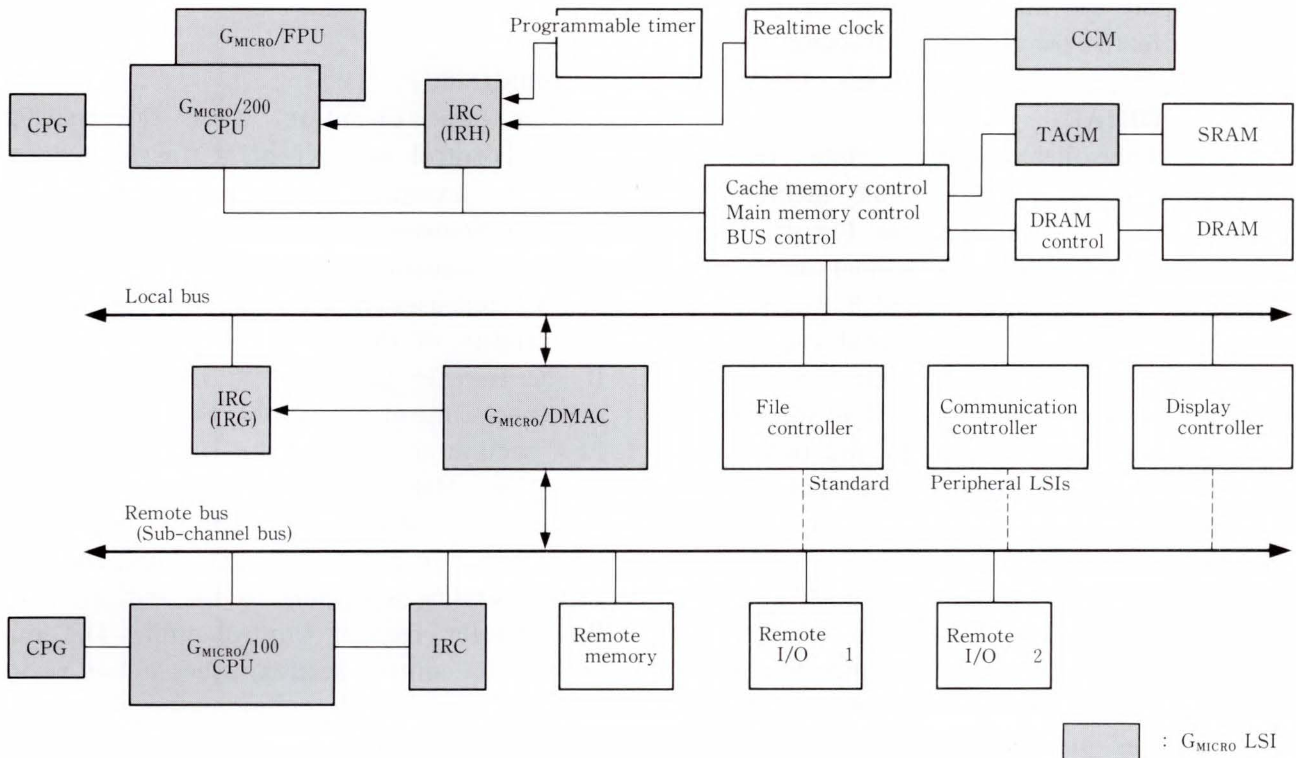


Fig. 3—Application system configuration of G_{MICRO} family products.

with the MPU. The command sets from the MPU to the FPU are padded in the MPU instruction sets (reserved from the start).

This FPU provides the main features such as

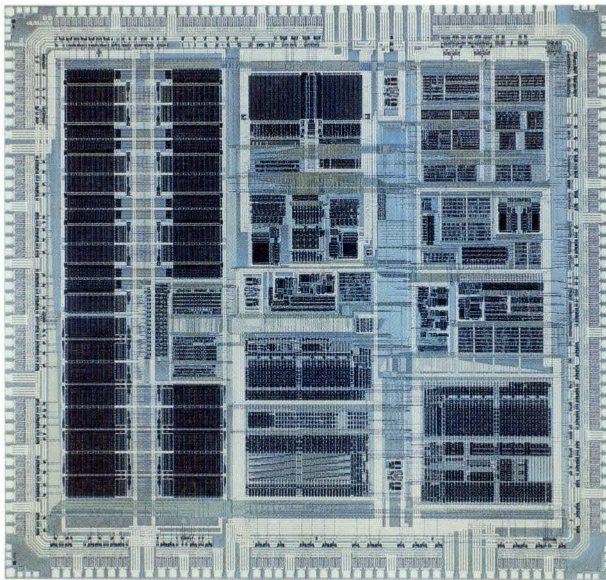


Fig. 4—F32/DMAC (chip size: 11.14 x 10.46 mm^2).

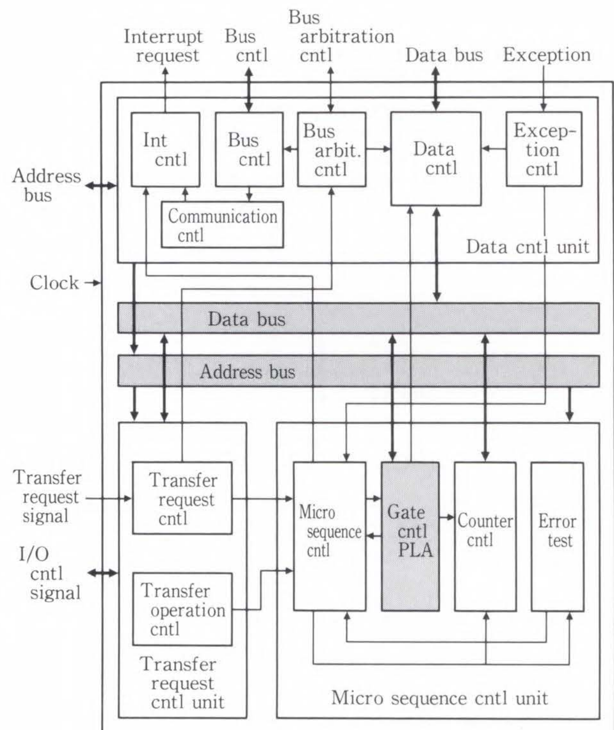


Fig. 5—Block diagram of F32/DMAC.

the product and sum operations required for image display and the area decision instructions that are effective for clipping processing.

3.2.2 Direct Memory Access Controller (DMAC)

This controller supports data transfer between a peripheral device and memory or inter-memory data transfer (see Fig. 4). There are four channels, and each channel can operate independently. Transfer units of 8, 16, 32, and 64 bits can optionally be selected and can be transferred between two separate buses in the remote and subchannel modes. The subchannel in which each MPU exists in the two buses incorporates the interrupt control feature used for inter-MPU communication and the message buffers.

Figure 5 shows the internal block diagram. The DMAC consists of three units: transfer request control unit, micro sequence control unit, and data handler unit. The gate control PLA section performs the complex control of the micro sequence control unit that controls the transfer. The PLA section degrades the performance. In other words, the design load is increased if the section is composed of random logic, also the step is increased and performance degrades if it is composed of microprograms.

For basic operation, when the transfer request control unit accepts a transfer request from an external microprocessor, the unit sends a transfer start request to the micro sequence control unit. The micro sequence control unit uses the error test section to check the validity of the transfer request parameter. If the transfer parameter is valid, the micro sequence control unit uses the gate control PLA section to activate the transfer sequence unit. The DMAC acquires the bus rights to execute the DMA transfer. The bus arbitration control section of the data control unit executes this processing according to the indication of the transfer request control unit. The bus arbitration control section issues a bus rights arbitration request to the bus master, obtains an acknowledge signal, and acquires the bus rights.

After data transfer is started, the counter control section updates the transfer source address and transfer destination address. In this case, the data control unit can use the internal 4-byte data holding register (data swapper) to freely reassign 4-byte data in units

of bytes according to the indication of the gate control PLA section.

The gate control PLA section monitors the remaining transfer byte counts of the counter control section. When the counts are set to zero, the PLA section terminates the transfer operation.

As a result of the above configuration, a high speed data transfer of 27 Mbyte/s at a clock frequency of 20 MHz is achieved.

3.2.3 Interrupt Request Controller (IRC)

Figure 6 shows a fabricated IRC chip. The IRC expands interrupt requests and generates interrupt vectors in a system that uses the MPU. A single IRC can expand up to seven interrupt requests and can perform multiple interrupt processing at high speed using the high speed daisy chain connection. The IRC can set the interrupt levels for each interrupt input, trigger mode and vector processing, and support the mode in which as interrupt vector corresponds to each function of the MPU.

Figure 7 shows the internal block diagram of the IRC. The IRC consists of seven sections: local interrupt input, bus interrupt input, level conversion, interrupt output, acknowledge control, vector generation, and bus interface.

3.2.4 Clock Pulse Generator (CPG)

The CPG provides the MPU and peripheral LSI devices with the standard operation clock signals. The base oscillating frequency is 40 MHz.

3.2.5 Tag Memory (TAGM)

TAGM enables the 2- or 4-way set associative configuration by selecting the external terminals. It also enables a high speed access of 27 ns from the address to the bit information output. A high performance and compact cache memory system can be constructed by combining another high speed SRAM and control circuit[4] (see Fig. 8).

3.2.6 Cache Controller and Memory (CCM)

The CCM consists of tag data memory, other circuits, and control circuits. It has a 16-Kbyte physical address capacity. The memory configuration is 4-way set associative. The main storage is updated in the write through mode that always writes new data in main storage.

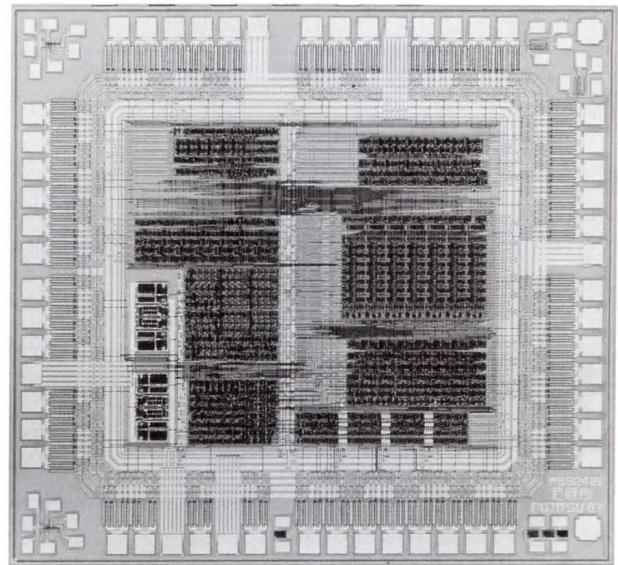


Fig. 6–F32/IRC (chip size: 4.05 x 3.75 mm²).

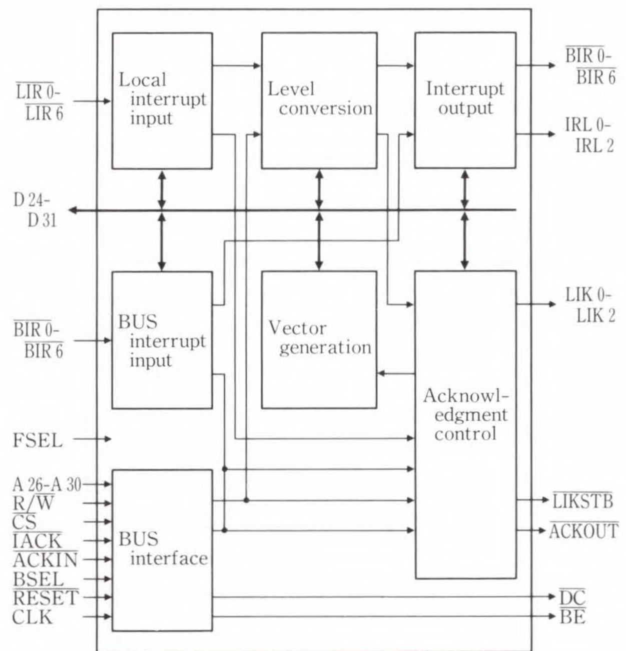


Fig. 7–Block diagram of F32/IRC.

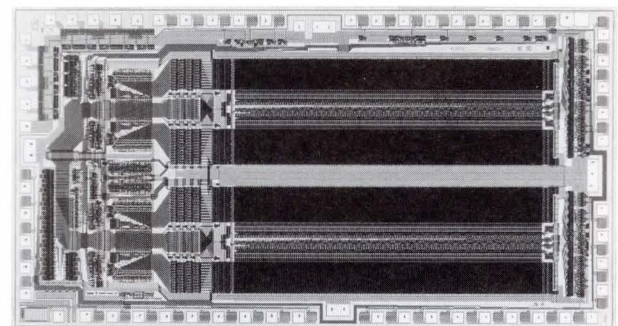


Fig. 8–F32/TAGM (chip size: 4.68 x 8.76 mm²)

Table 2. G_{MICRO} development support tools

Cross development support tool			Resident development support tool	
Cross support software	C Module-2 Assembler Linkage editor Librarian Simulator debugger Load Module converter	Cross machine VAX/VMS M series FM R series Workstation	Software	UNIX OS C FORTRAN PASCAL COBOL Modula-2 Assembler Linker Librarian Debugger ITRON OS
System debugger	Host emulator (Software)			
	In-circuit emulator (Hardware)		Hardware	Board computers CPU, memory, file, I/O, LAN

The CCM is used in the BUS watch mode that detects when another bus master such as DMAC overwrites memory.

4. Support tools

Table 2 lists the G_{MICRO} F32 family support tools. These tools are as follows: the cross development support tools for developing programs using the host computer, an emulator that debugs the system on the target system, and the resident development support tools constructed on the board computer that installs this family of microprocessor.

These support tools enable effective development of today's increasingly large-scale software. They are designed to take advantage of the features of the G_{MICRO} family products.

The cross development support tools include a C compiler which enables debugging and programming to be performed integratedly using a high-level language, mainly at the C language level[5].

Figure 9 shows the development procedure when the user uses these support tools to develop software.

The features and outlines of the main support tools are described below.

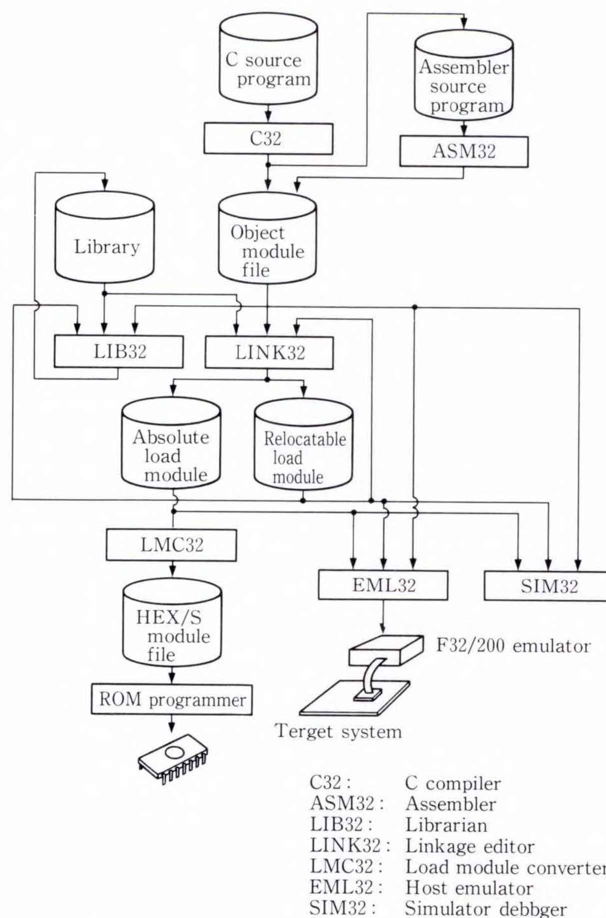


Fig. 9—G_{MICRO} F32 programs development procedure.

4.1 C compiler

The language specification conforms to the American National Standards Institute Draft X3J11 (ANSI Draft) specified as the international standard. This complier also has many optimization levels and is designed to generate efficient object codes by using the various MPU and FPU features.

The specific optimization items are as follows:

1) CONSTANT FOLDING
2) COMMON SUBEXPRESSION ELIMINATION
3) UNUSED DEFINITION ELIMINATION
4) STRENGTH REDUCTION
5) BRANCH TAIL MERGING
6) REGISTER COLORING
7) PEEP HOLE OPTIMIZATION.

4.2 Assembler

The assembler notation is based on the IEEE standards and takes the improved program description into consideration.

Its features include high-level language type structured assembly functions such as FOR and WHILE and SWIT-CHCASE statements. The macro function and conditional assembly functions are also included.

Instructions having a high frequency of usage have multiple formats for shorter MPU instructions. The assembler has a function to automatically select the shortest and fastest instruction formats for the same instruction description to make use of the instruction formats mentioned above.

4.3 Simulator debugger

The simulator debugger executes MPU and FPU instruction operations of the G_{MICRO} F32 family on a pseudo virtual system of the host computer.

Figure 10 shows the configuration of the virtual system section.

The virtual MPU and FPU simulate the MPU and FPU instruction operations. The virtual MMU simulates the MMU function and operates in the same way as the actual MMU for address conversion and memory protection. The combined virtual MPU and MMU sections correspond to the actual MPU.

The virtual memory, interval timer and system call functions simulate memory, interrupt and I/O operations, and the basic hardware installed on the target board.

The simulator debugger can sample the execution flow and access results and the internal

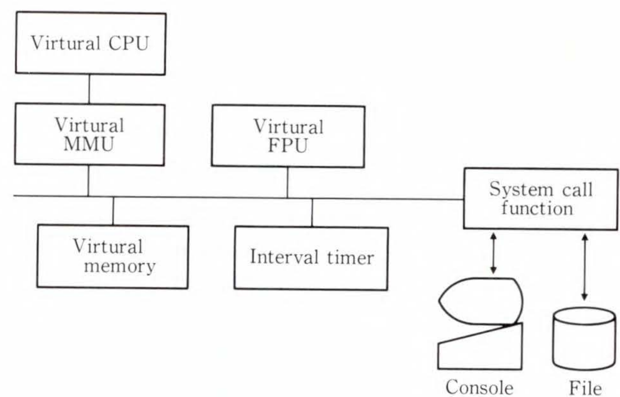


Fig. 10—Virtual system section of simulator debugger.

states of the MPU and FPU in detail. It can also output various types of information when execution of the program is interrupted or terminated.

Typical examples are:

1) Display of the trace results (execution history)
2) C 0 or C 1 coverage.

4.4 Emulator

The emulator debugs the program and system by connecting the target system.

The main functions of the emulator include the alternate execution of the MPU and memory, and execution control.

Since this emulator performs the highest speed of MPU emulation and enables debugging of the section in which timing is required for the target system, both the hardware and software can be easily verified at the highest speed of emulation.

It can set various break conditions such as instruction break, operand break, and bus break for the execution break function using the debug support function provided by the MPU.

The emulator can set break-points for both logical and physical addresses in the logical space program. It also supports debugging of the multiple logical space system.

5. Key technology

The key technologies for the development of this LSI (especially peripheral LSI) are intro-

duced below.

5.1 Process technology

This extremely important technology improves performance by reducing the delay time per gate, reduces the gate length of the MOS transistor for large scale integration, and effectively uses the wiring layer. Process technology is especially required for an MPU having many elements. The F32/300 uses the advanced wafer process technology of the CMOS 1.0 μm gate and uses three metal wiring layers.

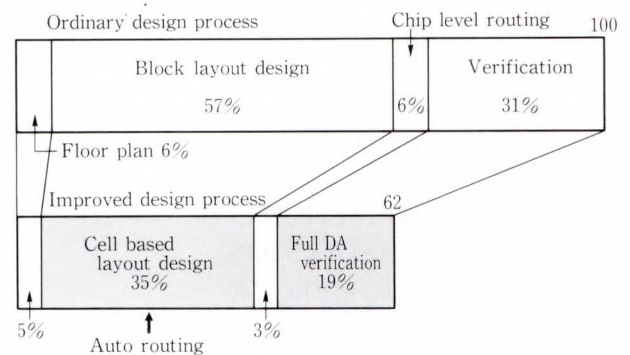


Fig. 11—Effect of improved DA method on layout design efficiency.

5.2 Design method

The G_{MICRO} F32 family LSI design method combines the advantages of the full custom design method (high density packaging) and the standard cell design method (short development time). In a block such as the register and ALU in which repetition occurs frequently and performance greatly affects layout design, the full custom design method is mainly used. The standard cell-like short turnaround automatic wiring design method is used in random logic blocks such as the control circuit.

5.3 PLA technology

The design method used for PLA has the following advantages compared to the design method used for random logic:

1) Since the design method used for PLA has good uniformity, it can reduce the area occupied by the metal wiring and has better element density than the random logic design method.
2) The design method used for PLA can easily be used for large changes in the design.

   Due to advances in process technology and circuit technology, large scale PLA that can respond at high speed was realized on the LSI.

The largest scale PLA was developed for the DMAC having 28 bits of input, 30 bits of output, and 3 411 product terms. The response speed of this PLA was 12.1 ns (typical) from the input of the AND array driver to the output of the OR array sense amplifier.

The compression and dividing technology becomes important in PLA development. The number of product terms of the DMAC can now be reduced from 7 306 to 3 411 by the Fujitsu compression tool and was divided into 20 PLA blocks.

The gate scale was calculated assuming that the above PLA is designed using random logic. This calculation confirmed that the PLA for 3 411 product terms corresponds to a random logic block of approximately 15 000 or more gates. When random logic is used, it was concluded that the PLA design method is better than the random logic design method from the viewpoint of layout area. The proportion occupied by the wiring area in addition to the area occupied by the original gate increases according to the increase in the number of elements.

5.4 Design automation (DA) technology

In the verification stage of logical design, a mix level simulator that can verify dynamic transistor circuits even when gates and transistors coexist was developed.

For layout design, an intra-block and inter-block automatic wiring tool was developed. The reliability of the LSI design was improved significantly by fully automating the verification of the layout pattern.

The entire design time was reduced to approximately two thirds that of the conventional layout design method. Figure 11 shows the effect of the reduced layout design time. Full DA verification of the automatic wiring and

logic diagram layout pattern that uses the layout design method based on cells greatly contributed to the reduction of the design time.

6. Future product expansion plans

The G_{MICRO} F32 family products will be expanded emphasizing the following points:

1) Upward and downward expansion of the MPU

Performance requirements are increasing year by year and the advent of microprocessors having a 100 MIPS processing speed is expected by 2 000 A.D. These requirements will also apply to the G_{MICRO} F32 microprocessor family. As the architecture is improved and the technology advances, high-level processors than the F32/300 will be developed in the future to improve the current MPU functions and performance.

It is expected that MPU chips that can use peripheral circuits (because of high integration technology based on improved semiconductor technology) will form an important future market independent of improvements in performance.

For this purpose, downward expansion and broader applications of multifunction microprocessors with excellent cost effectiveness based on the G_{MICRO} F32/100 MPU core will be developed to meet the ASIC requirements.

2) Expansion of peripheral LSI

MPU performance greatly depends on the functions and performance of the peripheral LSI. Peripheral LSI devices having improved functions such as image display, processing controllers, and bus peripheral control LSI devices will be developed in the future to improve the throughput of the entire system.

3) Enhanced support tools

The 32-bit microprocessor software will be made large-scale and more complex.

How well a high-reliability program can be quickly developed greatly depends on the state of the development support environment. All support tools will be further enhanced and advanced by improving man-machine interfaces and providing all the necessary support tools.

7. Conclusion

The concept of the G_{MICRO} F32 family products and an outline of the products have been described.

The demands of the microprocessor market, especially for 32-bit microprocessors based on TRON architecture, will continue to expand.

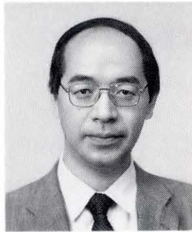
Related products will be sequentially developed and provided at the same high level of quality and performance. Thus, the total system will be supported.

References

1) Sakamura, K.: Architecture of the TRON VLSI CPU. *IEEE Micro*, 7. 2, pp. 17-31 (1987).
2) Sakamura, K., Inayashi, H., Itoh, M., and Yoshida, T.: Basic Architecture Emphasizing the Expandability Based on the TRON Specification. *Nikkei Electronics*, **431**, 1987-10-05, pp. 165-179.
3) Itoh, M.: "Architecture Characteristics of G_{MICRO}/300". TRON project 1987, Sakamura, K. ed., 1st ed., Springer, 1987, pp. 273-280.
4) Suzuki, A., Yamaguchi, S., Ito, H., Suzuki, N., and Yabu, T.: A 19 ns Memory. 1987 IEEE ISSCC, Digest Tech. Papers, 1987, pp. 134-135.
5) Asami, N.: The Development Support Environment such as the C Compiler is Being Perfected. *Nikkei Electronics*, **439**, 1988-01-25, pp. 172-173.

Shosuke Mori
Microcomputer Development Dept.
MOS Devision
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Chemical Eng.
Yokohama National University 1971
Master of Engineer in Technology
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1973
Specializing in LSI Design

Haruyasu Itoh
Microcomputer Development Dept.
MOS Devision
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Science
Yokohama City University 1971
Specializing in Computer Software



Koichi Fujita
Microcomputer Development Dept.
MOS Devision
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Engineer in Electronics Eng.
The University of Electro-
Communications 1972
Specializing in LSI Design

UDC 621.383.5:621.391.6

Lightwave Semiconductor Devices

● Haruo Yonetani ● Akira Fukushima ● Keiji Satoh

(Manuscript received September 9, 1988)

Lightwave semiconductor devices are one of the keys to building lightwave communication systems. In this paper Fujitsu lightwave semiconductor devices now being produced, are reviewed according to individual device characteristics and system applications.

1. Introduction

The use of lightwave communication systems has grown rapidly. Their use in different types of systems such as high-speed, long-haul transmission systems, local area networks (LAN), and subscriber loop systems has also been carefully studied[1]. A decision as to the type of lightwave device to be used in the system must be made. That is, whether to use a Light Emitting Diode (LED) or Laser Diode (LD) as the emitter, and whether to use a PIN Photodiode (PIN PD) or Avalanche Photodiode (APD) as the detector must be decided. The diode having the characteristics required for the optical communication system must be selected according to cost. (Because the characteristics and cost between a LD and LED or between a PIN PD and APD differ greatly.)

Fujitsu lightwave semiconductor devices can be used in a wide range of lightwave communication systems from LANs to multigiga bit transmission systems, to submarine cable systems which require high reliability.

The development of Fujitsu lightwave semiconductor devices closely reflects the development of lightwave communication systems. At first 0.8 μm wavelength range devices such as GaAlAs lasers[2),3)], LEDs[4)] and silicon PDs[5)] were developed. However, communication systems using the 1.2 μm to 1.6 μm wavelength range are becoming more important for large-capacity, long-haul communications than communication systems using the 0.8 μm wavelength range because optical fibers have lower loss and minimum dispersion in this range[6),7)]. High-speed, long-haul lightwave communication systems using this wavelength range have been developed. For these applications, Fujitsu has produced InGaAsP LDs and LEDs; InGaAs PDs and APDs; and Ge PDs and APDs. Characteristics of the devices, especially 1.2 μm to 1.6 μm wavelength range devices, are described individually in the following chapters.

2. Emitters

LEDs and LDs are important because their appearance has enabled lightwave communications. LEDs are simple electroluminescent devices. They are economical and easy to use. LEDs are used in small-capacity, short-distance communication systems. Laser diodes emit coherent light and are used in all lightwave communication systems from LANs to multi-giga bit transmission systems.

2.1 Laser diodes

Fujitsu manufactures two types of LDs. One is a Fabry-Perot (FP) laser and the other is a distributed feedback (DFB) laser. FP lasers emit multi-mode light and are used in a few hundred mega-bit systems. DFB lasers emit single-mode light and are used in multi-giga bit systems. Fujitsu's FP LD is referred to as a V-grooved substrate buried heterostructure laser (VSB LD), and DFB LD is referred to as a flat surface buried heterostructure distributed feedback laser (FBH-DFB LD).

2.1.1 VSB LD

The laser characteristics required for lightwave communication systems are low threshold current, high efficiency, stable transverse and longitudinal mode oscillation, high speed, and reliability. These characteristics are fulfilled by a VSB LD.

Figure 1 shows a schematic structure of the VSB LD[8]. A crescent-shaped active region is buried in the V-shaped groove. The surface of the V-groove is exactly (111)B InP surface. This fact is important to high reproducible fabrication and excellent transverse mode characteristics. A p-n-p-n structure is used outside the active region to effectively confine the injection current in the active region. For high speed applications, a mesa structure is

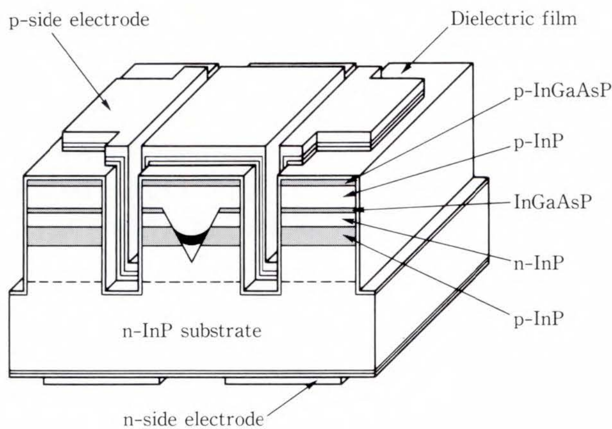


Fig. 1—Structure of VSB-LD.

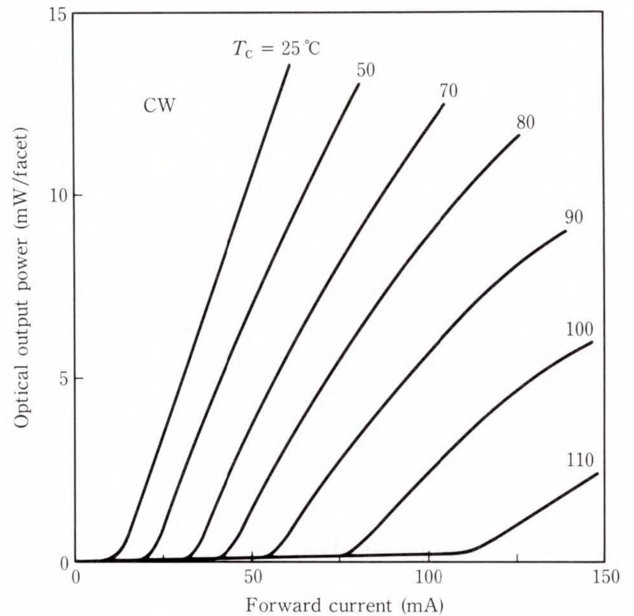
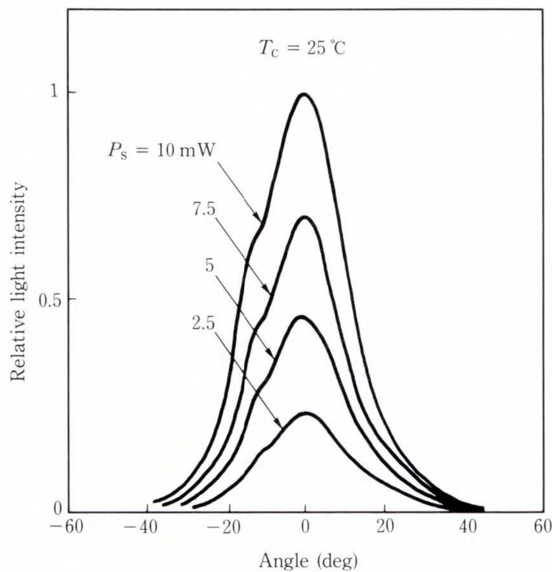
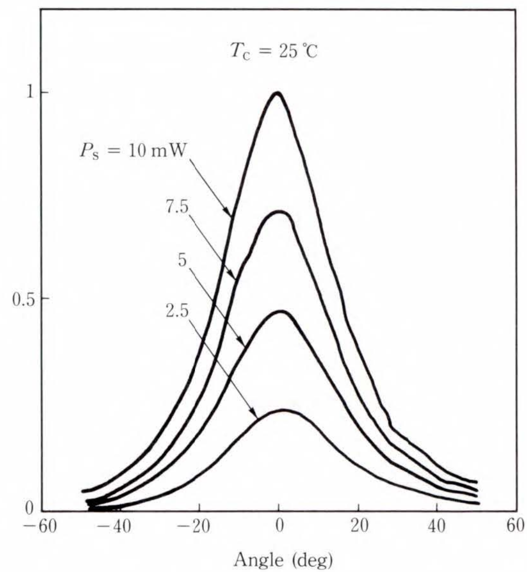


Fig. 2—Optical output characteristics of VSB-LD for various operating temperature T_c.



a) Parallel



b) Perpendicular

Fig. 3—Far field patterns of VSB-LD.

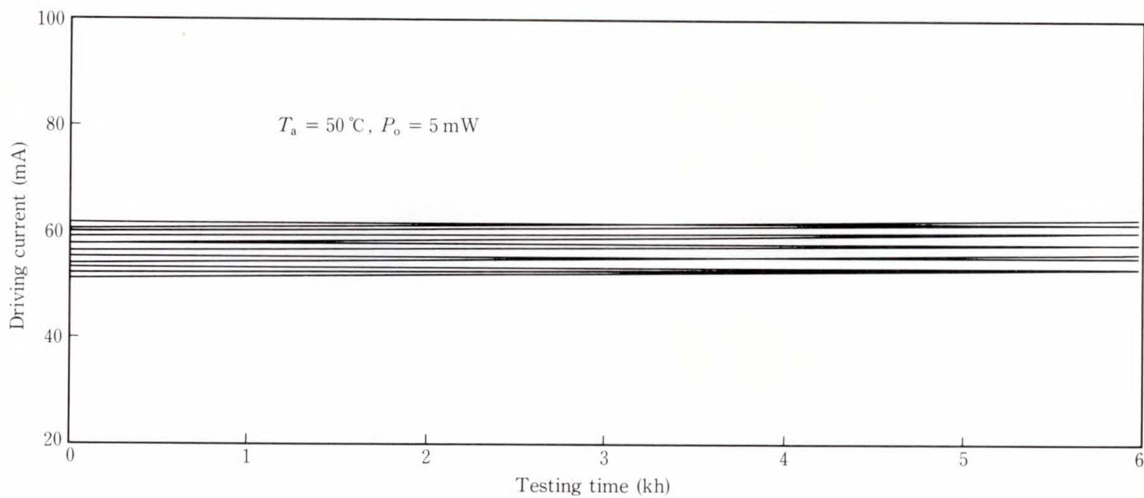


Fig. 4—Result of reliability assurance test for VSB-LDs.

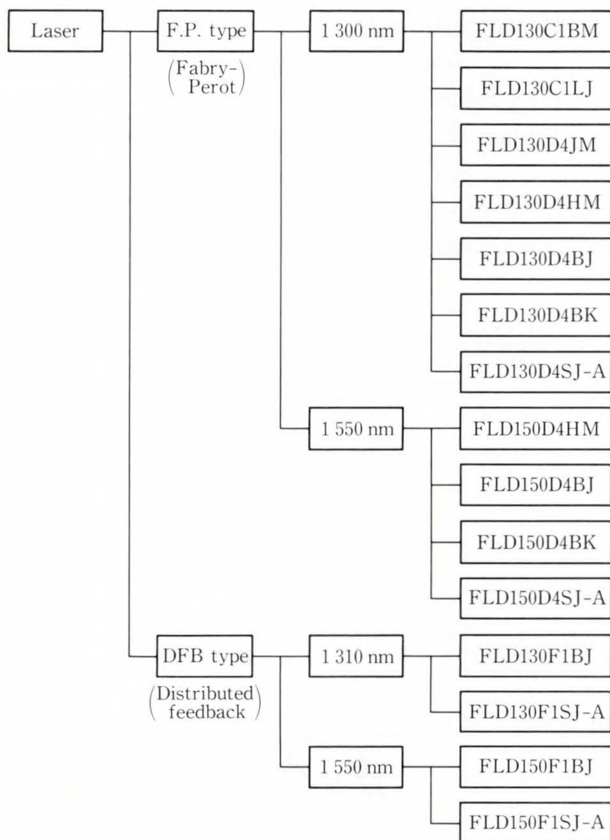


Fig. 5—List for main products of Fujitsu's LD.

applied to reduce the capacitance associated with the p-n junction in the current confinement layers. The width of the mesa is optimized to 15 μm.

Figure 2 shows typical I-L characteristics.

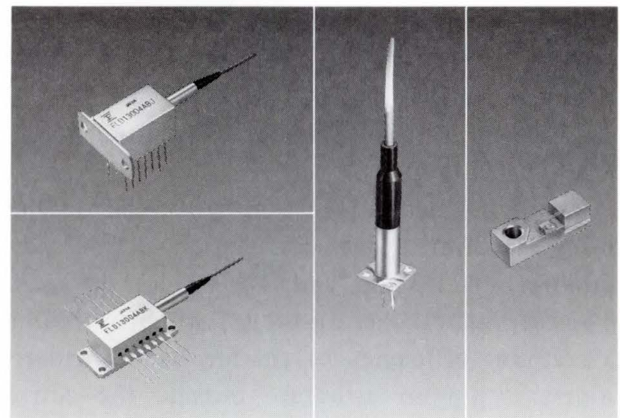


Fig. 6—Laser packages.

The CW threshold current and slope efficiency at 25 °C are 15 mA and 0.25 mW/mA. Even at 100 °C, stable CW operation is observed.

Figure 3 shows far field patterns both parallel and perpendicular to the junction plane. The far field patterns are smooth and there is no peak shift from low output power to high output power. The full widths at half maximum of the far field patterns are 25 ° for parallel to the junction plane and 32 ° for perpendicular.

Figure 4 shows the result of the reliability assurance test for VSB LDs under the aging condition where the LDs are driven at a constant power of 5 mW at 50 °C. Stable operations are observed and high reliability is expected. If the laser life is defined as the time up to when the operating current reaches 1.5 times the initial

value, the median lifetime is estimated to be 5×10^5 h at 50 °C by assuming linear increase in the operating current.

As described above, a VSB LD has enough lasing characteristics and reliability for a few hundred mega-bit lightwave communication systems. Figure 5 is a list of the various types of packaged devices sold by Fujitsu. Figure 6 shows some of these packages.

2.1.2 FBH-DFB LD

The laser characteristic required for a bit rate exceeding 1 Gbit/s is exceedingly stable single longitudinal mode operation because of color dispersion of silica optical fiber. The FBH-DFB LD has been developed for such systems. The FBH-DFB LD shows high fabrication yield, stable single mode operation, high frequency response, low noise property, and high reliability. Both 1.3 μm and 1.55 μm wavelength FBH-DFB LDs are available.

Figure 7 shows a schematic structure of the FBH-DFB LD[9].

A first-order corrugation is formed on the n-InP substrate. The corrugation periods are 200 nm for 1.3 μm, and 240 nm for 1.55 μm. The currugation depth is 40 nm, which optimizes a coupling efficiency of the feedback. Furthermore, a p-n-p-n structure outside the active region and a mesa structure are also employed for the same reason as the VSB LD (to restrict the current to the active layer). The features of the FBH-DFB LD are as follows:

1) Side walls of buried active region mesa are shifted from (111)A InP surface to achieve low threshold current, high quantum efficiency, and high fabrication yield.
2) Thickness and carrier concentration of the current confinement layers outside the active region are optimized to reduce leakage current.
3) The strength of distributed feedback (κL) are optimized; $\kappa L = 0.5\text{-}1.0$, which enables high single mode operation yield even at high output power.

Figure 8 shows the CW I-L characteristics of the 1.3 μm FBH-DFB laser at various temperatures. A CW threshold current of 15 mA and slope efficiency of 0.3 mW/mA are achieved at 25 °C.

Figure 9 shows the lasing spectra at 25 °C. Exceedingly stable single longitudinal mode operation with side mode suppression ratio of 35 dB is attained under CW condition and 3 Gbit/s modulation.

Figure 10 shows the pulse response of a narrow mesa type (5 μm width) FBH-DFB laser. A rise time and a fall time of less than 100 ps are attained. A 3 dB bandwidth at 5 mW

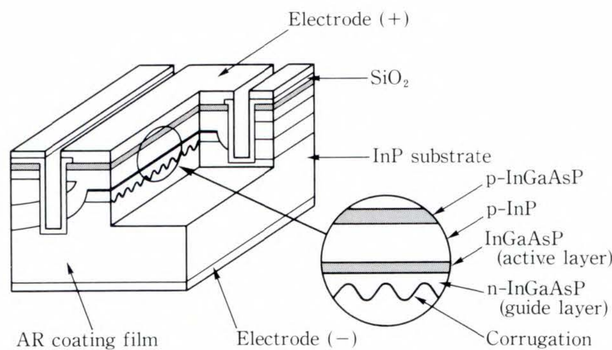


Fig. 7—Structure of FBH-DFB LD.

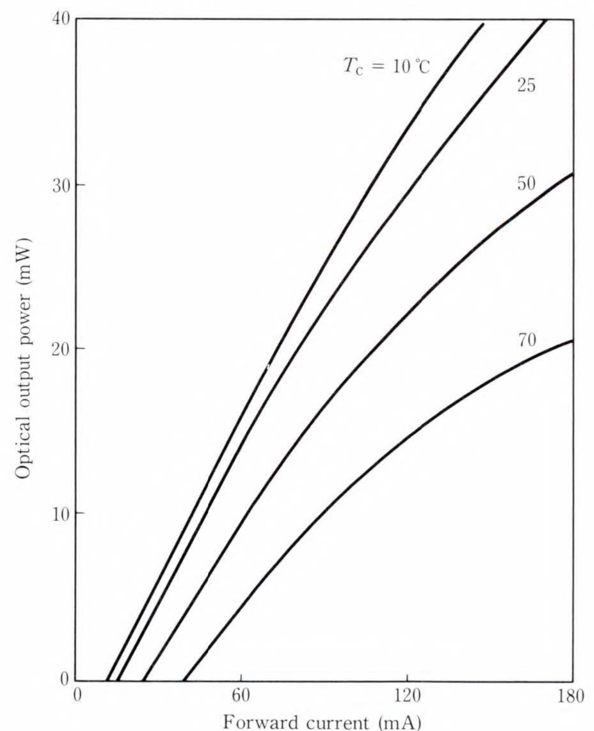
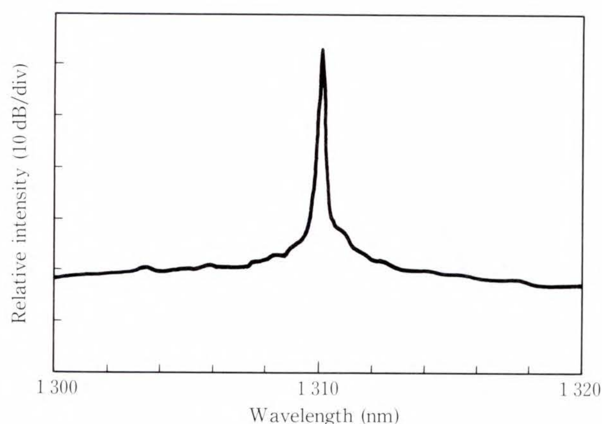
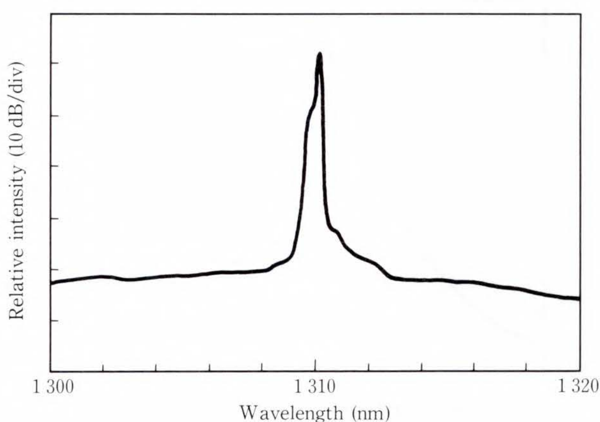


Fig. 8—Optical output characteristics of FBH-DFB LD.



a) CW spectrum



b) Modulated spectrum with 3 Gbit/s NRZ signal.

Fig. 9—Optical spectra of FBH-DFB LD.

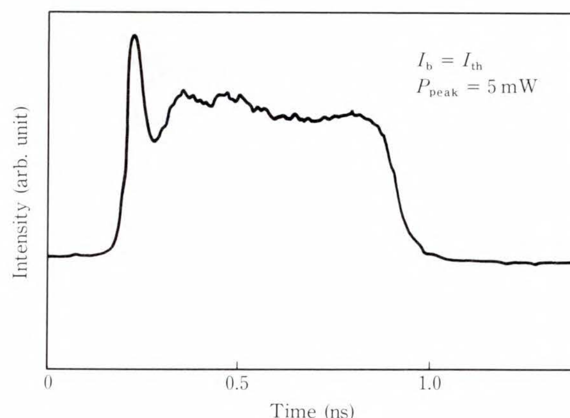


Fig. 10—Pulse response waveform of FBH-DFB LD.

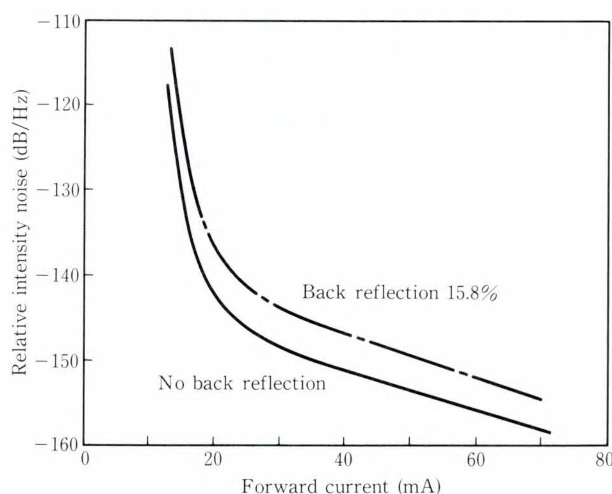


Fig. 11—Relative intensity noise of FBH-DFB LD.

output power on small signal frequency response is more than 6 GHz.

The low noise characteristic is also obtained as shown in Fig. 11. Relative intensity noise (RIN) at 8 mW as low as −160 dB/Hz is observed for the bandwidth of 900 MHz.

These experimental results confirm that FBH-DFB lasers are most suitable for multi-giga bit optical communication systems.

The result of the reliability test was fully satisfactory in the same way conventional VSB-LD. The FBH-DFB lasers show stable operation under high temperature aging tests in terms of not only operating current but lasing spectra. In particular, the expected life under the operating condition of 5 mW at 70 °C is longer than 8.5×10^5 h[10]. Figure 5 shows the main products of the DFB lasers. The FBH-DFB lasers are used for large-capacity long-haul transmission systems, especially submarine cable systems.

2.2 LED

Although LEDs have a disadvantage of lower overall output than LDs, LEDs still provide the best cost performance in short-distance transmission systems.

In addition to laser diodes, LEDs are also candidates for the light sources used in optical LANs and optical data link systems. Like FDDI

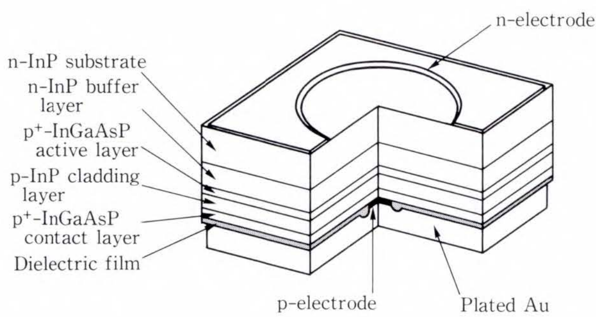


Fig. 12—Structure of high speed LED.

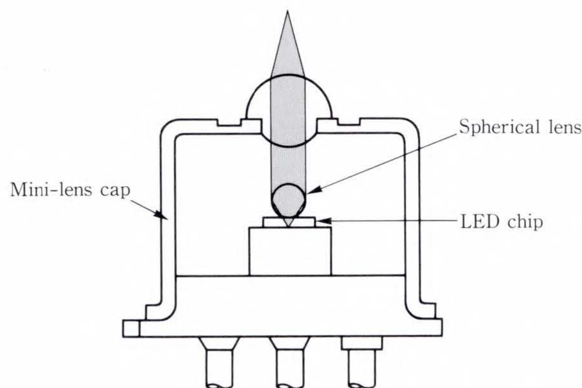
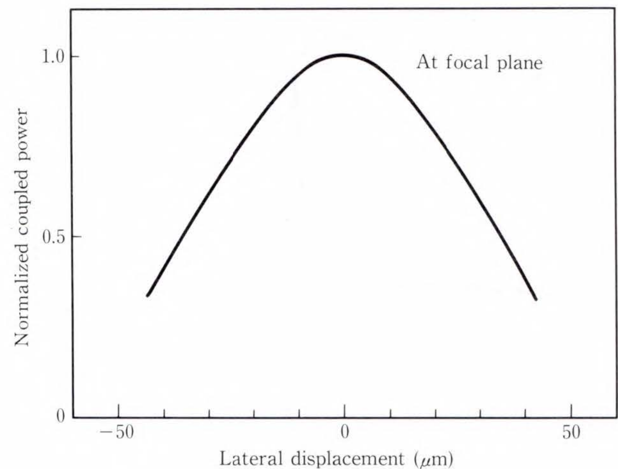


Fig. 13—Structure of high-speed LED package.

systems, the demand for low-cost, high-speed light sources requires the development of high-speed InGaAsP LED[11].

The InGaAsP LED was thus developed to meet this need. Figure 12 shows the device structure. The InP/InGaAsP layers are grown on an n-InP substrate by liquid phase epitaxy (LPE). The growth sequence of each layer is as follows. The first layer is an n-InP buffer. This layer is followed by a p^+-InGaAsP active layer with the alloy composition adjusted to 1.3 μm emission. The next layer is a p-InP cladding layer. The final layer is a p^+-InGaAsP contact layer.

To improve the response speed, the InGaAsP active layer is heavily Zn doped (8×10^{18} cm^{-3}) to reduce the injected carrier lifetime. The size of the emitting area has also been reduced (diam = 22 μm, thickness = 0.5 μm). The small emission diameter enables highly efficient coupling of LEDs to optical fiber cables and compensates the deterioration of the optical output caused by high Zn doping.



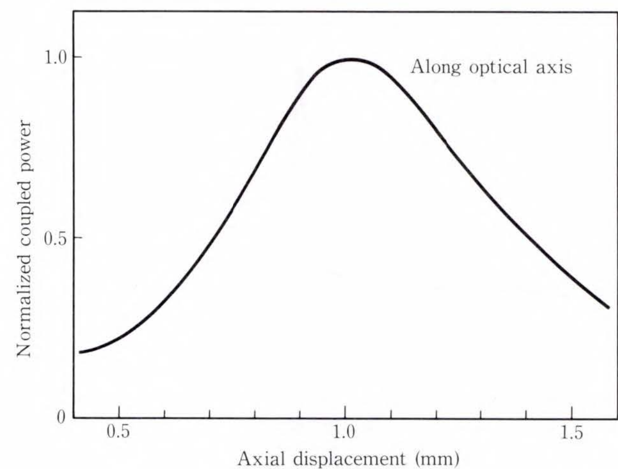


Fig. 14—Coupling characteristics.

The method of coupling an LED chip and multi-mode fiber (MMF) is an important technique for obtaining sufficient and stable coupled power[12]. Figure 13 shows the unique LED package; a modified TO-46 case with a mini-lens cap fixed by harmetic sealing. This package can be effectively coupled to MMF directly without GRIN-lenses or spherical lenses to construct a simple, economical, and reliable module.

The trace of ray is as follows.

At first, the light generated in the emitting area is collimated through the spherical lens ($n = 1.5$, diam = 400 μm) mounted directly on the chip. Next, the collimated beam is

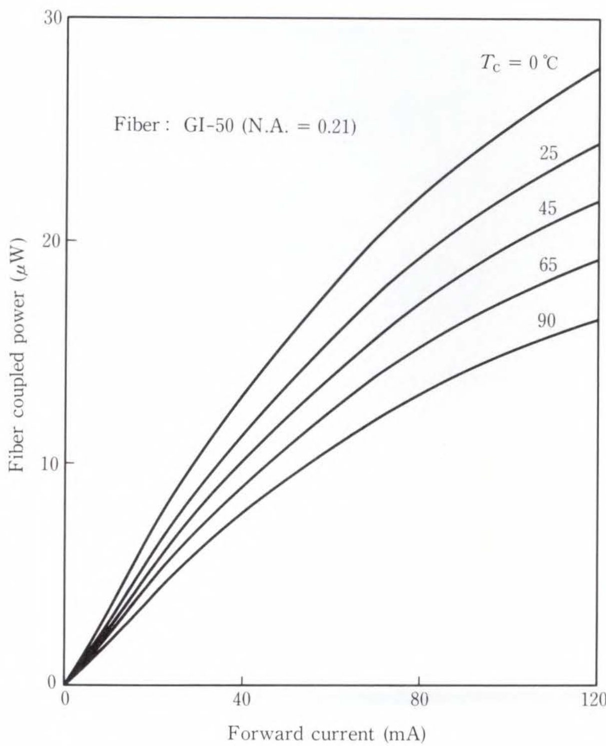


Fig. 15—Output power characteristics for different temperature T_c.

converged through the second lens ($n = 1.45$) on the cap. Figure 14 shows the alignment tolerances. The focal length is 1 mm from the tip of the second lens and is long enough to adjust the position when the chips are made into modules. For axial and lateral movement, 0.5 dB loss corresponds to a displacement of 0.2 mm and ±13 μm. These wide alignment tolerances have the advantages of easy module construction and high reproduction yield for connector insertion.

The transmission ability of high-speed LEDs is determined by the total performance of coupled power, spectral width, and response speed.

Figure 15 shows typical power launched to a graded-index (GI-50) fiber of 50/125 μm and 0.21 N.A. as a function of injection current at various temperatures. The values of coupled power for GI-50 and GI-62.5 (0.275 N.A.) MMF are typically 22 μW (−16.6 dBm) and 56 μW (−12.5 dBm) at 100 mA DC, 25 °C. The temperature dependence of the coupled

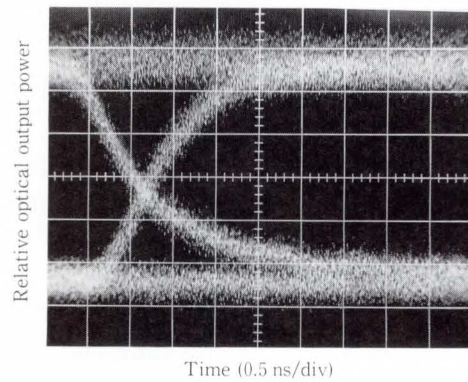


Fig. 16—Pulse response of LED.

Table 1. Specifications of high-speed LED

Absolute maximum ratings (T_c = 25 °C)

Parameter	Symbol	Condition	Ratings	Unit
Storage temperature	T_{stg}	–	−50 to +150	°C
Operating temperature	T_{op}	–	−40 to +90	°C
Forward current	I_F	CW	120	mA
Reverse voltage	V_R	–	1	V

Optical and electrical characteristics (T_c = 25 °C)

Parameter	Symbol	Test condition	min	Typ.	max	Unit
Peak wave-length	λ_p	I_F = 100 mA	1 270	1 300	1 340	nm
Spectral width (FWHM)	$\Delta\lambda$		–	140	160	nm
Optical output power	P_o		0.15	0.25	–	mW
Power launched into GI-50 fiber	P_l		15	22	–	μW
Cut-off frequency	f_c	I_F = 100mA + 20mAp-p, −1.5 dB from 1 MHz	180	240	–	MHz
Rise time	t_r	I_F = 0-100mA, 10-90 %	–	1.5	–	ns
Fall time	t_f		–	2.5	–	ns
Forward voltage	V_F	I_F = 100 mA	–	1.5	2.0	V
Capaci-tance	C_t	f = 1 MHz, V_R = 0 V	–	300	400	pF

GI-50 fiber: Graded-index fiber, core diam = 50 μm, cladding diam = 125 μm, N.A. = 0.21

power is −0.51%/°C (normalized at 25 °C) at 100 mA up to 90 °C.

The peak wavelength and the spectrum half width at 25 °C are typically 1 300 nm and 140 nm at 100 mA DC. The temperature dependence of the peak wavelength and half-width of the spectrum is 0.35 nm/°C and 0.2%/°C (normalized at 25 °C).

By applying 100 mA step pulses without prebias to this LED, the rise time and fall time are measured to be 1.5 ns and 2.5 ns, as shown in Fig. 16. This high-speed response enables high-speed transmission up to 200 Mbit/s.

Table 1 lists the LED specifications. Figure 17 is a photograph of the LEDs.

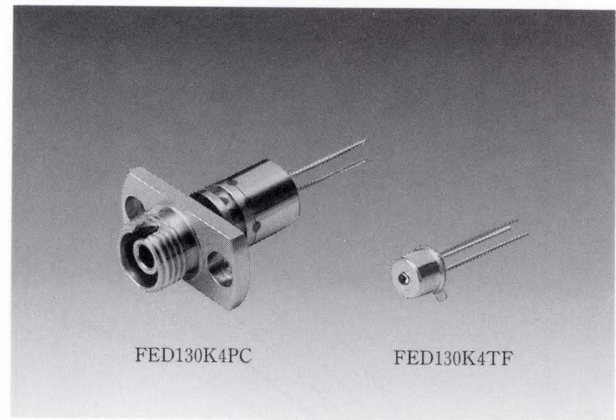
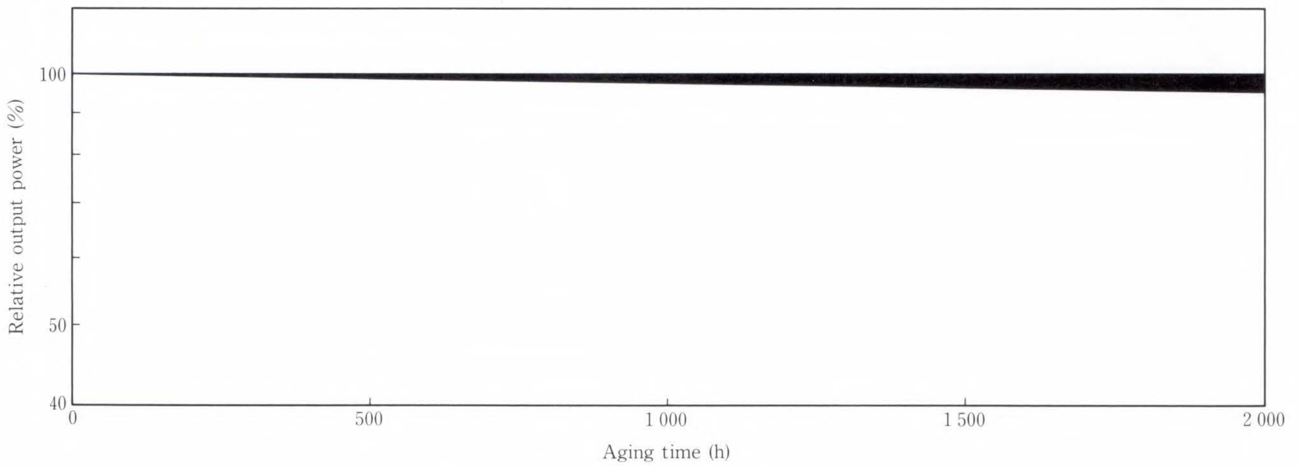
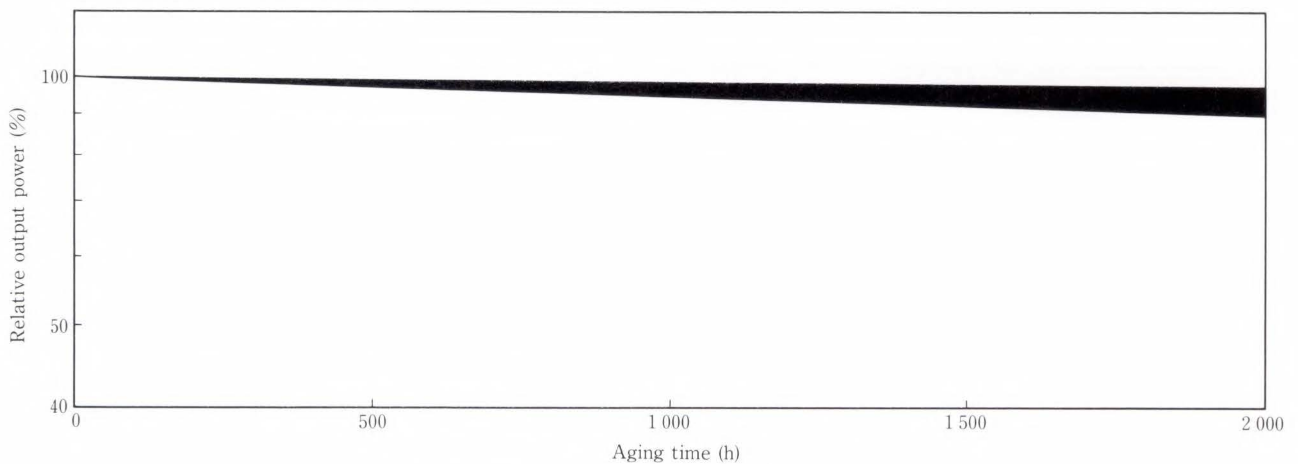


Fig. 17—High-speed LEDs.



a) I_F = 120 mA, T_a = 90 °C, n = 145



b) I_F = 120 mA, T_a = 120 °C, n = 144

Fig. 18—Relative output power as a function of aging time.

Since the system reliability is generally influenced by the reliability of the light source, the reliability of the light source must be fully estimated according to the life test. The large-scale acceleration life test was performed at ambient temperatures of 90 °C and 120 °C under a constant current of 120 mA (current density of 32 kA/cm^2). The number of samples tested were 145 and 144 pieces, respectively. As shown in Fig. 18, sudden deterioration cannot be observed up to the aging time of 2 000 h. If the end of life is defined as the point where a 2 dB drop in output power is observed, the estimated values of median life at 90 °C and 120 °C are 6.5×10^4 h and 1.4×10^4 h. Thus the activation energy is 0.69 eV, and the projected median life at 35 °C and 100 mA (duty 50 percent) is 4.8×10^6 h. Moreover, 19 FIT have been predicted for the products in several lots for a service time exceeding 15 years. This outstanding reliability is achieved by structural simplicity, which in turn yields a high reproducibility in fabrication, and confirms that this LED is suitable for applications which require very high reliability, such as I/O channels of large computers.

3. Photodiodes

The performance limitation of germanium photodiodes was broken through by using InGaAs photodiodes. Because InGaAs photodiodes have a lower dark current, lower multiplication noise, and higher optical sensitivity at 1.55 μm wavelength. As shown in Fig. 19, Fujitsu offers a full line-up of photodiode (PD) products with the addition of new InGaAs photodiodes, including PIN PDs for low operating voltage and Avalanche photodiodes (APD) for higher sensitivity. Devices with differnt photosensitive diameters and with various housings are offered for various applications. Figure 20 shows the detector housings.

3.1 InGaAs PIN PD

Several operational advantages make InGaAs PIN photodiodes the most common detectors not only for the optical receiver front end but for the optical sensing head of measuring equip-

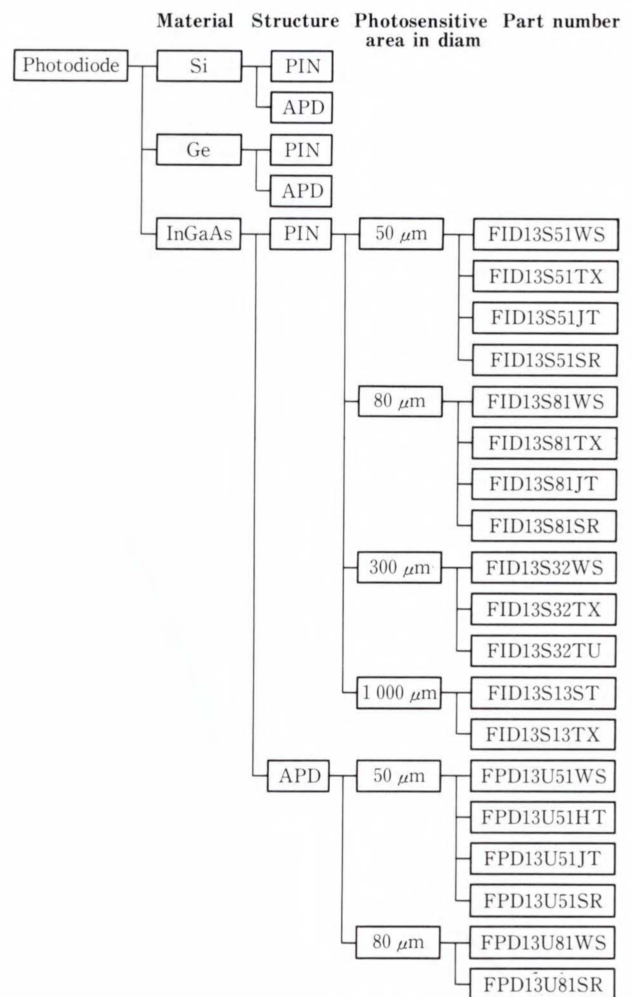


Fig. 19–Photodetector products line-up.

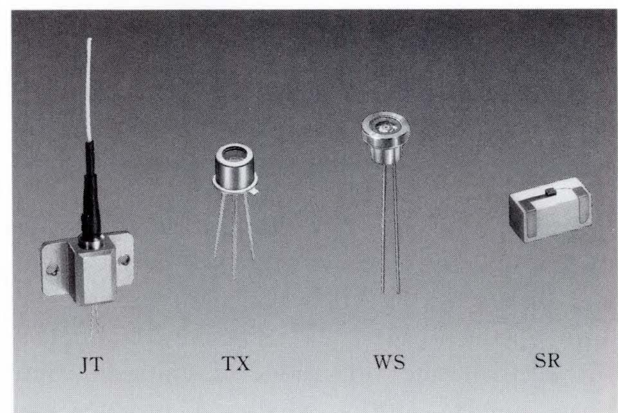


Fig. 20–Photodetector packages.
(JT: With multi-mode fiber pigtail,
TX: Modified T0-18 package, WS: Small precision package with sapphire plate window, and SR: Alumina chip carrier with low parasitic capacitance)

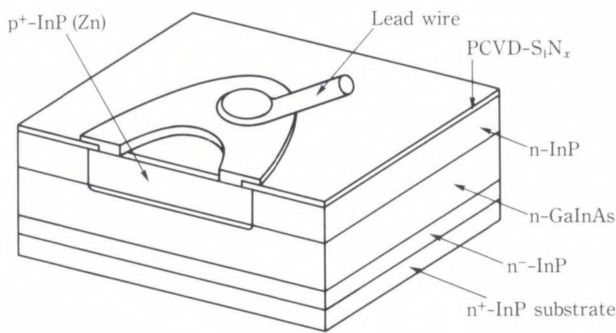


Fig. 21—Cut-away view of InGaAs PIN photodiode.

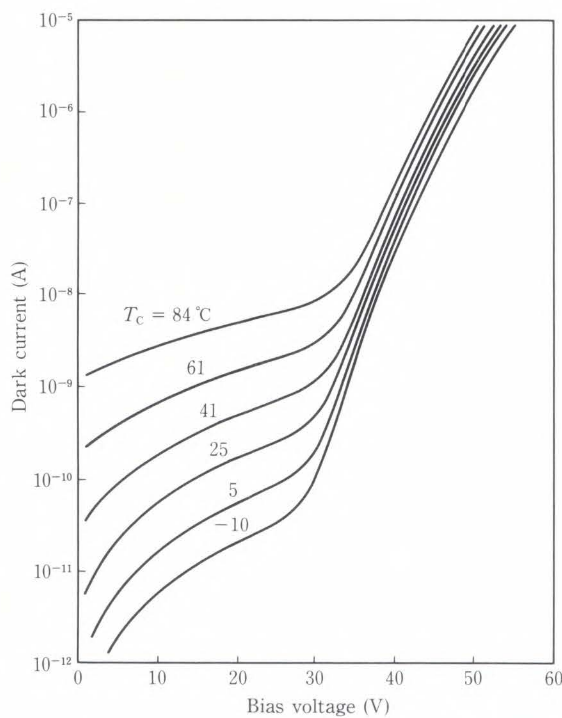


Fig. 22—Dark current characteristics of InGaAs PIN photodiode for different temperature T_c.

ment. The InGaAs PIN PD has the advantages of low operating bias voltage, low dark current, and high sensitivity at wavelength regions over 1 μm (1.0-1.6 μm)[13),14)]. The key technology for constructing this diode is chloride vapor phase epitaxy (VPE), which can produce high quality, very low carrier concentration InGaAs and InP layers[15)].

Figure 21 is a cut-away view of an InGaAs PIN photodiode. A very low carrier concentration n^--InP buffer layer ($N_D < 1 \times 10^{15}$ cm^{-3}) is grown on the n^+-InP substrate by VPE, followed by a n^--InGaAs light absorption layer (N_D = 1-2 × 10^{15} cm^{-3}, 2.0-2.5 μm thick) and an n-InP window layer. The diode has a planar structure for long term durability and electrical stability. The surface of the diode is coated with plasma-CVD silicon nitride film for passivation and antireflection.

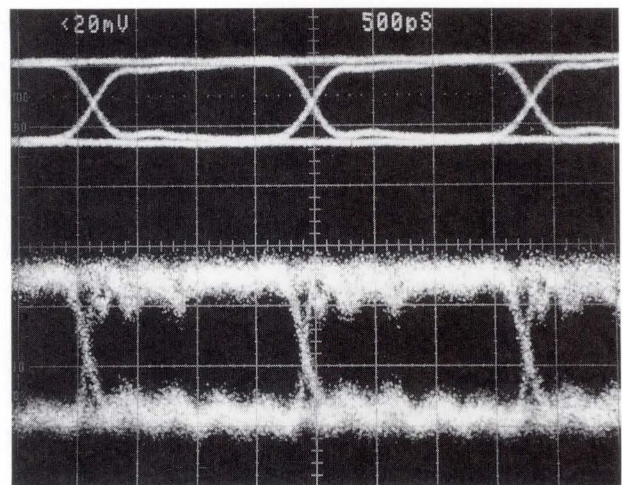


Fig. 23—Eye pattern of 50 μm diameter InGaAs PIN photodiode at 5 V and at the wavelength of 1.55 μm. The average incident optical power is −20 dBm and the signal is amplified by a broadband amplifier. The upper pattern shows driving current wave of 1.55 μm DFB-LD.

The incorporation of an InGaAs absorption layer and InP window layer provide nearly flat sensitivity within a 1 μm wavelength region up to 1.6 μm. Sensitivity of 0.8 A/W is obtained even at the 1.55 μm wavelength. The InP window layer is also useful for reducing the dark current. Figure 22 shows the best characteristics of dark current of a 50 μm photosensitive area diameter device at various temperatures from −10 °C to 84 °C. At room temperature, the measured dark current is as low as 10 pA at 5 V of the reverse bias voltage (typically 50 pA). Due to the large band gap energy of InP (1.34 eV), the surface leakage current (generation current) is effectively suppressed at the low bias voltage. The low carrier concentration of epitaxial layers achieves a low capacitance at a low operating voltage. For example, the result is 0.4 pF at 5 V operation for 50 μm photosensitive diameter devices. The diode was

Fig. 24—Median life vs. reciprocal temperature.

mounted on the 50-ohm micro strip line and its response was evaluated. The resultant eye pattern for 1.55 μm pseudo-random optical pulse at 565 Mbits is shown in Fig. 23. The response speed is limited by the CR time constant.

The reliability was investigated by conducting accelerated aging tests at 100, 150, 200, and 227 °C and 30 V of reverse bias. The result of the median life was plotted as a function of the reciprocal temperature as shown in Fig. 24. The median life expected at 25 °C can be as long as 1.8×10^8 h when the activation energy is assumed to be the worst value of 0.84 eV.

Due to this extra-long life time and the refined production control the device has been applied to TAT-8 optical fiber submarine systems[16]. The device technology has advanced to the point that the photodiodes are expected to be the major photodiodes in the coming wide-spread lightwave system market.

Fig. 25—Cross-sectional view of InGaAs avalanche photodiode.

3.2 InGaAs APD

InGaAs APDs with the InGaAs light absorption layer separated from InP multiplication layer, have been considered to be the most effective detector for the receiver front end in the long wavelength region (1.3 μm and 1.55 μm). A number of improved receiver sensitivity data from giga-bit rate optical transmission experiments using InGaAs APDs have been reported[17].

A cross-sectional view of the InGaAs APD is shown in Fig. 25[18]. The n-InP multiplication layer is completely embedded in the low carrier concentration n-InP layers to achieve a successful guard-ring effect. This type of structure is called the "buried structure". The wafer is fabricated in two steps by liquid phase epitaxy (LPE). At the first epitaxial growth, the n-InP buffer layer, n-InGaAs light absorption layer, n-InGaAsP intermediate layer, and n/n^--InP layers are grown on a (111)A faced InP substrate. After selective mesa etching of the top n-InP layer, the second growth is made and the mesa is covered with a low carrier concentration n^--InP layer. The active pn junction and the guard-ring are formed by thermal diffusion of Cd and ion-implantation of Be, respectively[19].

Figure 26 shows the photocurrent multiplication characteristics at 1.55 μm. The separated absorption and multiplication layer configuration results in unique multiplication characteristics. Onset of photoresponse is observed around

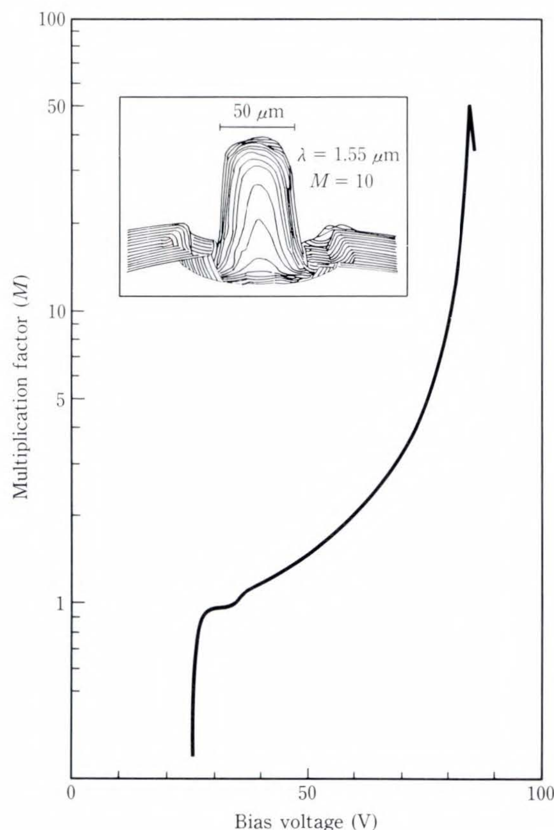


Fig. 26—Photocurrent multiplication characteristics and spatial distribution of multiplication of InGaAs APD.

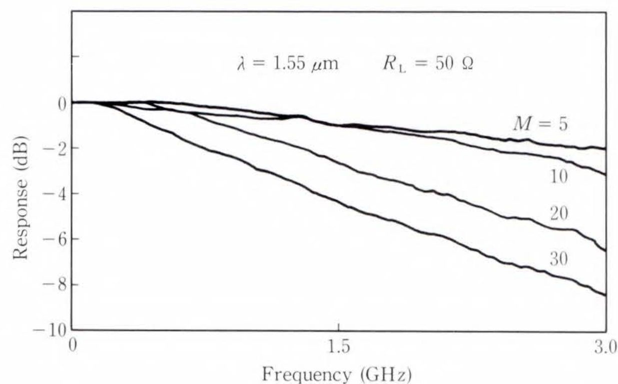


Fig. 27—Frequency response of InGaAs APD at $M = 5$, 10, 20, and 30 on wavelength of 1.55 μm, diode sesitive area is 50 μm.

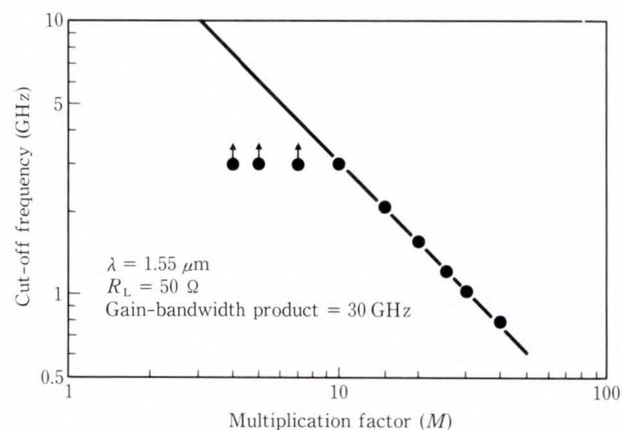


Fig. 28-Multiplication factor vs. cut-off frequency.

30 V of reverse bias. At this bias, the depletion layer reaches the n-InGaAs absorption layer and photogenerated carriers (hole) are injected into the multiplication layer. As the bias voltage is increased, the multiplication factor increases and the maximum attainable multiplication of 50 is achieved at primary photocurrent of 2 μA. A quantum efficiency of more than 80 percent at 1.55 μm is obtained. The inset of Fig. 26 shows a two dimensional spot scanned photoresponse at multiplication factor $M = 10$. One advantage of a burried structure[20] is a uniformity of multiplication distribution in the photosensitive area.

A thin InGaAs intermediate band gap layer is inserted between the InP and InGaAs layers to buffer the large valence band discontinuity. This is the main design to achieve a wide band width by eliminating the hole pile-up effect at the hetero-interface.

The small signal frequency response of 50 μm photosensitive area diode at various multiplication factors is shown in Fig. 27. The load resistance was 50 ohms and the light wavelength was 1.55 μm. In Fig. 28, the cut-off frequency is plotted as a function of the multiplication factor. Even at a low multiplication region ($M = 5$), the cut-off frequency exceeds 3 GHz. Above $M = 10$, the cut-off frequency is limited by the avalanche built-up time. The linear extrapolation to unity multiplication gives a gain-bandwidth product of 30 GHz. These feasible frequency responses as well as a high quantum efficiency at 1.55 μm are characteristic of InGaAs APDs. Low multiplication noise is another characteristic advantage of the InGaAs APD because of the comparative

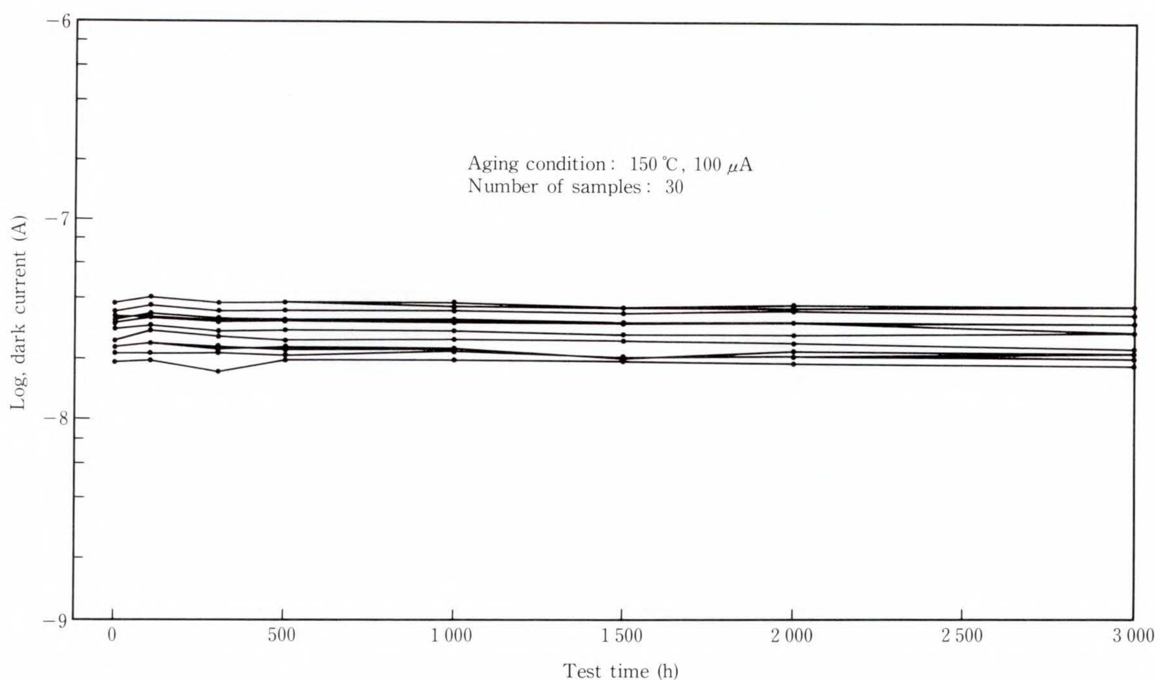


Fig. 29—Results of aging test.

large hole to electron ionization coefficients ratio of InP. The excess noise factor is about 5 at $M = 10$, which is about a 3 dB improvement of noise power compared with a conventional Ge APD.

Figure 29 shows the accelerated aging test results at 150 °C. The diodes were operated under the breakdown condition at 100 μA of reverse current. The dark current at 90 percent of the breakdown voltage, which is the most sensitive parameter for aging, maintains a constant value for 30 samples after 3 000 h of aging.

InGaAs APDs are recognized as a promising candidate for the detector of multi-giga bit lightwave systems. Work is being continued to improve the response characteristics[21),22)].

4. Conclusion

Due to the expansion of optical fiber communication systems, demands for optical devices have been increasing rapidly.

Fujitsu has been developing many products to meet these demands. The products include DFB LDs and InGaAs APDs for high-speed, long-haul systems and LEDs for optical LAN systems.

These devices offer not only good electrical and optical characteristics but also high reliability.

References

1) Dixon, R.W., and Dutta, N.K.: Lightwave Device Technology. *AT & T Tech. J.*, **66**, 1, pp. 73-83 (1986).

2) Ishikawa, H., Hanamitsu, K., Takagi, N., and Takusagawa, M.: Separated Multiclad-layer Stripe-geometry GaAlAs DH Laser. *IEEE J. Quantum Electron.*, **QE-17**, pp. 1226-1234 (1981).

3) Shima, K., Hanamitsu, K., and Takusagawa, M.: Buried Convex Waveguide Structure (GaAl)As Injection Lasers. *IEEE J. Quantum Electron.*, **QE-18**, pp. 1688-1695 (1982).

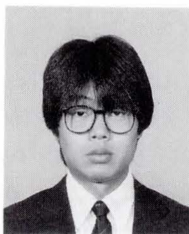
4) Yamaoka, T., Abe, M., and Hasegawa, O.: GaAlAs LED's for Fiber-optical Communication Systems. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **14**, 1, p. 133 (1978).

5) Kaneda, T.: Silicon and Germanium Avalanche Photodiodes. Semiconductors and Semimetals, 22 Part D, Chaper 3, pp. 247-328 (1985).

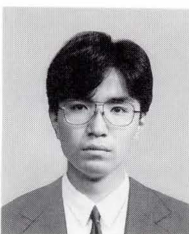
6) Payne, D.N., and Gambling, W.A.: New Silica-based Low Loss Optical Fiber. *Electron. Lett.*, **10**, pp. 289-290 (1974).

7) Miya, T., Kawana, A., Terunuma, Y., and Hosaka, T.: Fabrication of Single-mode Fibers for 1.5 μm Wavelength Region. *Trans. IECE, Jpn.*, **E63**, pp. 514-420 (1980).
8) Ishikawa, H., Imai, H., Tanahashi, T., Hori, K., and Takahei, K.: V-Grooved Substrate Buried Heterostructure InGaAsP/InP Laser Emitting at 1.3 μm Wavelength. *IEEE J. Quantum Electron.*, **QE-18**, pp. 1704-1711 (1982).
9) Ishikawa, H., Yamakoshi, S., and Isozumi, S.: Distributed Feedback Laser Emitting at 1.3 μm for High-Bit-Rate Systems. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **22**, 5, pp. 451-460 (1986).
10) Watanabe, H., Yonetani, H., Ushijima, I., Nakai, S., Morimoto, M., and Shima, K.: Reliability of 1.3 μm and 1.55 μm FBH-DFB LD Including SLM Operation. Extended Abstracts of 35th. Spring Meet., Jpn. Soc. Appl. Phys., Tokyo, March, 30p-ZP-7, 8 (1988).
11) Wada, O., Yamakoshi, S. Abe, M., Nishitani, Y., and Sakurai, T.: High Radiance InGaAs/InP Lensed LEDs for Optical Communication Systems at 1.2-1.3 μm. *IEEE J. Quantum Electron.*, **QE-17**, pp. 174-178 (1981).
12) Hasegawa, O., Namazu, R., Abe, M., and Toyama, Y.: Coupling of Spherical-surfaced LED and Spherical-ended Fiber. *J. Appl. Phys.*, **51**, pp. 30-36 (1980).
13) Mikawa, T., Kagawa, S., and Kaneda, T.: InP/InGaAs PIN Photodiodes in the 1 μm Wavelength Region. *FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J.*, **20**, 2, pp. 201-218 (1984).
14) Kagawa, S., Komeno, J., Ozeki, M., and Kaneda, T.: "Planar $Ga_{0.47}Ga_{0.53}As$ PIN Photodiodes with Extremely Low Dark Current". OFC'85, San Diego, Tech. Digest, 1985, p. 92.
15) Komeno, J., Takikawa, M., and Ozeki, M.: TDEG in $In_{0.53}Ga_{0.47}As$-InP Heterojunction Grown by Chloride VPE. *Electron. Lett.*, **19**, p. 473 (1983).
16) Rowbotham, T.R.: Submarine Telecommunication. *Br. Telecom. Tech.*, **5**, 1, pp. 5-24 (1987).
17) Touge, T., Nagami, T., Miyauchi, A., Chikama, T., Goto, M., and Takanashi, H.: System Evaluation of Optical Devices in 1.5 μm Wavelength Region for High-bit-rate Trunk Line Applications. Globe Com., 3, 34-3, pp. 1148-1151 (1984).
18) Kobayashi, M., Machida, H., Shirai, T., Kishi, Y., Takagi, N., and Kaneda, T.: Optimized GaInAs Avalanche Photodiode with Low Noise and Large Gain-bandwidth Product. OFC/IOOC'87, Reno, Tech. Digest, 1987, p. 36.
19) Shirai, T., Yamazaki, S., Kawata, H., Nakajima, K., and Kaneda, T.: A Planar InP/InGaAsP Heterostructure Avalanche Photodiode. *IEEE Trans. Electron Devices*, **ED-29**, p. 1404 (1982).
20) Kobayashi, M., Yamazaki, S., and Kaneda, T.: A Planar InP/InGaAsP/InGaAs Buried Structure Avalanche Photodiode. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **45**, p.759 (1984).
21) Shirai, T., Kobayashi, M., Kishi, Y., Machida, H., Nishi, H., and Kaneda, T.: "A New InP/GaInAs Reach-through Avalanche Photodiode". 13th, ECOC, Helsinki, Tech. Digest, 1987, p. 55.
22) Machida, H., Kobayashi, M., Shirai, T., Kishi, Y., and Kaneda, T.: "Reach-through Avalanche Photodiode for Gigabit-rate Systems". OFC'88, New Orleans, Tech. Digest, 1988, p. 13.

Haruo Yonetani
Optoelectronic Device Engineering Dept.
Compound Semiconductor Device Div.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1984
Master of electronic Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1986
Specializing in Semiconductor Laser Technology



Akira Fukushima
Optoelectronic Device Engineering Dept.
Compound Semiconductor Device Div.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
Keio University 1983
Master of Electrical Eng.
Keio University 1985
Specializing in Semiconductor Laser and LED Technology



Keiji Satoh
Optoelectronic Device Engineering Dept.
Compound Semiconductor Device Div.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Physics Eng.
Tokyo Science University 1986
Specializing in Photodetector Technology

UDC 621.382.3:621.396.6.029.6

Microwave Semiconductor Devices

● Kiyofumi Ohta ● Kenji Yano ● Yutaka Hirano

(Manuscript received October 4, 1988)

This report describes the state-of-the-art Fujitsu microwave semiconductors. The important parameters of GaAs power FETs are efficiency, linearity and reliability. The design philosophy for these parameters and performance are discussed. Low noise performance of HEMTs has been demonstrated and a new 1/4 μm gate HEMT has been developed having a 0.58 dB noise figure and 12.35 dB of associated gain at 12 GHz. MMICs have high potential for wide band, small size, and lightweight equipment. GaAs FET modules and amplifiers are also described as examples of actual applications.

1. Introduction

Microwaves are used in telecommunication, radar, and in other systems. In telecommunication applications, coaxial cable systems and optical fiber systems are widely used as well as microwave radio. People involved with these systems are concerned about the cost per unit of data transferred over a specified distance. Optical communication systems are improving in terms of data transmission cost.

However, microwave systems still have many advantages in several applications. Satellite and mobile communication are good examples. Satellite communication systems including broadcasting delivers information to many terminals located over a wide area at the same time. Radio frequency can only be used in portable terminals, but radar and other electronic warfare equipment are designed to fully utilize microwaves.

High bit rate digital radio systems like the 256 QAM can compete with optical systems in many cases. It has long been desired to replace microwave electron tubes with solid state devices because of the high speed and controllability of solid state devices. The GaAs power FET, first reported in 1973[1], has enabled realization of an amplifier to replace the Travelling Wave Tube Amplifier (TWTA). Low noise HEMTs with excellent performance are now being made. These HEMTs will help in system design.

Solid state equipment of small size and weight will become more and more important in the future. Microwave Monolithic Integrated Circuits (MMICs) will make an impact in this area.

Although much equipment still needs electron tubes, microwave semiconductors are surpassing their performance and will replace them in the future. Furthermore, new applications will be realized using such devices.

In this paper, the design, fabrication technology and performance of GaAs power FETs, low noise HEMTs, and MMICs are described. Modules and amplifiers are shown as examples of their applications.

2. GaAs power FETs

2.1 GaAs FET design

Galium Arsenide (GaAs) is a very good material for microwave devices because it has a high electron mobility and can easily be used to make a high-resistance layer or substrate. A field effect transistor using this material was first proposed in 1966[2].

Figure 1 shows the structure of a GaAs FET and its small signal equivalent circuits.

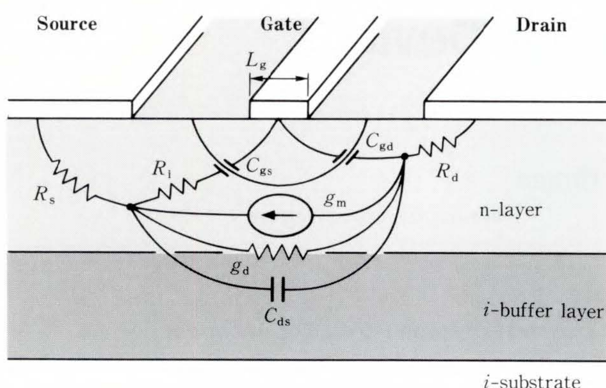


Fig. 1—Structure of GaAs FET and its small signal equivalent circuits.

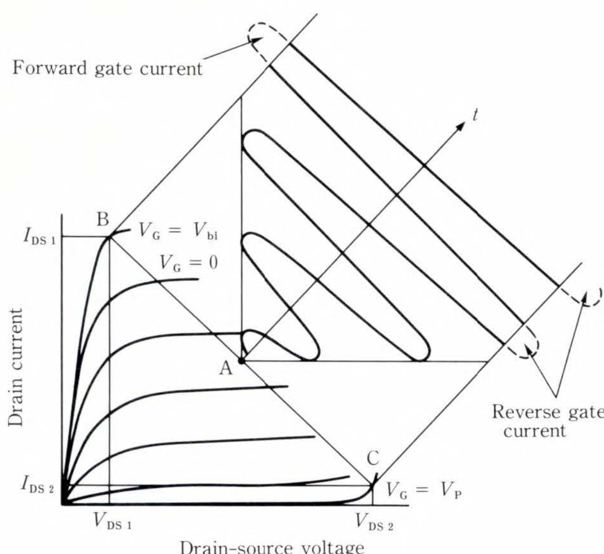


Fig. 2—DC characteristics and large signal operation of a GaAs FET.

To obtain high gain at microwave frequencies, a short gate length is required. For a low-noise small-signal FET, the gate length is the only major parameter. On the other hand, many things must be taken into consideration for a power FET.

Figure 2 shows the DC characteristics and large signal operation of a power FET. In Fig. 2, A is the bias point and the optimum load line (B-C) is obtained for the maximum output power. When the input signal increases, the output signal swing reaches the regions of high current at low voltage (B) and low current at high voltage (C) of the load line.

After reaching B and C, the forward and reverse gate current start to flow and the drain current and voltage clipped. The maximum linear output power, $P_{l\max}$, is given by the following equation.

$$P_{l\max} = 1/8(I_{DS1} - I_{DS2}) \times (V_{DS2} - V_{DS1}).$$

The maximum saturated power, P_{sat}, is derived by Fourier expansion of the distorted waveform (finally a rectangular form), and is calculated to be 2 dB higher than $P_{l\max}$. The maximum channel current (I_{DS1}), knee voltage (V_{DS1}), break down voltage (V_{DS2}), and leakage current (I_{DS2}), depend on the carrier density and the thickness and structure of the channel layer.

Generally, leakage current (I_{DS2}) and knee voltage (V_{DS1}) conflict with each other and must be optimized. Fujitsu power GaAs FETs use a recessed gate structure which is optimized for high drain-source breakdown voltage and high gate-drain breakdown voltage. This optimization enables high voltage (10 V) operation[3].

To obtain high output power, we must increase V_{DS1}. However, the channel strucrure is optimized for V_{DS1} and I_{DS2} as discussed above, and I_{DS1} per gate width is set to 300 mA/mm. Therefore, the gate width must be made wider to increase I_{DS1}.

A GaAs FET has three terminals on one surface as shown in Fig. 1. In order to make a wider gate, a cross over structure is required. Fujitsu has used an interdigitated pattern which includes an insulator or air gap cross over. In this pattern, the unit gate width (= finger) length) and gate-gate separation are optimized. The unit gate width depends on the operational frequency. For example, the gate width is 50 μm for devices designed for Ku-band operation and 240 μm for L- or S-band operation.

For high power GaAs FETs, thermal design is also important. This is because the reliability of GaAs FETs is primarily depends on the channel temperature. This is the same for other semiconductor devices. The thermal conductivity of GaAs is 0.46 W/m/°C and is one third that of silicon.

The thermal resistance of a GaAs FET having an interdigitated pattern is expressed by the following formula.

$$R_{th} = \frac{10^4}{2 \times 046} \times \left\{ \frac{1}{n(l-a)} \log e \frac{b}{a(b-a+l)} + \frac{1}{(n-1)b+a-l} \log e \frac{nb(2t+l)}{2t+a+(n-1)b\ (b-a+l)} \right\},$$

where a : gate length (μm)
b : gate-gate-gate separation (μm)
l : unit gate width (μm)
n: number of gate fingers
t : thickness of GaAs (μm).

It is obvious that the thermal resistance can be significantly reduced by reducing the thickness of the GaAs substrate. Of next importance is the gate-gate separation. Fujitsu GaAs power FETs used a "Plated heat sink" structure in which the GaAs substrate is lapped and etched to a 25 μm thickness and a thick (35 μm) gold heat sink is formed. The total thermal resistance includes that of the FET chip itself and it's package. Since a GaAs FET chip has an insulated substrate, the FET chip can be mounted directly on the copper heat sink of the package.

This is much easier than for a silicon bipolar power transistor as it has a collector substrate and must be mounted on an insulated substrate such as beryllium oxide (BeO). The other advantage of a GaAs FET's thermal properties is that the thermal coefficient of the drain current is negative as in other field effect transistors. Therefore, thermal run away is suppressed.

2.2 Fabrication technology

To realize a device based on the design mentioned above, the following wafer process technology is used.

First, a high resistive buffer layer and n-type active layer are grown sequentially on a Cr doped semi-insulating GaAs substrate by vapor-phase epitaxy. After mesa formation, source and drain ohmic contacts are made using alloyed Au/Ge or Au/Ge/Ni.

Next, a recessed channel is formed between

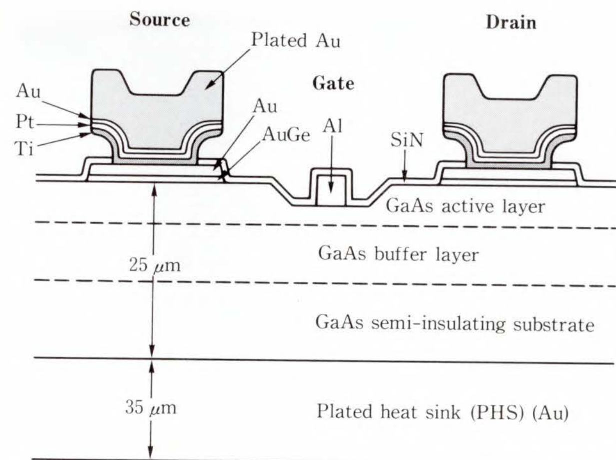


Fig. 3—Structure of Fujitsu GaAs power FET.

the source and drain electrodes and an aluminum gate is evaporated on the recessed channel. In Ku- and Ka-band devices having a very short gate length (about 0.25 μm), a mushroom shaped multi-metal layer (WSi/Ti/Au) structure is applied to reduce gate resistance and prevent the metal voiding discovered in long term life tests of aluminum gate FETs[4]. These processes use an electron beam exposure technology. A silicon nitride passivation film is applied on the channel region and electrodes. A multi-layer of Ti/Pt/Au is then formed for source and drain electrodes which require low current density and bonding pads.

After finishing the top surface and probing of each chip, the GaAs substrate is lapped and chemically etched to obtain a 25 μm thickness. Source contact is made on the back side of the wafer via through holes, and a heat sink of plated gold is formed. The structure of the Fujitsu GaAs power FET is shown in Fig. 3. Chip separation is performed by chemical etching. The individual chips are 100 percent visually inspected and are mounted in a package.

High power FETs that deliver more than three watts have internal matching circuits in the package. These circuits make them easy to use and yield a high gain, high power and broad bandwidth. Figure 4 shows the internal view of a 6 GHz 18-watt device (FLM5964-14D).

This device uses two chips in parallel and the total gate width is 57.6 mm. The drain and gate

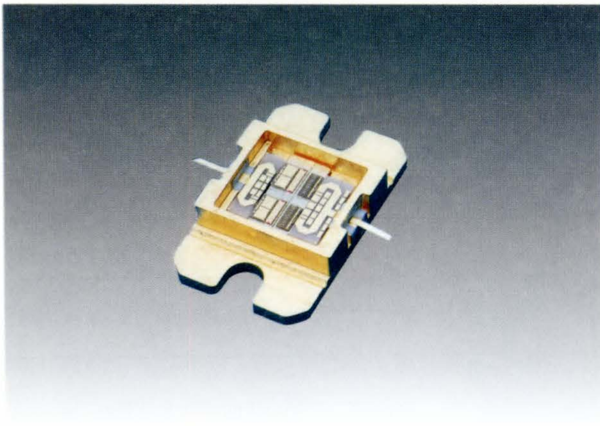


Fig. 4—Internal view of FLM5964-14D.

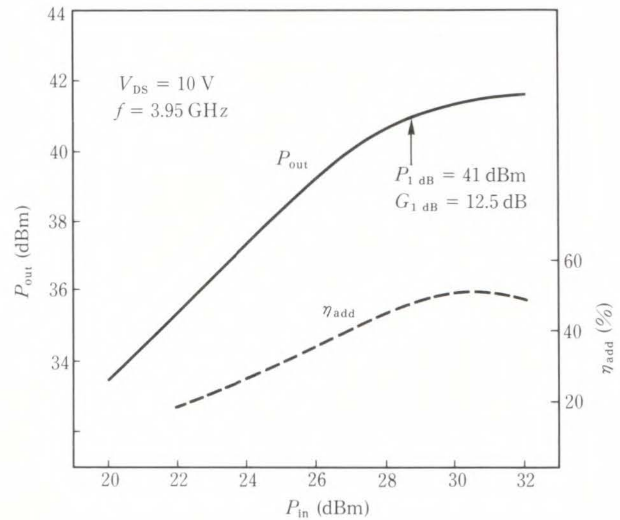


Fig. 5—P_{in} vs. P_{out} and power added efficiency of FLM3742-10.

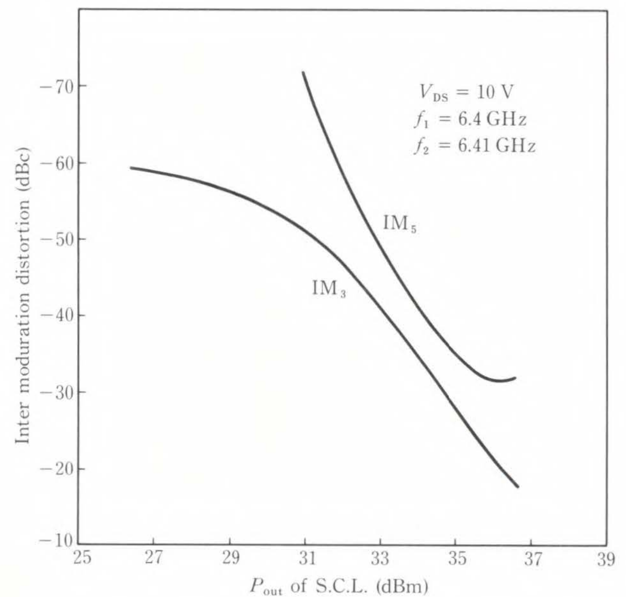


Fig. 6—IM_3 and IM_5 of FLM5964-14D.

patterns of the two chips are connected together to prevent low frequency oscillation. The package used is designed for stable operation at high frequencies. It has RF feedthroughs made using alumina ceramics in a metal wall.

The matching circuits consist of several materials selected for optimum power output, gain, and bandwidth.

2.3 Performance of GaAs power FETs

Of the many parameters of a GaAs power FET, efficiency is considered to be the most important one.

When GaAs power FETs are used in a satellite transponder, DC power is limited by the solar cell system. A high efficiency also helps maintain a low device channel temperature and so prolongs the device life time.

Figure 5 shows the output power P_{out} and power added efficiency η_{add} of the FLM3742-10 as a function of the input power P_{in}. A power added efficiency of over 50 percent is obtained.

For terrestrial communication, a high transmission capacity is required to reduce costs. A 64 QAM digital radio system has been developed in many companies to compete with optical fiber transmission systems. A high capacity 256 QAM system is currently being investigated for the next generation system.

In this application, intermodulation distortion is the critical parameter to obtain a low bit error rate. Figure 6 shows the third and fifth order intermodulation distortion (IM_3 and IM_5) of the FLM5964-14D. An IM_3 of −45 dBc and an IM_5 of −70 dBc were obtained at P_{out} = 31.5 dBm for a single carrier level using a two tone test.

The other application of GaAs power FETs is for pulse operation such as in a radar system. A GaAs FET amplifier can operate with very fast pulse switching. Figure 7 shows the pulse

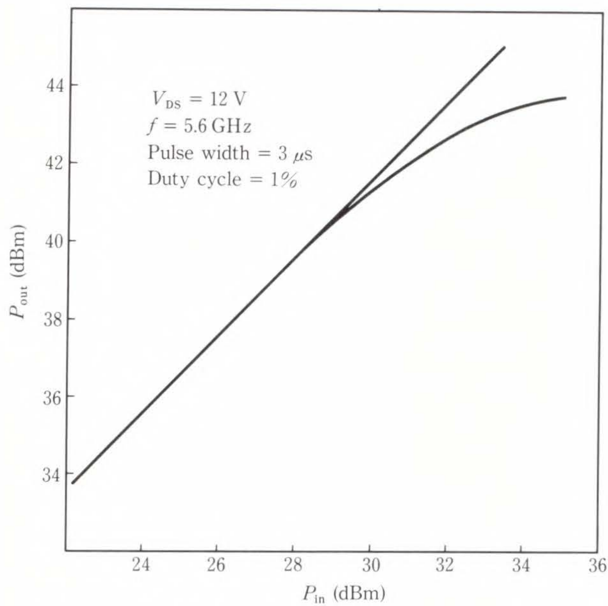


Fig. 7–Pulse power performance of FLM5359-20P.

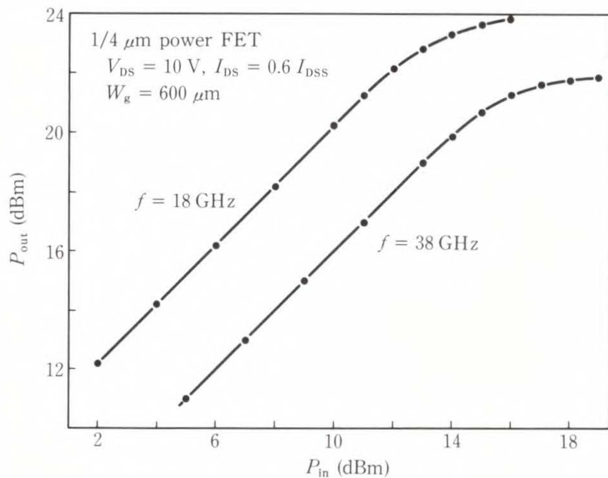


Fig. 8–Output power of a 0.25 μm power FET.

performance of the FLM5359-20P. Its power and gain are much improved compared to CW operation. This improvement results from the lower channel temperature of pulse operation. A device for higher frequency application was also developed. The output power at 18 GHz and 38 GHz are shown in Fig. 8. The FET has a WSi/Ti/Au gate with dimensions of 0.25 μm x 600 μm.

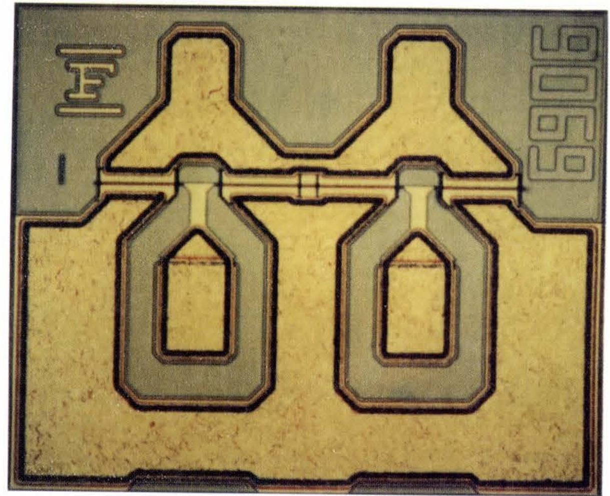


Fig. 9–Top view of 0.25 μm gate HEMT.

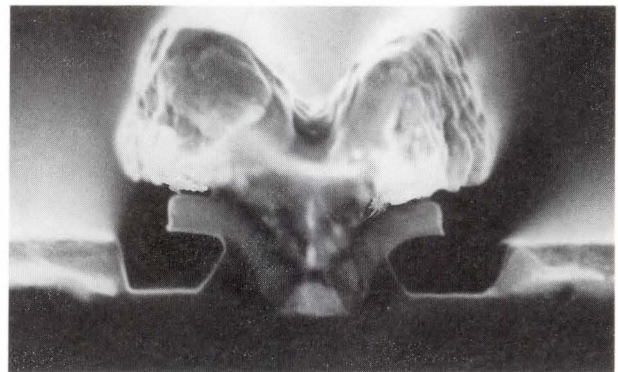


Fig. 10–Cross sectional view of 0.25 μm gate HEMT.

3. Low noise HEMTs

3.1 HEMT design and fabrication technology

A low noise performance HEMT was first reported in 1983[5]. Since then, there have been many important technical improvements in the quality and structure of molecular-beam-epitaxial growth (MBE)[6] and in the precise control of the process[7]. Based on these improvements, a new low-noise HEMT was developed in 1988 using an optimized MBE wafer and a quarter micron mushroom gate structure.

Figure 9 shows the top view and Fig. 10 shows the cross-sectional view of the newly developed 200 μm gate width HEMT. The quality of the Two Dimensional Electron Gas (2-DEG) in the intrinsic GaAs side at the inter-

face of the n^+ doped GaAlAs/*i*-GaAs is one of the key parameters for low noise performance. Using this improved MBE technology, we fabricated an n^+ AlGaAs layer having a controlled doping level and thickness and a pure intrinsic-GaAs layer having a sharp transition at the interface.

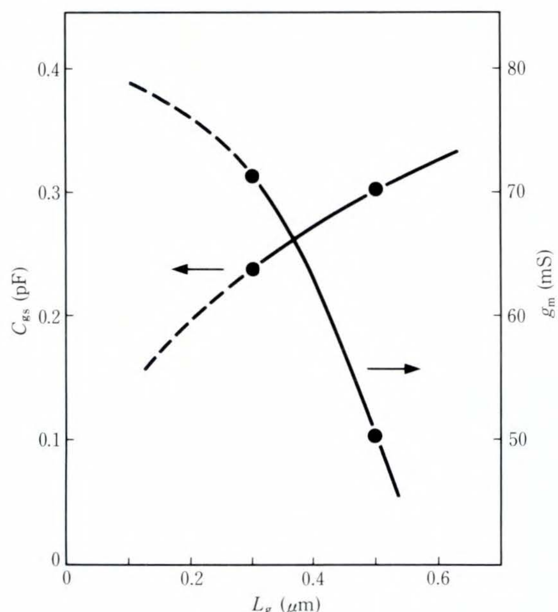


Fig. 11—Effects of gate length on C_{gs} and g_m.

These layers were also optimized to reduce the short channel effect. (This becomes serious as the gate length is reduced.) A quarter micron gate provides a lower gate-capacitance (C_{gs}) and high transconductance (g_m); these are the two most important device parameters for a low noise device. The quarter micron gate is fabricated using electron beam lithography (EBL) and has good reproducibility. A mushroom shaped gate was fabricated using a double layer of Au and WSi. The WSi forms the Schottky interface and the Au reduces the gate resistance (R_g) as shown in Fig. 10. The effects of gate length on C_{gs} and g_m are shown in Fig. 11. The effects of C_{gs} and g_m on the noise figure and associated gain are shown in Fig. 12.

3.2 Performance of low noise HEMTs

Figure 13 shows the minimum noise figure (F_{min}) and associated gain (G_{as}) vs. drain current (I_{DS}) at 12 GHz of a quarter micron HEMT compared to those of a half micron HEMT.

Figure 14 shows F_{min} and G_{as} vs. frequency (f) at I_{DS} = 10 mA, and V_{DS} = 2 V of a quarter micron HEMT. The optimized F_{min} was 0.58 dB at 12 GHz and 1.0 dB at 20 GHz. The associated

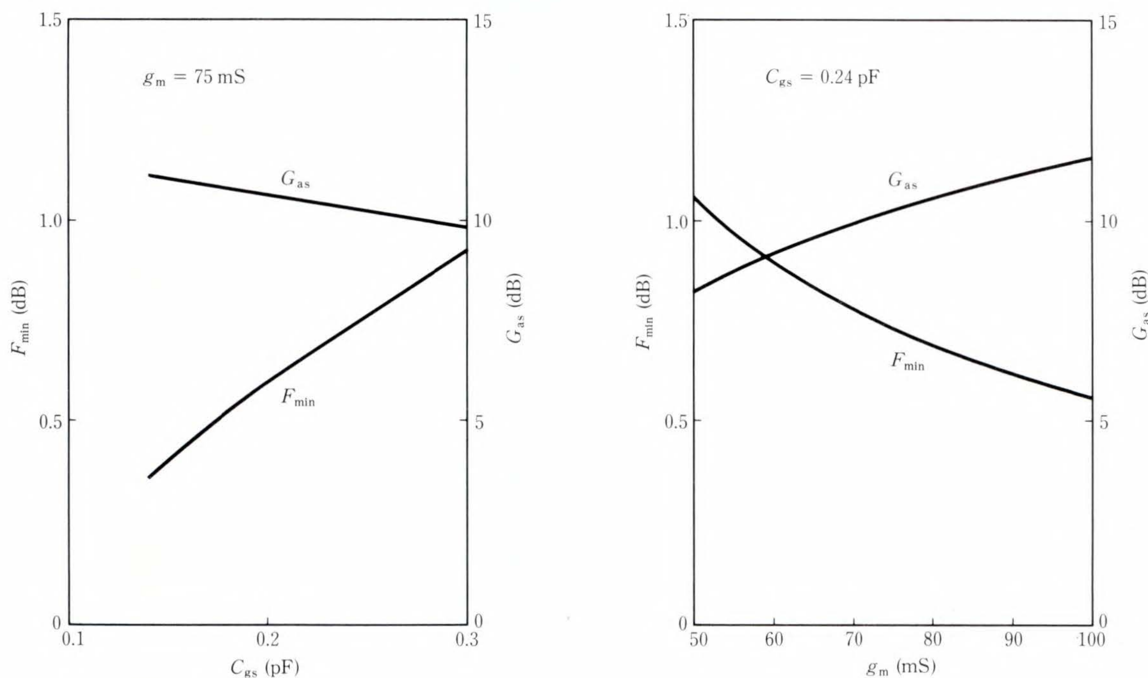


Fig. 12—Effects of g_m and C_{gs} on noise figure and associated gain.

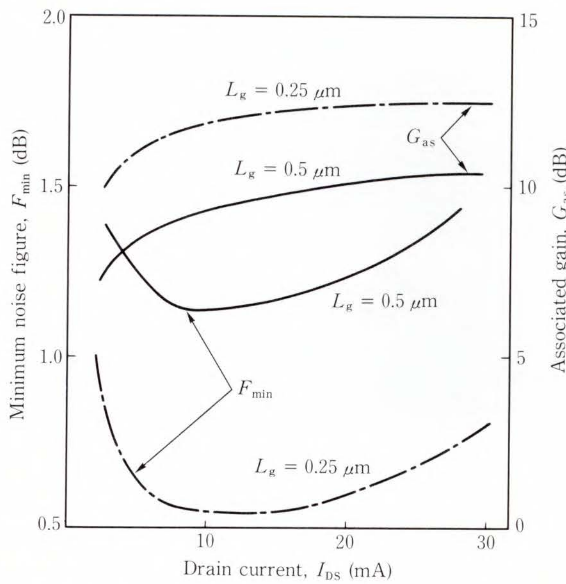


Fig. 13—Noise firgure and associated gain vs. drain current.

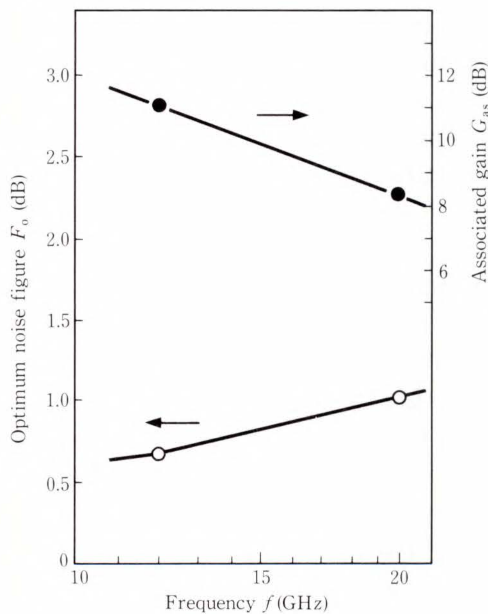


Fig. 14—F_o and G_{as} vs. frequency.

G_{as} is 12.35 dB at 12 GHz and 9.0 dB at 20 GHz. Remarkable improvements in C_{gs} and g_m were confirmed for a quarter micron gate HEMT while R_g was kept low as a result of the equivalent circuit analysis.

No remarkable short channel effect was observed in the DC characteristics of the quarter micron HEMT due to the epitaxial layer optimized by MBE.

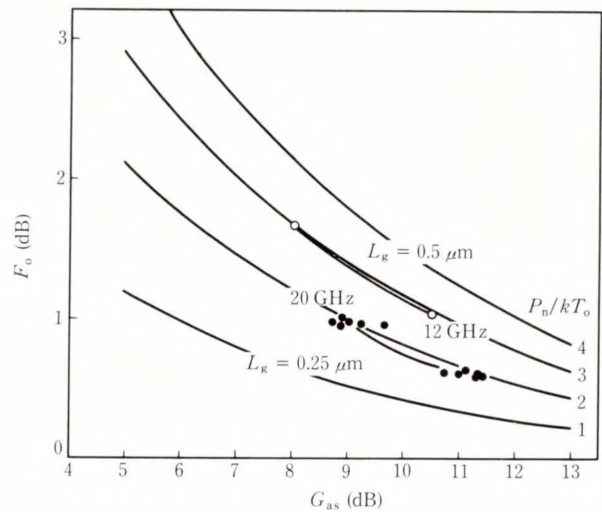


Fig. 15—G_{as} vs. F_o for quarter micron and half micron HEMT.

One method of analyzing the noise characteristics is to consider the noise power (P_n) generated in the device[8]. Figure 15 shows G_{as} vs. F_{min} of a quarter micron and half micron HEMT at various values of P_n and frequency.

Since the extrinsic regions are almost the same for a half micron and quarter micron HEMT, the difference in P_n between the two is clearly due to the intrinsic regions. In conclusion, reducing the gate length of a HEMT results in an improvement in the noise figure and associated gain.

Further improvement can be expected from a shorter gate device (e.g. 0.1 μm gate width) together with precise control of the wafer process and an optimized epitaxial layer.

4. GaAs MMICs

4.1 Basic concept

Microwave Monolithic Integrated Circuits (MMICs) are now in demand for microwave communication systems and electronic warfare (E/W). The process technology, electrical characteristics, and uniformity of GaAs FETs have greatly improved, and MMICs are now feasible.

In MMICs, several different components (such as FETs, resistors, capacitors and induc-

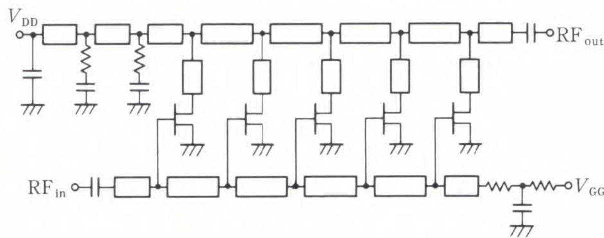


Fig. 16—Schematic circuit diagram of FMM021806XV.

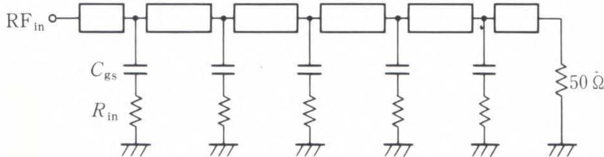


Fig. 17—Input circuit of FMM021806XV.

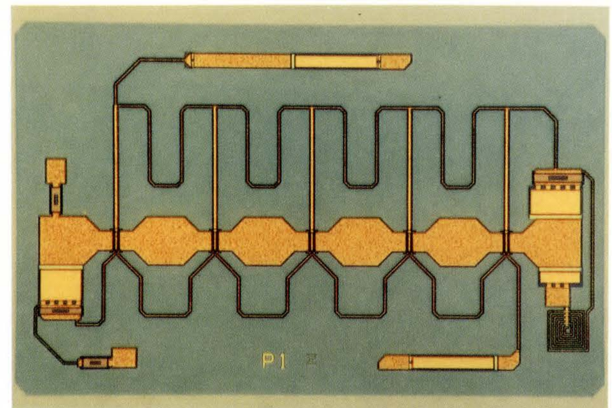


Fig. 18—Top view of FMM021806XV (chip size: 15 x 2.5 mm).

tors) are fabricated on one chip. The use of a GaAs substrate has many advantages compared to a Si substrate because of its high bulk resistivity and high electron mobility. This results in less transmission loss, less leakage current and a higher cut-off frequency than conventional FETs.

GaAs MMICs have the following advantages over hybrid ICs:

1) Reduction of system size and weight
2) Improvement of broadband performance
3) Improvement of high-frequency performance
4) Enhanced inherent reliability
5) Uniform electrical characteristics.

Several types of MMICs have already been developed at Fujitsu including wide-band distributed amplifier chips, 14 GHz and 20 GHz gain block amplifiers and prescalers. This report introduces the FMM021806XV distributed amplifier developed for wide-band operation from 2 GHz to 18 GHz. The distributed amplifier (travelling wave amplifier) is used as a wide-band MMIC for the following reasons:

1) Ultra wide-band characteristics
2) Less critical in scattering of parameters
3) Easy to monolithically fabricate on GaAs substrate.

Article 2) is especially superior to other types of amplifiers such as reflection or feedback type amplifiers.

4.2 Circuit design

Figure 16 shows the schematic circuit diagram of the FMM021806XV chip. The input circuit forms a low-pass filter as shown in Fig. 17. The cut-off frequency mainly depends on the length of the transmission line and gate-to-source capacitance C_{gs} of the unit FET. If the cut-off frequency is set sufficiently high and the characteristic impedance is set to 50 ohms, the return loss of the input port is very low over a wide frequency range. A similar situation exists for the output port.

This is the essential point of the distributed amplifier. When designing a distributed amplifier, the key points are as follows:

1) Unit FET size, which determines C_{gs}
2) The number of FET linkages, which is determined by the target gain and gain flatness
3) Phase matching of FET operation
4) Cut-off frequency of the FET and in/out signal lines
5) Circuit structure of termination including the biasing circuit.

These points are optimized by using microwave circuit simulation software. The equivalent circuit of a unit FET is determined by the S-parameter for up to 26.5 GHz. The terminating circuit and in/out transmission circuit are optimized separately. Then, the total circuit is

optimized. Pattern layout is optimized so that the elements do not interfere with each other. In and out ports of the RF signal are placed at opposite sides of the longer line for cascadeability. Figure 18 shows the top view of the chip.

4.3 Fabrication technique

1) FET

The important requirements for MMIC fabrication are the uniformity and reliability of the elements. The active region of the FET is formed by selective ion-implantation for uniformity.

Dispersion of the saturated drain current is about 10 percent or less. The Shottky gate metal is refractory WSi covered by Ti/Au to achieve high reliability. The built-in potential is 0.70 V ± 0.02 V and the ideal factor is 1.10 to 1.20. Figure 19 shows the FET channel structure. Offset n^+ implantation techniques are used to reduce the source resistance and to increase output resistance. The source electrode is grounded by a through hole to reduce source inductance and to increase the degree of freedom for pattern layout.

2) Resistor

A resistor is formed using the n^+ implantation region. The sheet resistance is 200-210 Ω/□. Dispersion of the sheet resistance in a wafer is less than one percent.

3) Capacitor

The capacitor has a Metal-Insulator-Metal (MIM) structure. The insulator is amorphous SiN and its thickness is set to 150 nm.

4) Other elements

The transmission line is fabricated using multi-layer metallization on a GaAs substrate. The air bridge technique is used to connect overlay metals.

4.4 Electrical characteristic

Figure 20 shows the return loss and gain of the FMM021806XV. In/out return loss of less than −10 dB is achieved over the entire frequency band from 2 GHz to 18 GHz. This means that the FMM021806XV can be cascaded directly. The small-signal gain of two-stage cascaded FMM021806XV chips was measured to be 9 dB. This is twice the gain of a single chip. A gain flatness of less than 1 dB was obtained. Figure 21 shows the power output and noise figure. A P_{1dB} of 20 dBm was achieved

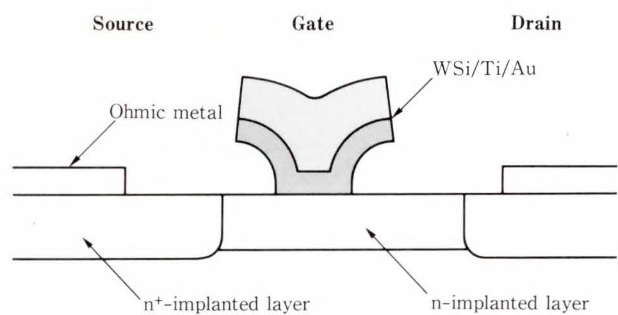
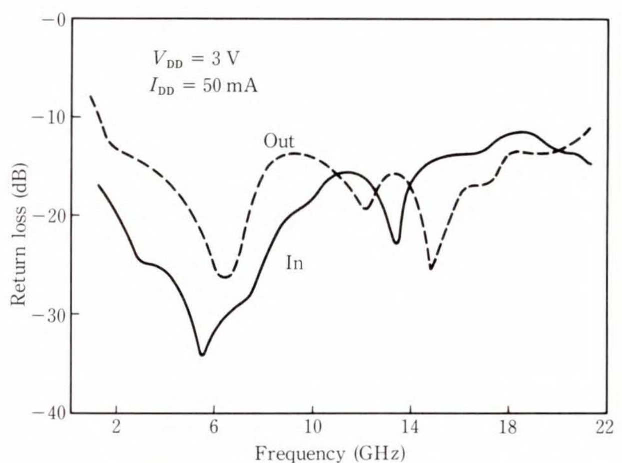
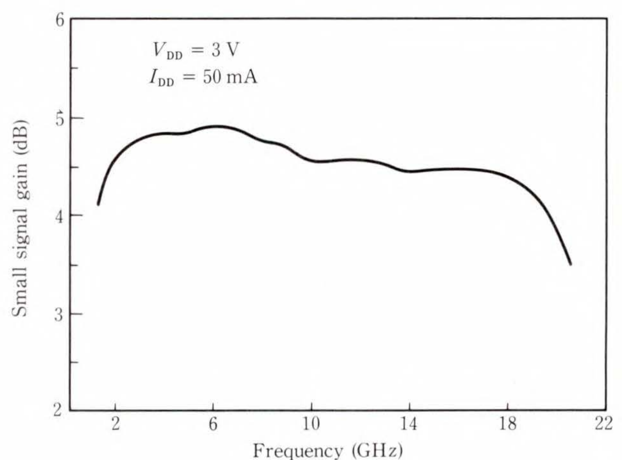


Fig. 19—Structure of FETs used in a MMIC.



a) Return loss



b) Gain

Fig. 20—Return loss and gain of FMM021806SV.

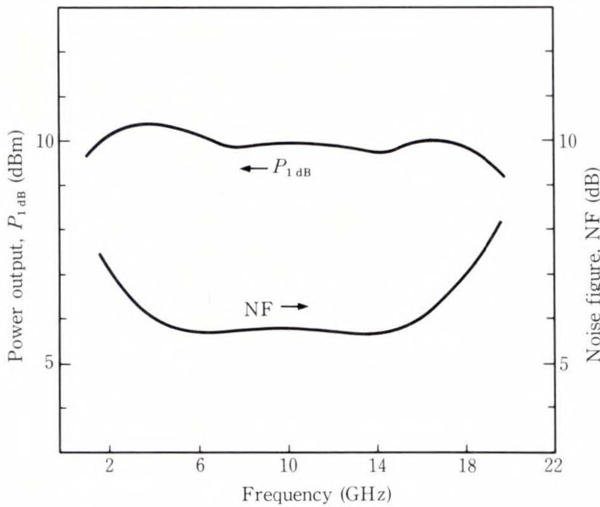


Fig. 21—Power output and noise figure vs. frequency of FMM021806XV.

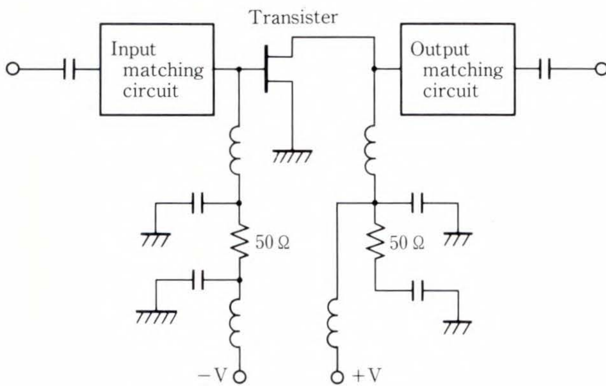


Fig. 22—Fundamental signal stage circuits of module.

from 6 GHz to 18 GHz using highly doped FETs.

MMICs of a distributed amplifier having a lower noise figure, wider band, and higher power are now under development.

Furthermore, MMICs having other functions, such as a phase shifter and a switch will be developed.

5. GaAs FET modules and amplifiers

5.1 GaAs FET modules

GaAs FET modules have been developed for a new generation of microwave amplifiers that overcome the disadvantages of conventional amplifiers (e.g. bandwidth, size and development time).

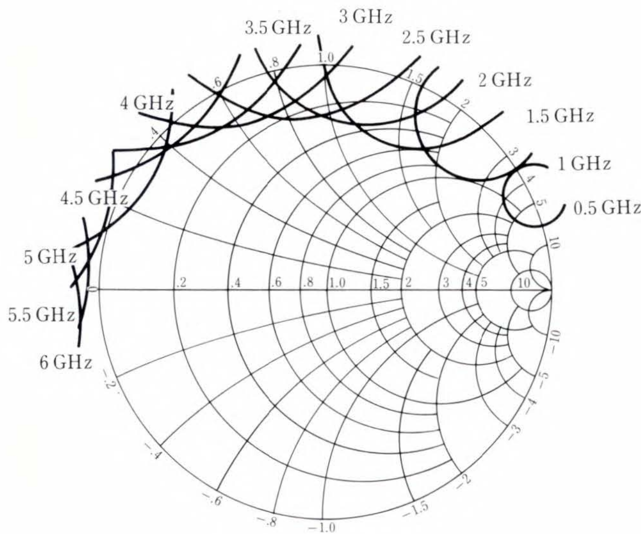
Fujitsu GaAs FET modules were designed using the technologies described below.

1) Impedance matching (RF circuit)

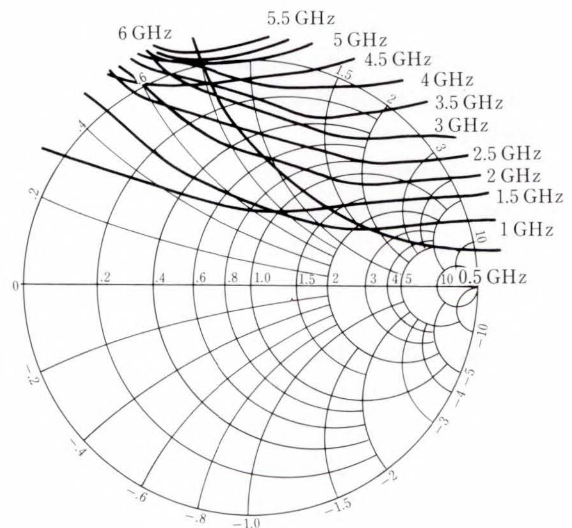
The load conditions necessary to obtain maximum gain for small signals differ from those required for large signals. The impedance matching circuits are designed by CAD using small signal and large signal S parameters. Figure 22 shows the fundamental single stage circuit.

2) DC bias circuit

In the design of a microwave transistor amplifier, transistor operation must be stable in the range from DC to the maximum oscilla-



a) Input side



b) Output side

Fig. 23—Unstable regions of GaAs FETs.

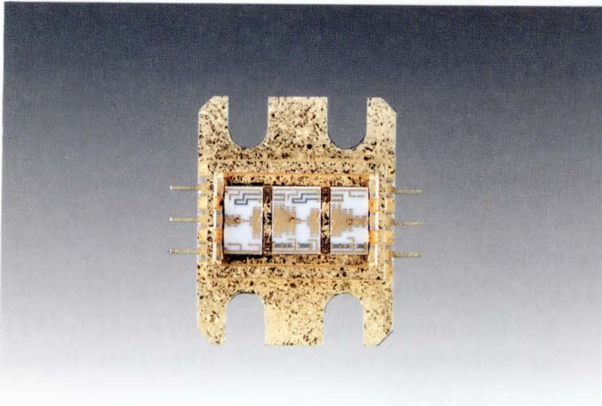


Fig. 24—Internal view of 23 GHz amplifier module.

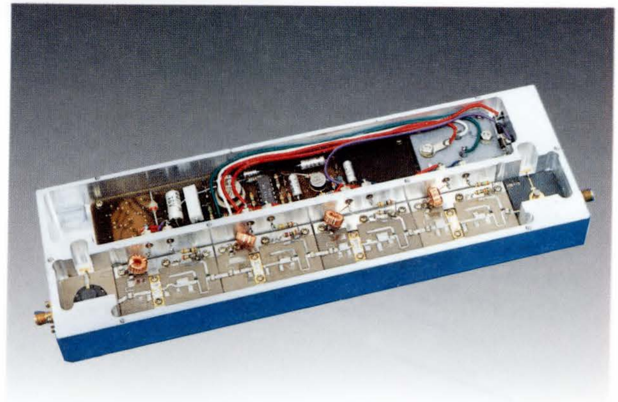


Fig. 25—Four-stage 6 GHz 1-watt amplifier.

tion frequency. Figure 23 shows the unstable regions on a Smith Chart calculated using S parameters. The unstable region is larger at lower frequencies.

The impedances at lower frequencies determined by the bias circuit in the amplifier modules do not enter the unstable regions and always offer stable performance at the operating conditions.

3) Structure design

Figure 24 shows the inside view of the 23 GHz amplifier module. Microwave amplifiers are formed in hermetically sealed metal-ceramic package integrated circuits having a DC bias circuit. RF terminals are positioned at the center of the package and DC bias terminals are placed at the sides. Not only the amplifier but a variable attenuator or other type of circuit can also be installed in the package. Using these modules, a designer can make an amplifier in a very short turnaround time.

5.2 Amplifiers

Since the development of the microwave radio system, there has been a demand for high reliability, small size, and low power consumption equipment. In pursuit of this goal, electron tubes have been replaced by microwave semiconductor devices. The introduction of the world's first high power GaAs FET from Fujitsu in 1973 have enabled realization of all-solid-state microwave radio systems.

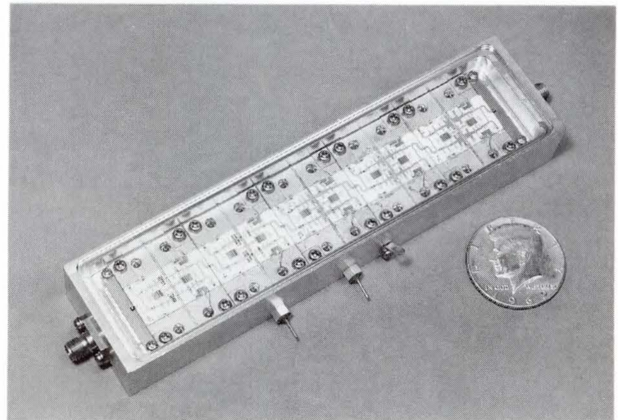


Fig. 26—4-8 GHz 5-watt amplifier.

In 1975, the first 6 GHz 1-watt high power multi-stage GaAs FET amplifier available for FM multiple radio systems was developed. This amplifier exhibited excellent signal transmission characteristics[9]. This led to the replacement of the Travelling Wave Tube in many microwave application systems[10]. This amplifier was fabricated on a Teflon-glass-fiber printed-board having micro-strip circuits. It is shown in Fig. 25.

Microwave amplifiers of microwave multiple radio systems still had to be improved interms of output power, linearity, efficiency, and band characteristics.

To realize these requirements, Fujitsu made an amplifier using GaAs FET chips and MIC technology. Figure 26 shows a 4-8 GHz 5-watt power amplifier[11]. However, this structure was

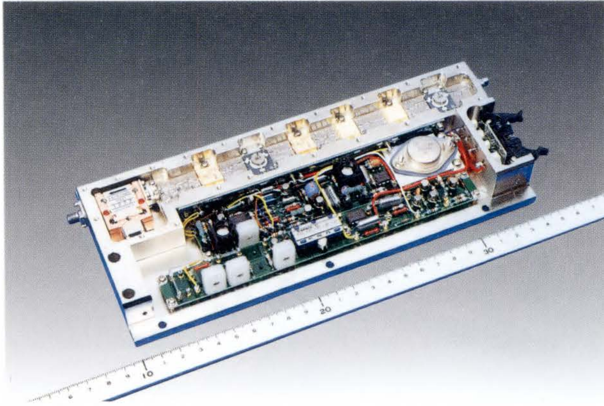


Fig. 27–4 GHz 5-watt amplifier.

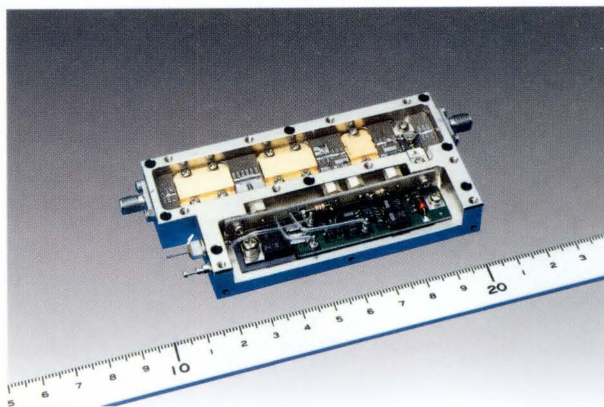


Fig. 28–14 GHz 1-watt amplifier.

difficult to repair because it was sealed as a total amplifier.

Therefore, we have developed a new generation microwave GaAs FET amplifier. It consists of a driver stage amplifier using GaAs FET modules and a booster stage amplifier using internally matched GaAs power FETs. Many kinds of amplifiers have been developed having high reliability, small size, low power consumption, low cost, and good maintainability in the 2-23 GHz range. Figure 27 shows a 4 GHz 5-watt amplifier and Fig. 28 shows a 14 GHz 1-watt amplifier, both having the new design mentioned above.

6. Conclusion

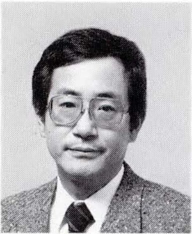
Fujitsu has developed GaAs power FETs, low noise HEMTs, broad band MMICs, and modules for microwave equipment. Further improvements in performance and cost will make system design even more simple and practical.

References

1) Fukuta, M., Mimura, T., Tujimura, I. and, Furumoto, A.: Mesh source type microwave power FET. 1973 int. Solid-Stage Circuit Conf., Dig. Tech. Papers, 1973, pp. 84-85.
2) Mead, C.A.: Schottky Barrier Gate Field Effect Transistor. *Proc. IEEE,* **54**, pp. 307-308 (1966).
3) Fukaya, J., Ishii, M., Matsumoto, M., and Hirano, Y.: A C-band 10 Watt GaAs Power FET. Dig. Int. Microwave Symp., 1984, pp. 4939-440.
4) Kashiwagi, S., Takase, S., Usui, T., and Ohno, T.: Reliability of High Frequency High Power GaAs MESFETs. 1987 IRPS.
5) Laviron, M. et al.: Low-Noise Two-Dimensional Electronic Gas FET. *Electron. Lett.,* **17**, pp. 536-537 (1981).
6) Saito, J. et al.: Dependence of the Mobility and Concentration of Two-Dimensional Electron Gas in Selectively Doped GaAs/N-Al_xGa_{x-1} As Heterostructure on the AlAs Mole Fraction. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.,* **22**, pp. L79-L81 (1983).
7) Hikosaka, K. et al.: Selective Dry Etching of AlGaAs-GaAs Heterojunction. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.,* **20**, pp. L847-L850.
8) Asai, S. et al.: Low-Noise HEMTs with a T-shaped Gate Structure. IEEE MTT-S Int. Microwave Symp. Dig., 1987, pp. 1019-1022.
9) Arai, Y. et al.: A 6-GHz Four-Stage GaAs MESFET Power Amplifier. *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory & Tech.,* **MTT-24**, 6, pp. 381-383 (1976).
10) Kuwahara, S.: Digital Microwave Communication. NTT Kikaku Center, (1984), pp. 249-261.
11) Ohta, K., Jodai, S., Fukuden, N., Hirano, Y., and Itoh, M.: A 5-watt 4-8 GHz GaAs FET Amplifier. *Microwave J.,* **22**, 11, pp. 66-67 (1979).

Kiyofumi Ohta
Microwave Device Engineering Dept.
Compound Semiconductor Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Shinshu University 1968
Master of Applied Physics
Nagoya University 1970
Specializing in Microwave Semiconductor Device

Yutaka Hirano
Microwave Device Engineering Dept.
Compound Semiconductor Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Kyoto University 1970
Specializing in Microwave Semiconductor Device Design



Kenji Yano
Microwave Device Engineering Dept.
Compound Semiconductor Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electro Eng.
Keio University 1971
Specializing in Semiconductor Wafer Processing

UDC 621.315.5:620.187

Characterization of Compound Semiconductor Materials by Transmission and Reflection Electron Microscopy

• Itsuo Umebu

(Manuscript received June 29, 1988)

The interface structures of the GaAs/AlAs superlattice were analyzed by Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) with the help of computer simulation. The bright spot arrays which appear on the uppermost AlAs layer are shown to be a good indicator for this analysis. Atomic layer steps occur at intervals of 3-10 nm. The surfaces of MBE-grown GaAs layers were analyzed in detail with reflection electron microscopy (REM). The surfaces consist of undulations and small steps. Anisotropic surface roughness may be due to anisotropic Ga surface diffusion. Atomic ordering in InGaP mixed crystals was analyzed by cross-section TEM, and a crystal model with double periodicity is proposed.

1. Introduction

The trend toward miniaturization in microelectronics demands that devices and materials be analyzed at the atomic level. Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) and Reflection Electron Microscopy (REM) are the only methods for such analysis that provide images with atomic-order resolution as well as information on crystal periodicity.

This paper discusses recent topics on high-resolution TEM and REM used to observe the cross sections and surfaces of compound semiconductor materials. Chapter 2 deals with the supercomputer simulation of TEM images for GaAs/AlAs superlattices, and then analyzes the atomic structures of GaAs/AlAs interfaces grown by Molecular Beam Epitaxy (MBE) with the help of the simulation. Chapter 3 gives an analysis of the surface of MBE-grown GaAs by REM. This way of observation is shown to be very sensitive to surface roughness. The "natural superlattice" generated spontaneously during the growth of mixed crystals has been the focus of interest for researchers because it may degrade the characteristics of the materials or lead to the development of new materials. Chapter 4 shows a cross-sectional image of the natural superlattice and a proposed crystal model.

2. GaAs/AlAs superlattice heterointerface

2.1 Computer simulation of the lattice image[1)]

High resolution TEM images are produced by the interference of electron waves with their phases modulated by the potential in the sample. The images are drastically altered by such observation conditions as sample thickness and defocus of the object lens. Simulations of various observation conditions made in advance are a great help in understanding and analyzing TEM images. Simulations are indispensable when observing new materials or new structures for the first time.

TEM images were calculated by the Cowley-Moodie multislice method[2)] with a FACOM VP-400 supercomputer. The parameters of the electron microscope used daily were taken in the calculation: an accelerating voltage of 200 kV, a spherical aberration coefficient of 0.4 mm, a chromatic aberration coefficient of 0.8 mm, and a beam divergence of 0.6 mrad. This gives a point-to-point resolution of 0.18 nm.

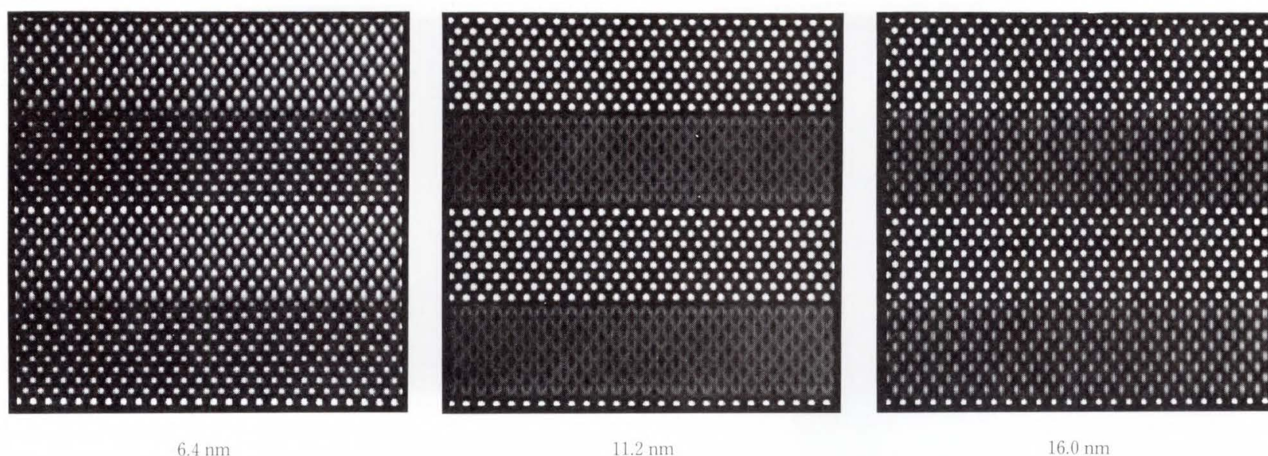


Fig. 1—Simulated GaAs/AlAs TEM images for 6.4-nm, 11.2-nm and 16.0-nm-thick samples. Bright spot arrays are visible for the uppermost AlAs layer for 6.4-nm-thick sample.

Figure 1 shows the sample-thickness dependence of lattice images of a (110) cross section of 9-monolayer GaAs/9-monolayer AlAs superlattices calculated at an optimum defocus of 38 nm. Comparing the input crystal model and output images shows that the dark and bright bands correspond to GaAs and AlAs. Each spot corresponds to a Ga and As pair, or an Al and As pair, since the resolution of 0.18 nm is bigger than the projected distance of 0.14 nm onto the (110) observation plane between the Ga and As or between the Al and As atoms. There are arrays of bright spots on the uppermost AlAs layer of at a sample thickness of 6.4 nm but not at 11.2 nm and 16.0 nm. The bright spots were visible in the range of sample thicknesses from 6 nm to 10 nm. The bright spot arrays were found to be a good indicator for the location and configuration of the heterointerfaces. The bright spot arrays run on only one side of the two interfaces because the arrangement of Al atoms is different at the two interfaces. When observed from the perpendicular direction, the bright spot arrays can be seen only on the bottom of the AlAs layers.

Figure 2 shows a lattice image of the heterostructure with a mixture of monolayer steps (height: 0.28 nm) whose fronts are perpendicular and parallel to the direction of the electron beam. Doubling of the bright spot arrays can be

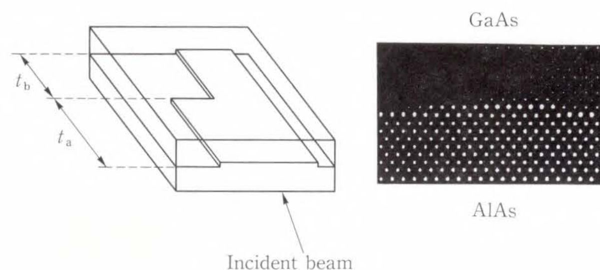


Fig. 2—A simulated TEM image and a GaAs/AlAs model with two types of atomic layer steps: t_a = 6.4 nm, t_b = 4.8 nm.

seen at the left on the uppermost AlAs layer and the layer beneath it. The step-shaped arrays of bright spots can be seen at three edges. This indicates that even a single monolayer fluctuation at the heterointerface can be clearly reflected onto the configuration of the bright spot arrays.

Thus with the help of these kinds of simulation, unknown atomic structures at the interface can be estimated.

2.2 TEM observation of GaAs/AlAs superlattices gorwn by MBE[1)]

GaAs/AlAs superlattices with a period of nine GaAs monolayers and nine AlAs monolayers were grown on (001) GaAs substrates at 500 °C and 700 °C by MBE. The transmission electron microscope used had the same specifica-

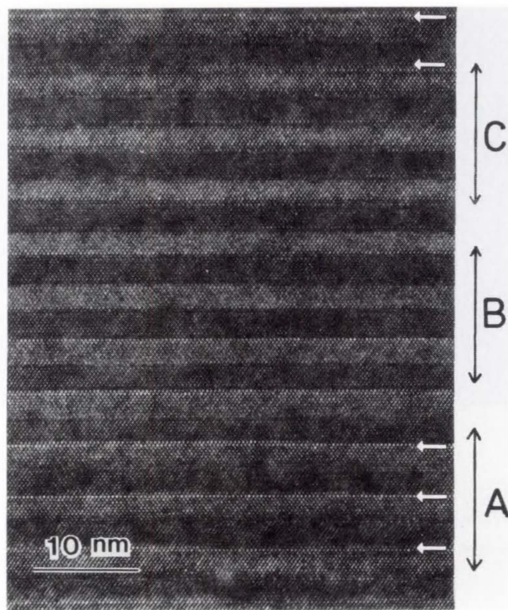


Fig. 3—Lattice image of a GaAs/AlAs superlattice grown by MBE at 700 °C. The bright spot arrays shown by arrows are visible at regions A and C but not at region B.

tions as in the previous section.

Figure 3 shows a cross-sectional TEM image for the sample grown at 700 °C. All features of the image coincide with the computer simulation. The dark bands correspond to GaAs layers and the bright bands correspond to AlAs layers. Ga and As, or Al and As are visible as pairs due to insufficient resolution. Very bright spot arrays indicated by arrows in the figure run on only one side of the two AlAs/GaAs and GaAs/AlAs interfaces. The thickness of the sample increases from bottom to top. The bottom is the thinnest region where the very bright spots can be seen. After appearing in the thinnest region, they disappear and again appear with increasing thickness. Doublings and steps are seen in the bright spot arrays, which suggests the existence of atomic layer steps at the heterointerface. The superlattice grown at 700 °C was estimated to include steps at the interface at intervals of less than 3 nm and the superlattice grown at 500 °C was estimated to include steps at intervals exceeding 10 nm. The difference in the two samples appeared as the difference in the transition layer thickness at the heterointerface through Raman spectroscopy and small-angle X-ray reflectivity analysis[3].

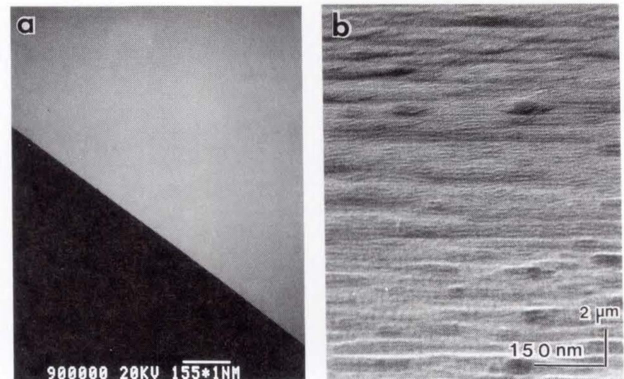


Fig. 4—Images taken by a) SEM, and b) REM for a GaAs surface grown by MBE at 600 °C.

The different lattice images of superlattices grown at 700 °C and 500 °C at the same thickness were compared using the fact that the bright spot arrays are visible at limited sample thicknesses. This should be kept in mind when comparing two images, because thick samples include more defects than thin samples.

3. Surface roughness of MBE-grown GaAs analyzed with REM

In the REM observations, the sample surface is set close to and almost parallel to the incident beam in a transmission electron microscope. The beam reflected by the surface forms the image. As expected from its geometry, REM is very sensitive to surface structures such as surface defects, including atomic steps and dislocations. The only drawback is the foreshortening effect caused by the grazing electron beam, which severely limits the resolution. Images of a GaAs surface grown by MBE taken by a Scanning Electron Microscope (SEM) and by REM are compared in Fig. 4. No surface features are visible in the SEM, but a fine structure is revealed by REM. REM was applied to analyze the surface roughness of MBE-grown GaAs. This is the first detailed analysis of it by REM[4].

GaAs was grown by MBE on a (001) GaAs substrate at 700 °C. After a 300-nm-thick layer

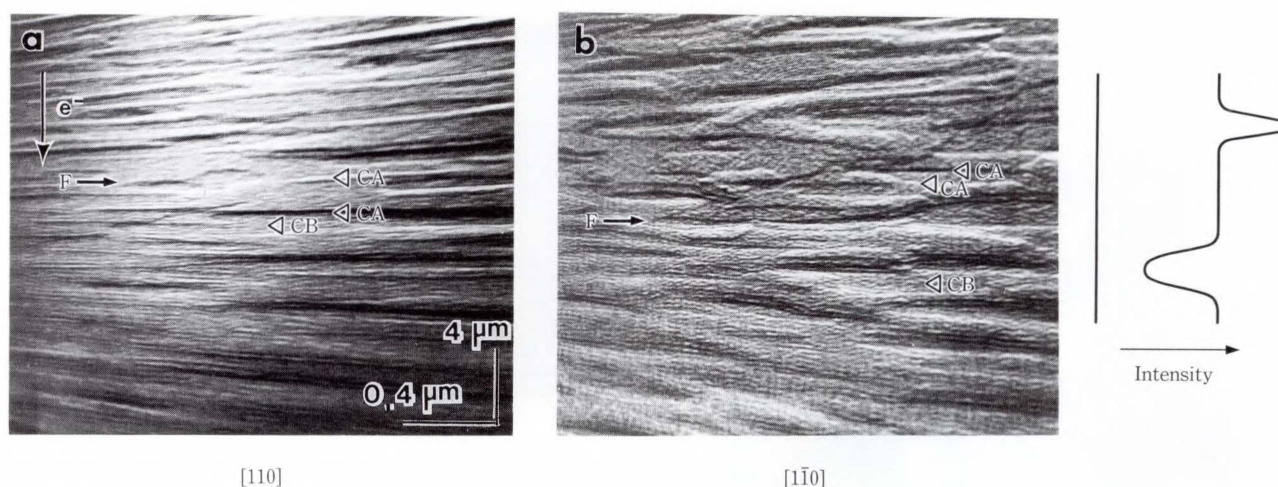


Fig. 5–REM images of a GaAs surface grown at 700 °C by MBE and intensity change between two CAs. They are in focus at F. CA and CB are two typical patterns of contrast. Electron beam direction a) [110] and b) [1$\bar{1}$0].

was deposited (growth rate: 1 μm/h), the substrate was maintained at 700 °C for three minutes under an arsenic flux to planerize the surface. The sample was removed from the growth chamber and examined with a transmission electron microscope with no treatment between the growth and the observation.

Figure 5 shows the surfaces observed from the two perpendicular directions, [110] and [1$\bar{1}$0]. The two images give a considerably different impression, deriving from the difference in form and contrast of fine contrasts. There are two types of contrast, CA and CB, whose principles of image formation differ.

Contrast CA exists on the sides of a medium contrast and appears in two ways, one is bright and the other is dark and broad. The variation of the contrast between these two CAs is shown in Fig. 5. Surface undulation is estimated to cause changes in the intensity of the reflected beam, which is an origin of contrast CA. As shown in Fig. 6, when the electron beam is irradiated at a greater angle than the maximum slope of the undulation, the electron density of the reflected beam increases for an upward staircase and decreases for downward staircase, which causes the contrast to be bright-medium-dark, as obtained in the experiment. By lowering the incident angle, the contrast was observed

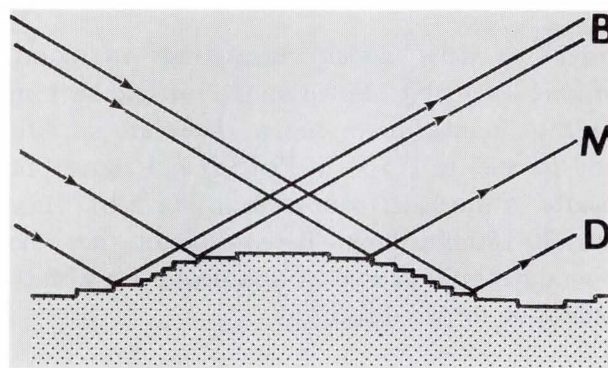


Fig. 6–A schematic drawing of surface undulation and electron beams. When the angle of the incident beam is greater than that of the slope, the contrast is bright-medium-dark (B-M-D).

to change to dark-medium-dark as predicted by the undulation model.

The following conclusions were drawn from the surface roughness obtained from contrast CA:

1) the surface undulation is a collection of plateaus,
2) the flat part of the plateaus is 0.1-2.0 μm,
3) these plateaus are less than 3 nm high, and
4) the slope at the plateau borders is between 12 mrad and 20 mrad.

The contrast CBs are seen in the medium contrast between two CAs. They are fine and

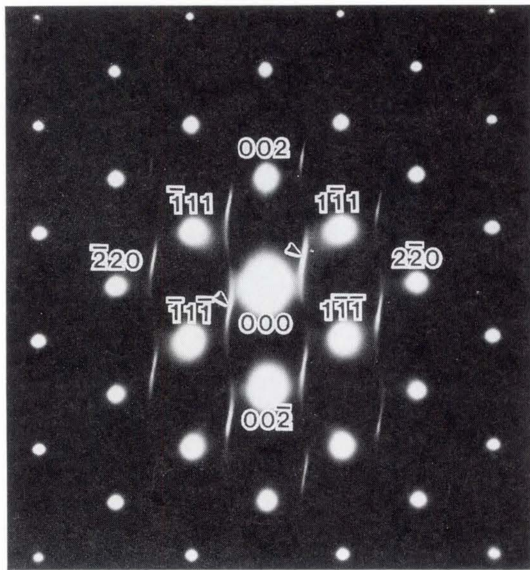


Fig. 7—Diffraction pattern for an InGaP mixed crystal. Extra spots with streaks are visible.

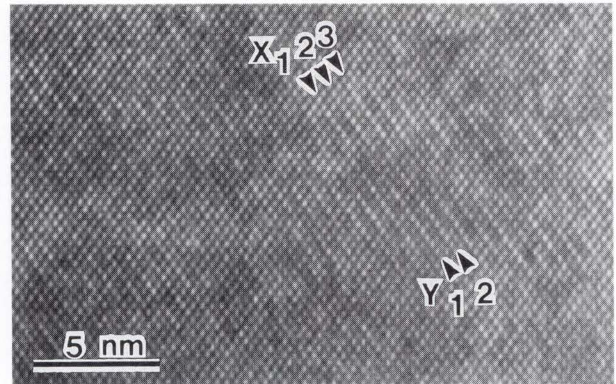


Fig. 8—A (110) cross section of the InGaP mixed crystal. x_is and y_is show atomic ordering.

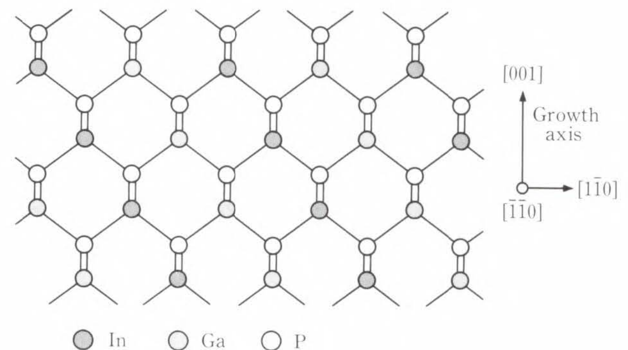


Fig. 9—A proposed crystal model for the InGaP ordered crystal. In and Ga lie on separate planes.

bright or dark, which corresponds to monoatomic level steps shown on the top and bottom of the undulation in Fig. 6. They are straight and parallel to $[1\bar{1}0]$ in Fig. 5a) and zigzag but nearly in the [110] direction in Fig. 5-b). They are 20-150 nm long. It is thought that the phenomenon is caused by anisotropic Ga surface migration in two directions.

4. InGaP natural superlattice[5)]

In TEM images of III-V mixed crystals, periodic structures other than zincblende structure are often seen. A major topic is the atomic-ordering structure, often called a "natural superlattice" after the way it is formed.

Figure 7 shows diffraction pattern for an InGaP mixed crystal grown on a (001) GaAs substrate by atmospheric-pressure Metal Orgnic Chemical Vapor Deposition (MOCVD). Extra spots with streaks are visible. The characteristic features of these extra spots are that they appear as pairs at positions indexed as ($h+1/2$ $k-1/2$ $l^{S.C.}+1/2$) and ($h-1/2$ $k+1/2$ $l^{S.C.}-1/2$) for an hkl matrix spot but do not appear in another diagonal direction. An example around the 000 spot is indicated by arrows. The streaks extend toward the [001] and $[00\bar{1}]$ directions and tilt a few degrees toward the $[1\bar{1}0]$ and $[\bar{1}10]$. Figure 8 shows a corresponding lattice image for the diffraction pattern shown in Fig. 7. Among the [111] lattice fringes, some bright spot arrays, for example the x_is and y_is, are double spaced. Tracing the x_is and y_is shows them to be one spacing off. The bright spot arrays zigzag. This double periodicity creates extra spots in the diffraction pattern, and the streaks around the spots mean the domains with double periodicity have limited volumes. Such domains were found to be plate-like and to lay nearly on the (001) plane. Figure 9 is a proposed model to explain the atomic ordering. Column III atoms, In and Ga lying separately on alternate (111) planes cause the double periodicity.

Table 1 shows combinations of materials and growth methods for which such ordering has been reported. The ordering seems to depend on how far each growth method lies from the

Table 1. Mixed crystals and growth methods for which atomic ordering has been reported

	LPE	VPE	MOCVD	MBE
AlGaAs			Ref. 8	Ref. 8
GaAsSb			Ref. 9	Ref. 11
InGaAs	Ref. 6	Ref. 7		
InGaP			Ref. 5	
InAlAs			Ref. 10	

LPE: Liquid-phase epitaxy VPE: vapor-phase epitaxy
MOCVD: metal-organic chemical vapor deposition
MBE: molecular beam epitaxy

equilibrium state.

The relationship between the size and density of the ordered domains and growth conditions is now being studied by the authors, along with the effect of ordering on material characteristics.

5. Conclusion

Recent studies on the interface structure of GaAs/AlAs superlattices, the surface roughness of MBE-grown GaAs, and atomic ordering in mixed crystals have been reviewed. Concerning the interface structure, the heterointerface was analyzed with the help of computer simulation. Computer simulation is, and will continue to be, an indispensable tool when heterostructures are used frequently in advanced semiconductor devices. Semiconductor surfaces have been analyzed in ultra-high vacuum chamber after *in situ* cleaning. It was possible to observe surface roughness with a conventional electron microscope without any treatment for samples, that is, with thin native oxide layers. The ability to observe such practical surfaces has long been in demand. REM is one of the most effective methods for this observation. REM will reach its full potential when better crystals with fewer undulations are obtained. Natural superlattices may be found in many other materials. Analyses of how natural superlattices are formed and their effect on material characteristics including device reliability, are now important business.

Expectations for TEM analysis are increasing daily. In response to this, further efforts to improve TEM technology, i.e. sample preparation, observation, image processing, analysis, and computer simulation, should be made persistently.

References

1) Nakamura, T., Ikeda, M., Muto, S., and Umebu, I.: Characterization of interfacial atomic steps in GaAs/AlAs superlattices by transmission electron microscopy. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **53**, 5, pp. 379-381 (1988).

2) Cowley J.M., and Moodie, A.F.: The Scattering of Electrons by Atoms and Crystals. *Acta Cryst.*, **10**, pp. 609-619 (1957).

3) Umebu, I., Komiya, S., Nakamura, T., Muto, S., and Iida, A.: Multiple Characterization of Structural Perfection in GaAs/AlAs. *J. Phys.*, (Paris), pp. C5-41-C5-44 (1987).

4) Shimizu, N., and Muto, S.: Reflection electron microscopic observation of high-temperature grown GaAs surfaces of molecular beam epitaxy. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **51**, 10, pp. 743-745 (1987).

5) Ueda, O., Takikawa, M., Komeno, J., and Umebu, I.: Atomic Structure of Ordered InGaP Crystals Grown on (001) GaAs Substrates by Metalorganic Chemical Vapor Deposition. *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.*, **26**, 11, pp. L1824-L1827 (1987).

6) Nakayama H., and Fujita, H.: Direct observation of an ordered phase in a disordered $In_{1-x}Ga_xAs$ alloys. *Inst. Phys. Conf. Ser.*, **79**, pp. 289-294 (1986).

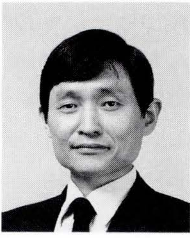
7) Shahid, M.A., Mahajan, S., Laughlin, D.E., and Cox, H.M.: Atomic ordering in $Ga_{0.47}In_{0.53}As$ and $Ga_xIn_{1-x}As_yP_{1-y}$ Alloy Semiconductors. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, **58**, 24, pp. 2567-2570 (1987).

8) Kuan, T.S., Kuech, T.F., Wang, W.I., and Wilkie, E.L.: Long-Range Order in $Al_xGa_{1-x}As$. *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, **54**, 3, pp. 201-204 (1985).

9) Jen, H.R., Cherng, M.J., and Stringfellow, G.B.: Ordered structure in $GaAs_{0.5}Sb_{0.5}$ alloys grown by organometallic vapor phase epitaxy. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **48**, 23, pp. 1603-1605 (1986).

10) Norman, A.G., Mallard, R.E., Murgatroyd, I.J., Booker, G.R., Moore, A.H., and Scott, M.D.: TED, TEM and HREM studies of atomic ordering in $Al_xIn_{1-x}As$ ($\times 0.5$) epitaxial layers grown by organometallic vapor phase epitaxy. *Inst. Phys. Conf. Ser.*, **87**, pp. 77-82 (1987).

11) Ihm, Yeong-Eon, Otsuka, N., Klem, J., and Morkoc, H.: Ordering in $GaAs_{1-x}Sb_x$ grown by moleclar beam epitaxy. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **51**, 24, pp. 2013-2015 (1987).



Itsuo Umebu
Semiconductor Crystals Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electronics Eng.
Kyoto University 1967
Master of Electronics Eng.
Kyoto University 1969
Specializing in Electronics Engineering

UDC 621.3.049.774.3:621.7.04

Ultra High-Speed Bipolar Process Technology: ESPER

● Tatsuya Deguchi ● Hiroshi Goto

(Manuscript received July 14, 1988)

This paper describes an ultra high-speed bipolar process technology using en Emitter-base Self-aligned structure with Polysilicon Electrodes and Resistors (ESPERs). This structure, combined with trench isolation, drastically reduces parasitic capacitances and resistances, realizing a sub-40 ps ECL circuit and high-performance bipolar devices.

1. Introduction

Bipolar LSIs are used in main frame computers and digital communication systems. They play an important role in the systems because the system performance strongly depends on the switching speed of the bipolar devices. In order to reduce the switching speed and power dissipation, several sophisticated bipolar device and process technologies have been reported[1),2)]. They mainly use the so-called self-aligned techniques to obtain small active areas without using tight lithography rules. Figure 1 shows the recent improvements in the performance of bipolar devices. With the introduction of various self-aligned technologies, bipolar devices entered a new generation. In this paper, a newly developed self-aligned structure optimized for high-performance bipolar VLSIs and high-frequency ICs is described. This structure, named an Emitter-base Self-aligned structure with Polysilicon Electrodes and Resistors (ESPERs), is combined with U-groove isolation with thick Field OXide (U-FOX) or trench isolation[3)]. As a result, smaller base-collector capacitances and reduced collector-substrate capacitances have been achieved. Moreover, optimization of the device dimension has also been considered for ECL circuits.

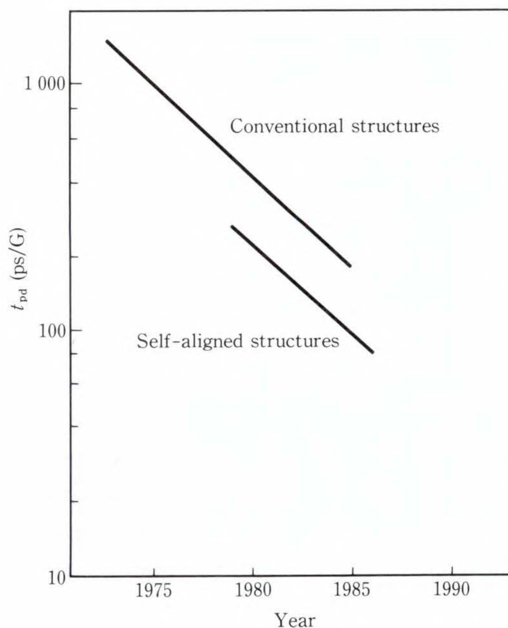
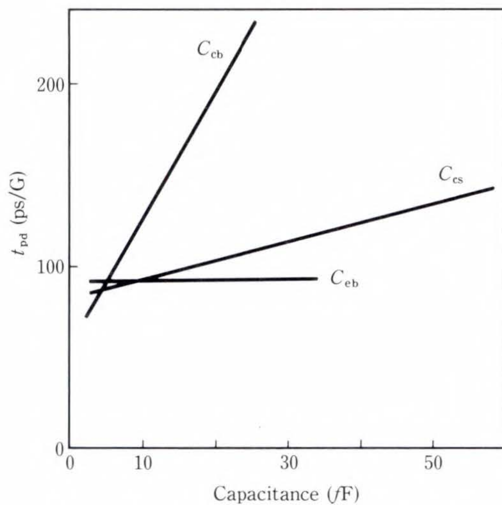


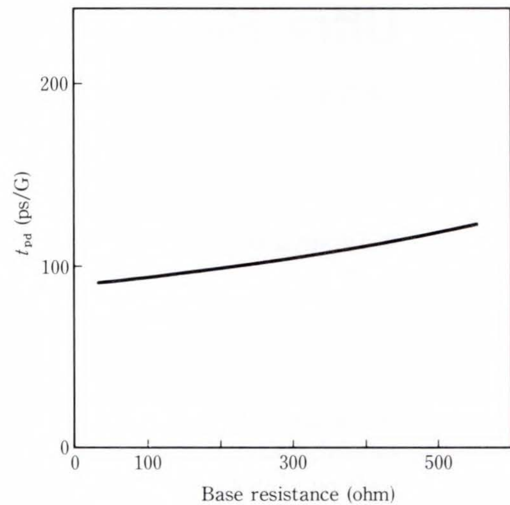
Fig. 1–Trends of basic gate delay time of ECL circuits.

2. Device optimization

The contribution of each device parameter to the basic gate delay time (t_{pd}) of ECL circuits was investigated by circuit simulation for the case of self-aligned bipolar device structures. Figure 2 shows the results of simulation. Among the parasitic capacitances and resistances, the most crucial parameter that affects the switching time is the base-collector capacitance (C_{cb}). When the switching current is 1 mA (the effective emitter size is 0.35 × 10 μm^2), a ten-percent decrease in the C_{cb} cor-



a) t_{pd} dependence upon parasitic capacitances



b) t_{pd} dependence upon base resistance

Fig. 2—Simulation results.

responds to a four-percent reduction in the t_{pd}. A ten-percent reduction in the base resistance (r_b) or the same reduction of the collector-substrate capacitance (C_{cs}) causes a two-percent decrease in the t_{pd}. On the other hand, a ten-percent reduction in the base-emitter capacitance corresponds to less than one-percent only. In addition to the parasitics, the cutoff frequency (f_T) is also an important factor affecting the switching time. A higher f_T can be achieved by a shallower base. But as the shallow base often causes a higher base resistance, the device structure should be optimized to keep a low base resistance.

The polysilicon emitter-base self-aligned structure is suitable for reducing the base-collector junction area. This also makes it possible to achieve a shallow base without increasing the base resistance. All of these properties are originated in the stacking double polysilicon structure for the base and emitter electrodes. The U-FOX, or the trench isolated structure with a thick field oxide layer, reduces the C_{cs}, parasitic wiring-substrate and resistor-substrate capacitances. Accordingly, the combination of ESPER with U-FOX is the best solution for high-performance bipolar devices.

3. Steps in the fabrication process of ESPER

In this chapter, the steps in the fabrication process of ESPER are described.

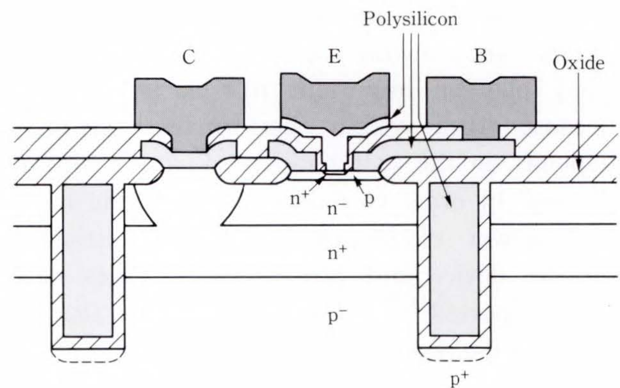


Fig. 3—Schematic cross-section of an ESPER transistor combined with U-FOX.

1) Transistors are isolated by deep trenches and active regions are surrounded by a thick field oxide layer. This step uses the conventional U-FOX technique[3).
2) An undoped polysilicon layer is deposited on the n-type epitaxial layer. The polysilicon base electrodes and resistors are formed in the polysilicon followed by boron ion implantation and CVD oxide deposition.
3) The intrinsic base regions are opened by photolithography and etching of the CVD oxide and the polysilicon.
4) The surfaces of the n-type epitaxial layer and the polysilicon are oxidized when the

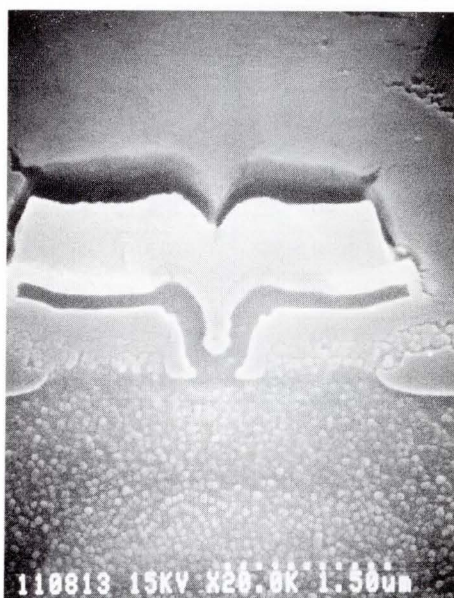


Fig. 4—Cross-sectional SEM micrograph of an intrinsic and extrinsic base region.

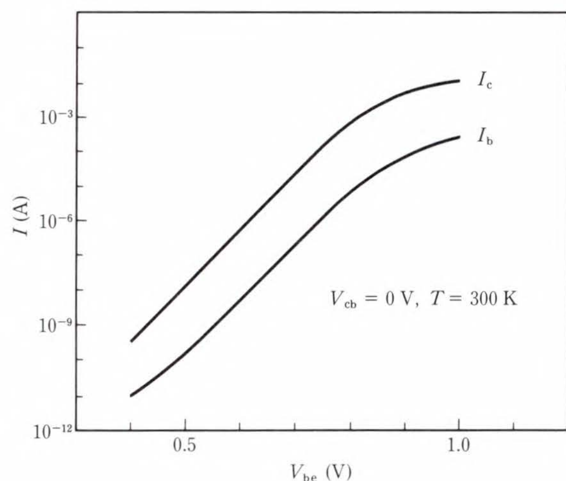


Fig. 5—Gummel plot of a 0.5 × 16 μm^2 × 2 emitter transistor.

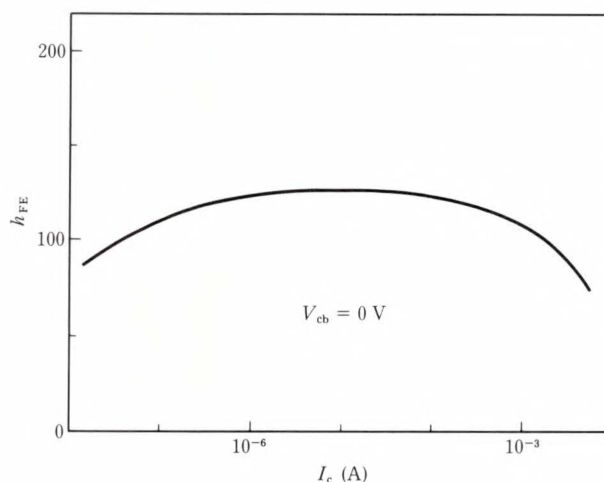


Fig. 6—Current gain vs. collector current for the same transistor as Fig. 5.

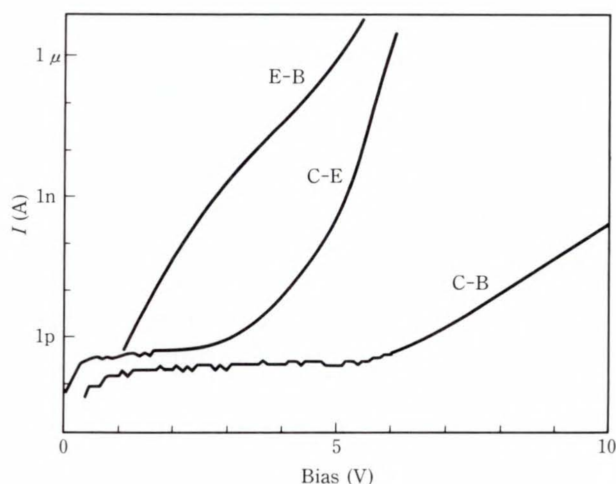


Fig. 7—Leakage current vs. voltage characteristics of each junction.

extrinsic base regions are diffused from the boron doped polysilicon.

5) The intrinsic base regions are formed by boron ion implantation. The emitter window is opened and arsenic is diffused from another polysilicon layer.

Figure 3 shows the schematic cross-section of an ESPER transistor combined with U-FOX. Figure 4 shows a cross-sectional SEM micrograph of the intrinsic and extrinsic base region.

4. Transistor characteristics

By using the ESPER technique, many types of transistors were fabricated to check their DC and AC characteristics. Figure 5 shows a typical Gummel plot of a double-stripped 0.5 × 16-μm^2 emitter transistor. This graph has nearly ideal I-V characteristics for both the collector and base currents from the low injection level. The current gain dependence upon the collector current is shown in Fig. 6. The current gain is nearly constant from 10 nA to 5 mA of the collector current. Figure 7 shows the I-V characteristics of the leakage current versus emitter-

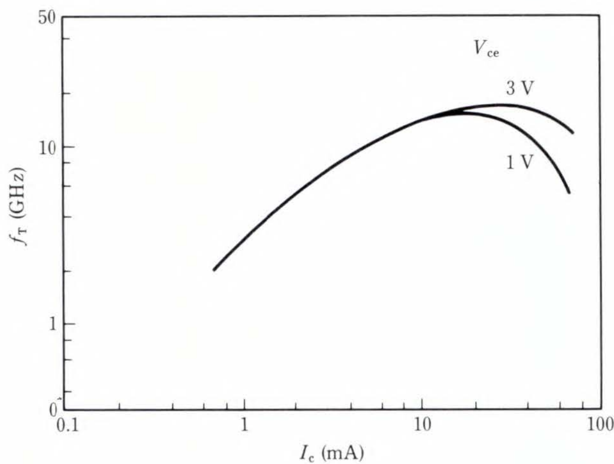


Fig. 8—Cutoff frequency vs. collector current (0.35×10 μm^2 emitter size).

base and collector-base reverse biased voltages and collector-emitter voltage with the base electrode open. The leakage current of the E-B junction is 43 pA at the reverse bias of 2 V. The leakage current between the collector and emitter is 300 pA at a bias of 5 V. These values are satisfactory even for very low-current digital circuits.

In addition to DC characteristics, the cutoff frequency (f_T) was also measured using the S-parameters. In the case of a 0.35×10-μm^2 emitter transistor, the peak f_T of 17.2 GHz was obtained at the V_{ce} of 3 V, as shown in Fig. 8.

Other types of transistors such as 4 200 parallel arrayed transistors were also fabricated. They show little junction leakage and have satisfactory DC characteristics[4]. The device parameters of the ESPER transistors compared with those of a conventional U-FOX transistor are listed in Table 1[4].

Table 1. ESPER-transistor parameters compared with conventional U-FOX transistor.

	ESPER transistor		U-FOX transistor
Emitter size	0.35×10 μm^2	0.35×2.9 μm^2	0.8×2 μm^2
C_{cs}	40 fF	8.2 fF	7 fF
C_{cb}	9.5 fF	3.7 fF	11 fF
C_{eb}	50 fF	12 fF	4 fF
h_{FE}	100	100	120
f_T	17.2 GHz	13 GHz	6 GHz

5. Circuit performance

Based on the results of circuit simulation in Chap. 2, the dependence of the t_{pd} of ECL circuits on the C_{cb} was investigated. By fabricating two types of transistors with different extrinsic base areas for the same ECL circuit, the basic gate delay times were compared. One of the transistors had an effective extrinsic lateral base width of 0.54 μm. That for the other

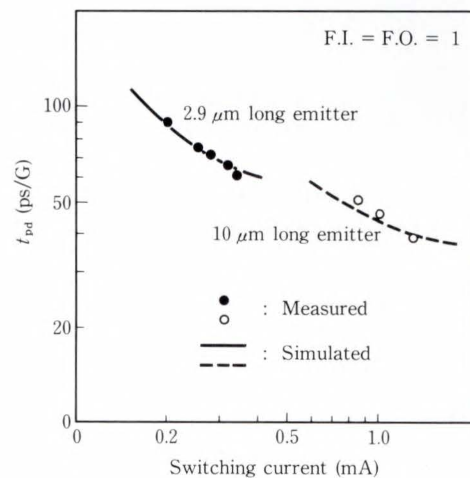


Fig. 9—Basic gate delay time vs. switching current.

was 0.34 μm. The total lateral base widths were 1.88 μm and 1.48 μm, respectively. A comparison of the circuits made by these transistors produced the following results. For high-power circuits, whose transistors had an effective emitter size of 0.35×10 μm^2, the C_{cb}'s were 11.3 fF and 9.5 fF corresponding to each base area. The t_{pd}'s were 50 ps and 46 ps, respectively. The switching current was 1.0 mA. For low-power circuits, whose transistors had an effective emitter size of 0.35×2.9 μm^2, the C_{cb}'s were 4.42 fF and 3.74 fF, while the t_{pd}'s were 82 ps and 75 ps. The switching current was 0.25 mA. In these cases, a thirty-percent decrease in the C_{cb} corresponds approximately to a ten-percent decrease in the t_{pd}. This result corresponds fairly closely to the prediction of the simulation[4].

By using the 0.35×10-μm^2 emitter

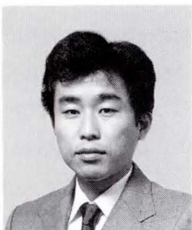
transistors with a base width of 1.48 μm, a minimum basic gate delay time of 38.8 ps was obtained at a switching current of 1.28 mA. In the case of $0.35 \times 2.9\text{-}\mu m^2$ emitter transistors with the same base width, 60.2 ps was obtained at a switching current of 0.34 mA. The t_{pd} versus the switching current characteristics are shown in Fig. 9. For these transistors, the length of the wiring contributed 50 ps/mm, and the gate loading added 7 ps per fanout for a 0.32-mA emitter follower current. This is a suitable situation for VLSI ECL circuits[4]. By employing the ESPER process, a 100-ps 10 000-gate ECL array has been put on the market[5]. The ESPER process is not only suitable for VLSI applications but also for high-frequency digital communication ICs of the giga-Hertz range. For instance, a 3.6-GHz preamplifier and a 6.3-Gbit/s D-F/F for optical repeaters have been reported[6].

6. Conclusion

This paper describes the newly developed ultra high-speed bipolar process technology named ESPER. By combining ESPER with trench isolation, e.g. U-FOX parasitic capacitance and resistances have been reduced drastically. Among the parasitics, the base-collector capacitance is the most crucial factor affecting the switching speed. The base area was optimized for suitable circuit operation and power dissipation. By using these processes, a sub-40 ps ECL circuit was described, as well as high-performance VLSI chips and high-frequency ICs for giga digital systems.

References

1) Washio, H. et al.: A 48 ps ECL in a Self-aligned Bipolar Technology. 1987, ISSCC, Tech. Dig., pp. 58-59.
2) Konaka, S. et al.: A 20 ps/G Si Bipolar IC Using Advanced SST with Collector Ion Implantation. Extended Abstracts 19th Conf. Solid-State Devices Materials, Tokyo, 1987, pp. 331-334.
3) Goto, H. et al.: A New Isolation Technology for Bipolar VLSI Logic (IOP-L). Symp. VLSI Technol., 1985, pp. 42-43.
4) Ueno, K. et al.: A Sub-40 ps ECL Circuit at a Switching Current of 1.28 mA. IEEE IEDM, Tech. Dig., 1987, pp. 371-374.
5) Electronics' pp. 99-100 (Mar. 31, 1988).
6) Hamano, H. et al.: A 4 Gb/s Si-bipolar Chip Set for Optical Repeaters, 1988, ISSCC, Tech. Dig., pp. 18-19.



Tatsuya Deguchi
Process Engineering Dept.
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electric Eng.
Mie University 1984
Specializing in Bipolar Device and Process
Technology

Hiroshi Goto
Process Engineering Dept.
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Physics
The University of Tokyo
Specializing in Bipolar Device and Process
Technology

UDC 621.3.049.774

High-Speed BiCMOS Technology with Polysilicon Emitter Structure

• Hiroyuki Fukuma • Tsunenori Yamauchi • Yoshinori Okajima

(Manuscript received September 6, 1988)

This paper describes a high-speed BiCMOS technology which consists of bipolar process technology using polysilicon emitter and CMOS process technology using the 1.0 μm-rule. The high-speed characteristics of the BiCMOS were obtained: The cutoff frequency (f_T) of the bipolar npn transistor was found to be 6 GHz with a propagation delay time (t_{pd}) for the CMOS gate of 0.5 ns. The high performance of the conventional bipolar device and CMOS device were also maintained.

The BiCMOS technology has been applied to fabricate a 2 000-gate gate array and a 256-Kbit SRAM. The results of these devices are also reported.

1. Introduction

BiCMOS technology is widely regarded as providing a possible means for realizing high-performance LSIs with multiple functions[1)-5)]. This is because BiCMOS technology has the high drivability of bipolar LSIs combined with the low power dissipation and high packing density of CMOS LSIs. BiCMOS technology is therefore drawing a great deal of attention from various fields of application.

At Fujitsu, a digital/analog BiCMOS has already been developed[2)]. At presently, high-speed BiCMOS technology has been developed, and satisfactory results have been obtained. This technology consists of high-speed bipolar technology using a polysilicon emitter which is based on DOPOS (Doped Polysilicon) technology[6)] and high-density CMOS technology of the 1.0 μm-rule.

This paper describes the device structure and the process technology, and discusses a high-speed 2 000-gate gate array and a high-speed 256-Kbit SRAM as examples of application.

2. Device structure and fabrication process steps

The structure of the BiCMOS device is shown in Fig. 1.

Photolithography of the 1.0 μm-rule is used. In making the bipolar transistor, a polysilicon emitter is formed by using improved DOPOS technology, realising a minimum emitter size of 1.1×1.9 μm^2. In the MOS transistor, the gate oxide is 25 nm. The gate length in the SRAM is 1.2 μm for nMOS and 1.4 μm for pMOS, and are 1.5 μm and 1.8 μm in the gate array.

In order to reduce the hot electron effect, an LDD (Lightly Doped Drain) structure is applied for nMOS in SRAM and, a DDD (Double Diffused Drain) structure is applied for nMOS in the gate array. The gate length is reduced in the SRAM to reduce the size of the memory cell to 66.6 μm^2.

In the source/drain contacts of the nMOS, the contact resistance is lowered using the same doped polysilicon technique as that used in the emitter contact. The process parameter is shown in Table 1.

The fabrication process steps are shown in Fig. 2.

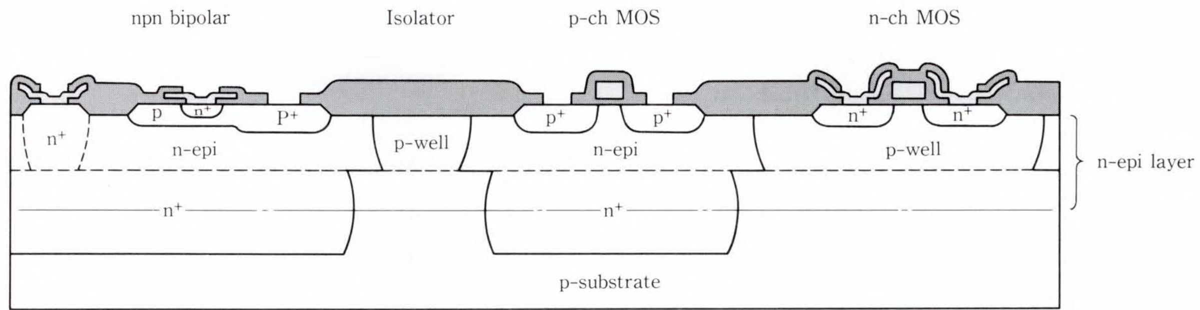


Fig. 1—BiCMOS device structure.

Table 1. Process parameter

Item	Specification
Epitaxal thickness	1.6 μm
Gate oxide thickness	25 nm
Field oxide thickness	500 nm
DOPOS thickness	100 nm
Minimum emitter size	1.1 x 1.9 μm^2
Gate length/drain structure (nMOS)	1.2 μm/LDD (SRAM) 1.5 μm/DDD (Gate array)

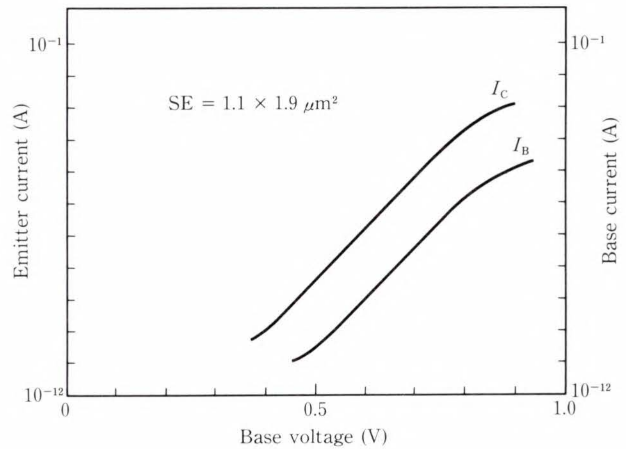


Fig. 3—Bipolar npn transistor gummel plot.

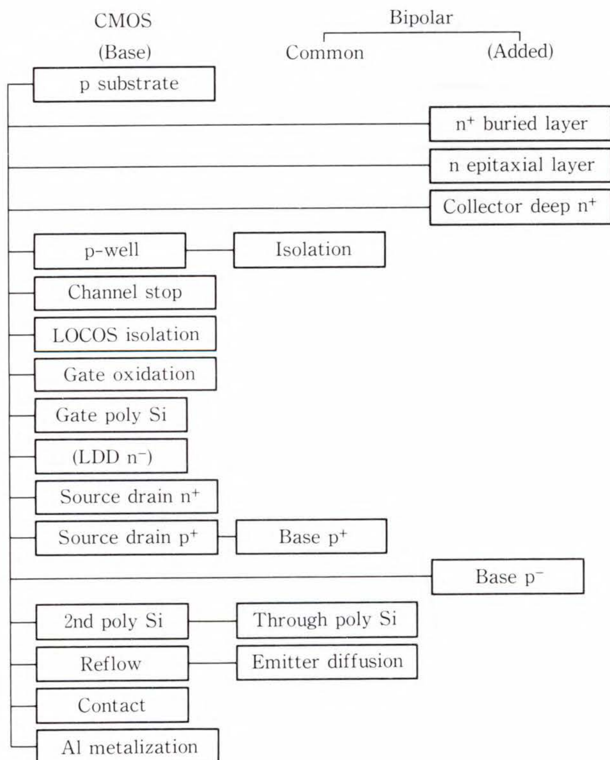


Fig. 2—Fabrication process steps.

A p-well is simultaneously formed with the isolation layer. Likewise, a graft base is formed with the pMOS source/drain layer, the polysilicon layer of the emitter contact is formed with that of the nMOS source/drain contacts, and the emitter and the nMOS source/drain contacts are diffused by simultaneously reflowing the PSG layer formed over the polysilicon. Consequently, compared with the conventional CMOS process, the additional process steps required for BiCMOS are only those including buried layer fabrication, epitaxial growth and ion implantation for the collector and base.

3. Device characteristics

A typical gummel plot of 1.1 x 1.9 μm^2 emitter transistor is shown in Fig. 3. This graph shows ideal I-V characteristics for both the collector and base currents from the injection

level. The current gain (h_{FE}) is 100, the breakdown voltage between the emitter and collector (BV_{CEO}) is 8 V and that between the base and emitter (BV_{EBO}) is 5.6 V.

The dependence of the cutoff frequency (f_T) on the emitter current of the emitter transistor measuring (4 x 62) x 2 μm^2 is shown in Fig. 4. The maximum cutoff frequency (f_{Tmax}) at 6 GHz is obtained at an emitter current of 20 mA. The dependence of the drain current on the gate voltage of the nMOS (gate length of

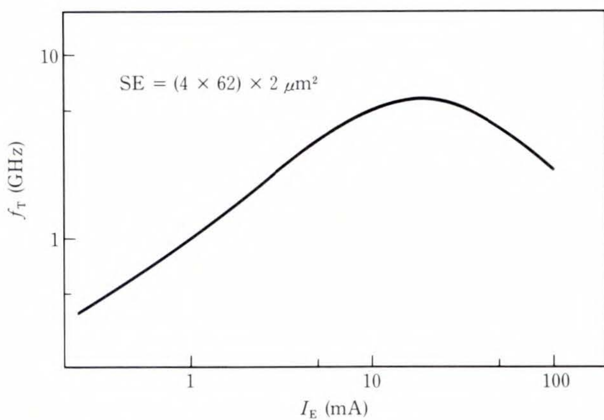


Fig. 4—Bipolar npn transistor cutoff grequency vs emitter current.

Table 2. BiCMOS device dimensions and characteristics

Transistor	Specifications			Gate array	SRAM
BIP	Dimension		Min. emitter size	1.4 x 4 μm^2	1.1 x 1.9 μm^2
			Base depth	0.3 μm	
			Emitter depth	0.15 μm	
	Characteristic		h_{FE}	100	
			BV_{CEO}	8 V	
			BV_{EBO}	5.6 V	
			Cutoff frequency	6 GHz	
MOS	Dimension		Gate oxide thickness	25 nm	
		nMOS	Gate length	1.5 μm (DDD)	1.2 μm (LDD)
			Junction depth	0.4 μm	0.25 μm
		pMOS	Gate length	1.8 μm	1.4 μm
			Junction depth	0.45 μm	
	Characteristic	nMOS	V_{TH}	0.6 V	0.65 V
			β	1 100 $\mu S/V$	1 200 $\mu S/V$
			V_{SD}	14 V	
		pMOS	V_{TH}	0.6 V	0.75 V
			β	400 $\mu S/V$	
			V_{SD}	14 V	

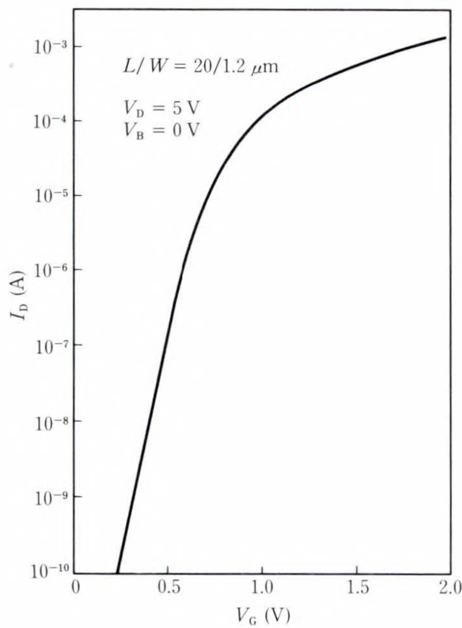


Fig. 5—nMOS transistor V_G-I_D.

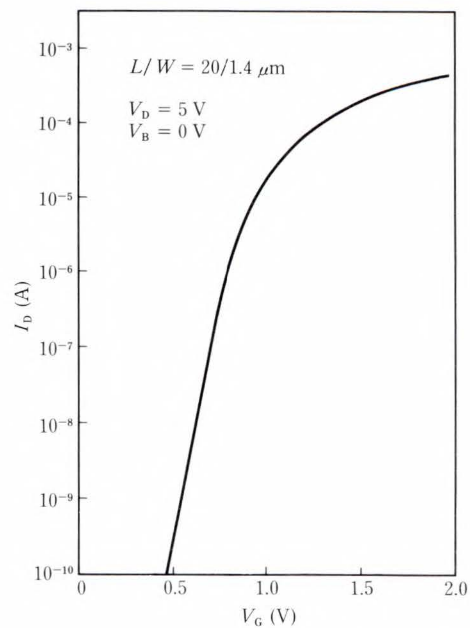


Fig. 6—pMOS transistor V_G-I_D.

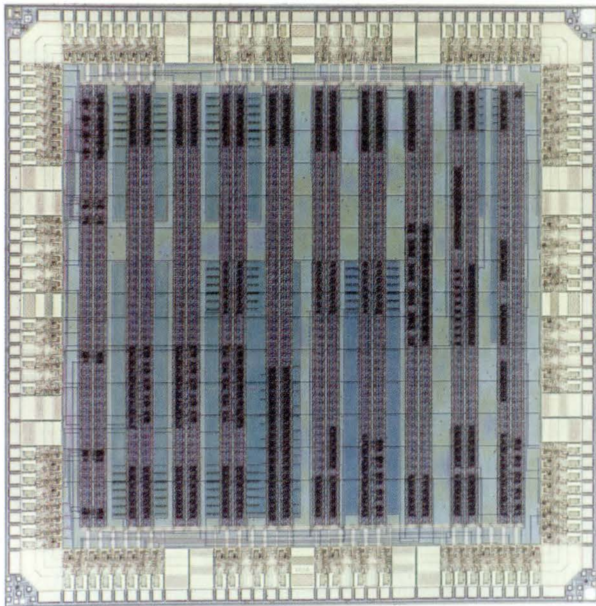


Fig. 7–Photograph of a chip with a 2 000-gate gate array.

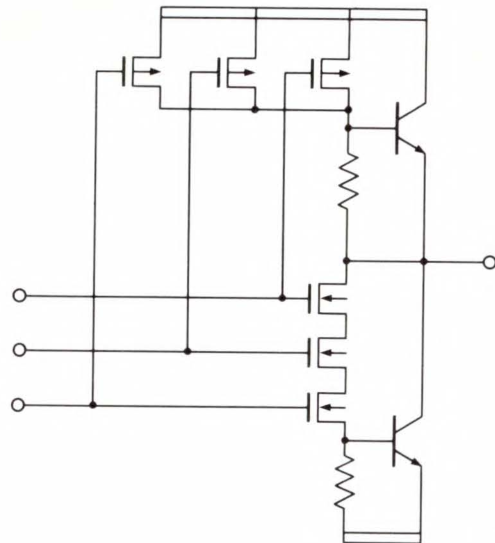


Fig. 8–A 3-input NAND gate.

1.2 μm, gate width of 20 μm) is shown in Fig. 5 and that for the pMOS (gate length of 1.4 μm, gate width of 20 μm) is shown in Fig. 6. In the nMOS β and BV_{SD} are 1 200 μS/V and 14 V, respectively, and 400 μS/V and 14 V for the pMOS.

The device characteristics obtained using BiCMOS technology are nearly equal to those obtained using the conventional bipolar and MOS technology individually. The main device characteristics are shown in Table 2.

4. Application

4.1 2 000-gate gate array

Figure 7 is a photograph of the developed 2 000-gate gate array.

The dependence of the switching speed on the load capacitance is important for high-speed operation of a device. In the BiCMOS gate array, this dependence is improved by adding a drive circuit which consists of the bipolar transistor at the output circuit of the CMOS logic. An additional feature of the BiCMOS is that the off-state current of the CMOS output circuit to be used is nearly zero, enabling low power to be maintained. As the scale of integration becomes larger, the wiring length of the gate array increases. It is necessary to further improve the switching speed dependence on the load capacitance in order to organize high-speed systems.

The basic circuit of the BiCMOS logic can be constructed in two types. One type uses a MOS transistor[7)] and the other type uses a resistor as a impedance which serves to discharge the charge stored in the base of bipolar transistor. The authors selected the type having the resistor impedance, as shown in Fig. 8. This basic circuit consists of an nMOS (gate length of 1.5 μm), pMOS (gate length of 1.8 μm) and npn (emitter size of $1.4 \times 4\ \mu m^2$).

For the 2-input NAND gate, the measured gate delay times (t_{pd}) versus the load capacitance are shown in Fig. 9. Under a standard load capacitance (wiring length of 3 mm, *FO* of 3), a speed was obtained which is twice as fast as a CMOS state which consisting of transistors of the same size. The dependence of gate delay on load capacitance is 0.3 ns/pF. This value is about 1/5 of the CMOSs gate delay.

In the range below 0.1 pF of the load capacitance, the gate delay of the BiCMOS is larger than that of CMOS, which is due to an influence of the parasitic capacitances between the base and collector (CCB) and between the base and emitter (CEB). Therefore, for a

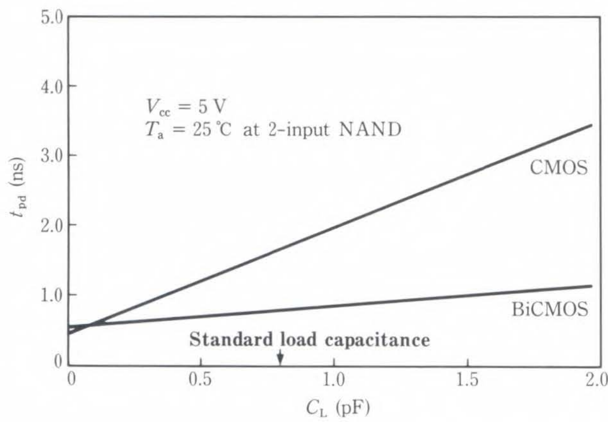


Fig. 9—Propagation delay time vs load capacitance.

Table 3. Characteristics of 2 000-gate gate array

Item	Specification			
Internal gate	Delay time (ns)	C_l = 0 pF	0.55	
		Standard load capacitance	0.8	
	Power dissipation (mW)		0.25 note 1	
	Toggle frequency (MHz)		180	
Input buffer	Delay time (ns)	t_{PLH}	1.7	
		t_{PHL}	2.0	
	Power dissipation (mW)		0.35 note 2	
Output buffer	Delay time (ns)	t_{PLH}	4.0	4.0
		t_{PHL}	5.3	6.3
	Power dissipation (mW)		8.0 note 2	4.0 note 2
	I_{OL} (mA)		24	10

note 1: Dynamic state (at 10 MHz) note 2: Static state

circuit to achieve high speed and be highly integrated, with a large load capacitance, the BiCMOS circuit is most suitable.

The characteristics of this gate array are summarized in Table 3. The BiCMOS achieves high performance, and is faster than the CMOS while having the same power dissipation as the CMOS.

4.2 256-Kbit SRAM

The power dissipation of a bipolar 64-Kbit (ECL) SRAM is normally about 1.0 W[8] and that of a bipolar 256-Kbit (ECL) SRAM is expected to be almost 2 W. Therefore, simply following this trend, a special technique for mounting and cooling is required if integration of devices is to advance further. If a high-speed ECL SRAM having large-scale integration is to be extensively used, it is necessary to achieve low power dissipation using BiCMOS technology. The BiCMOS 256-Kbit SRAM is therefore developed in this work.

A photograph of the fabricated 256-Kbit SRAM is shown in Fig. 10. The chip is 9.36 × 4.46 mm^2 and can be mounted on a 300-mil DIT package.

To optimize the performance of each part of the circuit, a polysilicon-loaded nMOS memory cell is used in memory cell, BiCMOS circuits are used in gate circuits of the decorder,

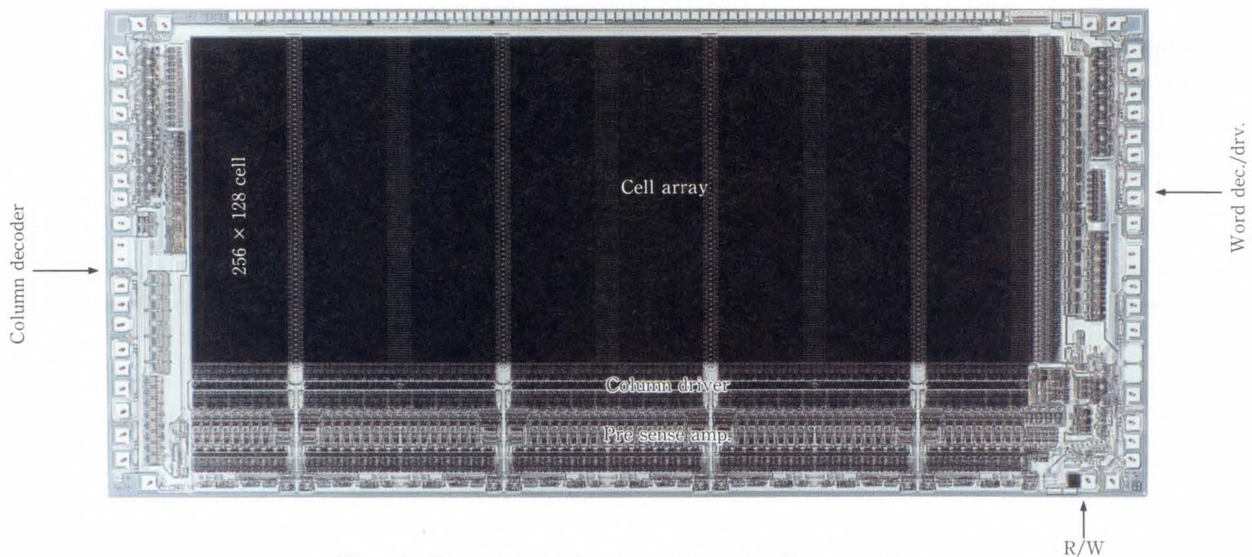


Fig. 10—Photograph of a chip with a 256-Kbit SRAM.

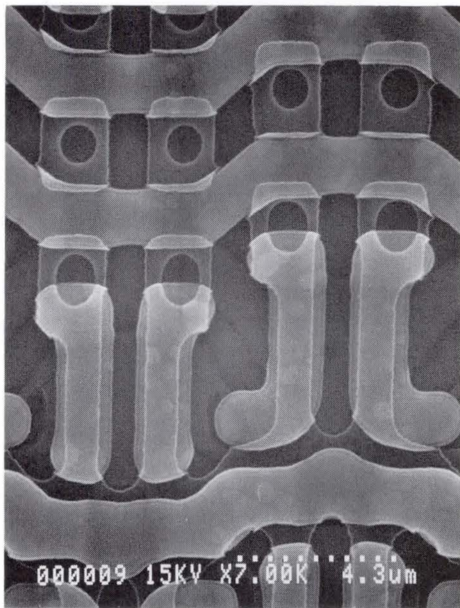


Fig. 11–Photograph of memory cell.

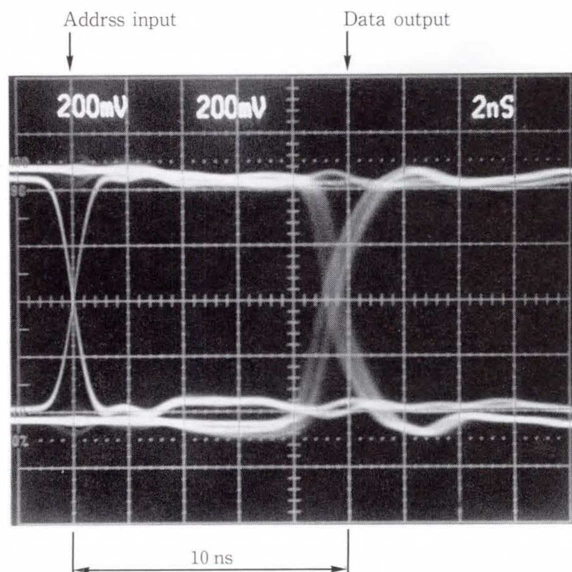


Fig. 12–Switching waveforms.

etc., and an ECL circuit is used in input/output buffer. Using a double-polysilicon structure as a polysilicon-loaded nMOS memory cell, enables a fine memory cell size of 66.6 μm^2 to be obtained. The photograph of the memory cell is shown in Fig. 11.

The switching waveform in Fig. 12 shows that access time is 10 ns with a power dissipation of 500 mW at 80 MHz. The characteristics of this SRAM are summarized in Table 4.

Table 4. Characteristics of 256-Kbit SRAM

Item	Specification
Address access time	10 ns
Write pulse width	5 ns
Power dissipation	700 mW at 80 MHz
Power supply	−5.2 V
I/O level	ECL 10K
Organization	256 Kword x 1 bit
Redundancy	4 rows, 8 columns
Cell size	66.6 μm^2
Chip size	9.36 x 4.46 mm^2

5. Conclusion

A high-speed BiCMOS process technology, consisting of a bipolar process technology using a polysilicon emitter and a CMOS process technology using 1.0 μm-rule, has been developed. The high-speed characteristics of the BiCMOS were obtained, as the cutoff frequency (f_T) of the bipolar npn transistor is 6 GHz and the propagation delay (t_{pd}) of the CMOS gate is 0.5 ns. The high-performance of conventional bipolar device and CMOS device is also maintained.

When applied to a 2 000-gate gate array, a speed about twice that of a CMOS is obtained, as the propagation delay (t_{pd}) is 0.8 ns in a 2-input NAND gate with standard load capacitance, and the power dissipation is 0.25 mW/gate, nearly the same as that of the CMOS. When applied to a 256-Kbit SRAM, an access time of 10 ns and power dissipation of 500 mW are obtained.

In the present BiCMOS process, further improvement in the characteristics of both bipolar transistor and MOS transistor can be achieved. A Shallower base layer and source/drain layer can be made to increase the cutoff frequency and transcondactance, provided a lower temperature process is developed.

Reference

1) Yamauchi, T., Wakui, Y., Inayoshi, K., Tsuchiya, C., and Tokuriki, M.: 20V BiCMOS Technology with Polysilicon Emitter Structure. 1987 Electro-

chem. Soc., Spring Meet. Abstract, 286, pp. 419-420.

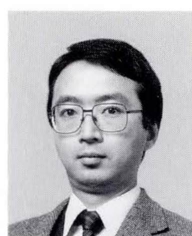
2) Tsuchiya, C., Ono, A., Tamada, H., Yamauchi, T., Usui, Y., and Oshio, U: A BI/CMOS Analog Master Chip with Versatile Macro Cell. 1987 Electrochem. Soc., Spring Meet. Abstract, 274, pp. 339-400.
3) Ikeda, T., Nagano, T., Momma, N., Miyata, K., Higuchi, H., Odaka, M., and Ogiue, K.: Advanced BiCMOS Technology for High Speed VLSI. 1986 IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., pp. 408-411.
4) Iwai, H., Sasaki, G., Niitsu, Y., Norishima, M., Sugimoto, Y., and Kanzaki, K.: 0.8 μm BiCMOS Technology with High f_T Ion-Implanted Emitter Bipolar Transistor. 1987 IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., pp. 28-31.
5) Fukushi, I., Okajima, Y., Maki, Y., Ishii, Y., Nomura, O., Toyoda, K., Yamauchi, T., and Fukuma, H.: A 256K ECL RAM with Redundancy. 1988 IEEE Int. Solid-State Circuits Conf. Dig. Tech. Pap., pp. 134-135.
6) Takagi, M., Nakayama, K., Terada, C., and Kamioka, H.: Improvement of Shallow Base Technology by Using a Doped Poly-Silicon Diffusion Source. Suppl. Jpn. Soc. Appl. Phys., **42**, pp. 101-109 (1973).
7) Watanabe, T., Ikeda, T., Nagano, T., Momma, N., Nishio, Y., Tamba, N., Odaka, M., and Ogiue, K.: High Speed BiCMOS VLSI Technology with Burried Twin Well Structure. 1985 IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet. Tech. Dig., pp. 423-426.
8) Okajima, Y., Toyoda, K., Awaya, T., Tanaka, K., Nakamura, Y.: 64Kb ECL RAM with Redundancy. 1985 IEEE Int. Solid-State Circuits Conf. Dig. Tech. Pap., pp. 48-49.

Hiroyuki Fukuma

Process Engineering Dept.
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electronics Eng.
Tottori University 1980
Master of Electronics Eng.
Tottori University 1982
Specializing in Bipolar and BiCMOS Devices

Tsunenori Yamauchi

Process Engineering Dept.
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Nishinippon Institute of Technology 1971
Master of Electronics Eng.
Kyushu Institute of Technology 1974
Specializing in Bipolar and BiCMOS Devices



Yoshinori Okajima

Bipolar Memory IC Design Dept.
Bipolar Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Kyoto University 1981
Specializing in High Density Static RAM Design

UDC 621.382.33:621.7.04

Characteristics of Si HBT with Hydrogenated Micro-Crystalline Si Emitter

● Hiroshi Fujioka ● Kanetake Takasaki (Manuscript received June 20, 1988)

An npn Si HBT has been fabricated using hydrogenated micro-crystalline Si as a wide gap emitter. It shows much higher common emitter current gain than a conventional homojunction transistor. The measured common emitter current gains of the fabricated HBTs having intrinsic base sheet resistance of 14 kΩ/□ and 95 Ω/□ are 1 500 and 18, respectively. The present HBT can perform normal operation even at liquid nitrogen temperature.

1. Introduction

Heterojunction bipolar transistors (HBTs) have attracted much attention in recent years because of their great potential for future high-speed digital and microwave circuit applications. A great advantage of HBTs is their low base resistance, using a heavily doped base which does not reduce the current gain. In the HBT structure, the minority carrier back injection from the base to a wide gap emitter can be strongly suppressed because of a large energy barrier in the valence band[1].

An additional advantage of the hetero-emitter lies in its low-temperature operation[2]. Low-temperature operation of bipolar devices is very attractive because it improves transconductance and reduces interconnection delay. Most Si homojunction bipolar devices, however, suffer serious degradation in current gain at liquid nitrogen temperature (LNT). The current gain drop-off in Si homojunction bipolar devices is currently thought to be mainly due to shrinkage of the band gap in heavily doped emitters. Even if the degradation in current gain could be eliminated, carrier freezeout would reduce the speed. HBT, on the other hand, is considered to be suitable for low-temperature operation because it has a wide gap emitter and heavily doped base.

Several groups working in the Si device field have fabricated Si HBTs using wide-gap materials such as SIPOS, a-Si:H and a-SiC:H[3)-6)]. Although they have obtained very interesting results in current gain improvement, these materials are unsuitable for emitters of scaled high-speed LSIs because of their high resistivity. The authors tried to use phosphorous-doped hydrogenated micro-crystalline Si (μc-Si:H) as a wide gap emitter with low resistivity[7]. The μc-Si:H, which is a mixture of hydrogenated amorphous and micro-crystalline phases, has a low resistivity and a wide band gap[8),9)].

This paper describes the characteristics of a Si HBT with a μc-Si:H emitter at room temperature and liquid nitrogen temperature (LNT).

2. Characteristics of μc-Si:H

The phosphorous-doped μc-Si:H film was deposited at a substrate temperature as low as 240 °C to 450 °C in a gaseous mixture of SiH_4, H_2 and PH_3. Figure 1 shows the X-ray diffraction pattern of the (111) peak of the μc-Si:H film. This peak is very broad, showing that this film contains a micro-crystalline phase whose average grain size is about 5 nm. From IR and UV spectra measurements, it is found that this film contains hydrogen and has an optical band gap of 1.5 eV to 1.9 eV.

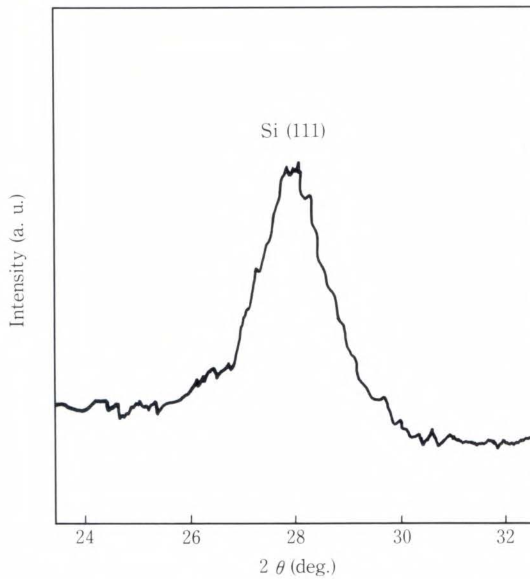


Fig. 1—X-ray diffraction pattern of μc-Si:H film.

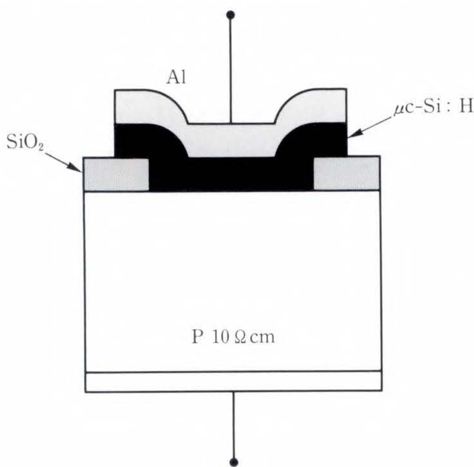


Fig. 2—Cross-section of μc-Si:H/c-Si heterodiode.

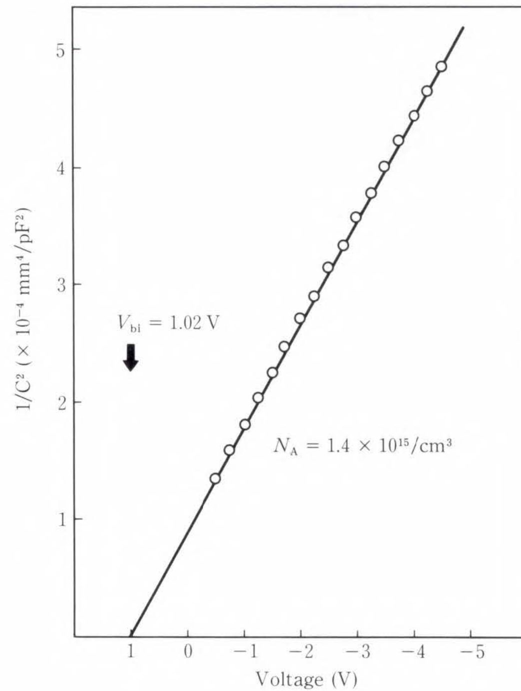


Fig. 3—$1/C^2$-V characteristics of μc-Si:H/c-Si heterodiode.

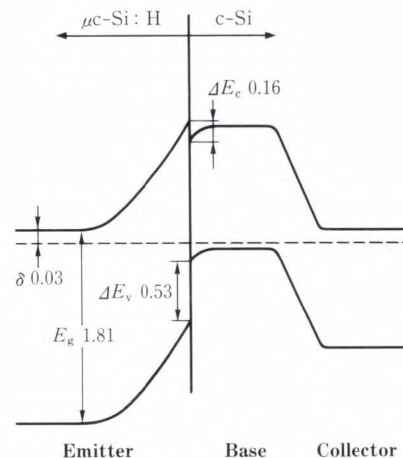


Fig. 4—Energy band structure of the μc-Si:H HBT.

3. Energy band diagram of the heterojunction

Before fabricating HBTs with μc-Si:H, a μc-Si:H/crystalline Si np heterodiode was fabricated to estimate the energy band diagram of the heterojunction. A schematic cross-section of the diode is shown in Fig. 2. Figure 3 shows $1/C^2$-V characteristics of the μc-Si:H/crystalline Si heterodiode. One can see that $1/C^2$ is proportional to V and the slope gives a value close to the substrate impurity concentration. These results indicate that the one-sided step junction model fits this diode well, and that a large portion of the depleted layer extends into the p-type crystalline substrate. The energy band diagram of the μc-Si:H HBT can be estimated as shown in Fig. 4 using the built-in potential (1.02 eV) derived from this result, activation energy (0.03 eV) of the conductivity of the μc-Si:H film and optical energy band gap (1.81 eV), which is assumed to be approximately equal to the electrical band gap. As can be

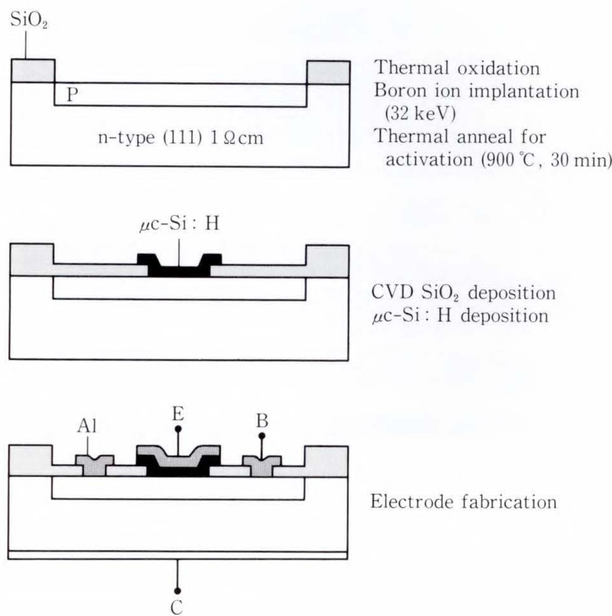


Fig. 5–Schematic diagram of the steps in fabricating μc-Si:H HBT.

Table 1. Base doping densities

Sample	Base implant dose (cm^{-2})	Peak base doping (cm^{-3})	Sub-emitter sheet resistance (Ω/□)
#1	5E12	4.0E17	13.6K
#2	5E13	3.6E18	1.43K
#3	5E14	3.9E19	193
#4	1E15	8.2E19	95.3

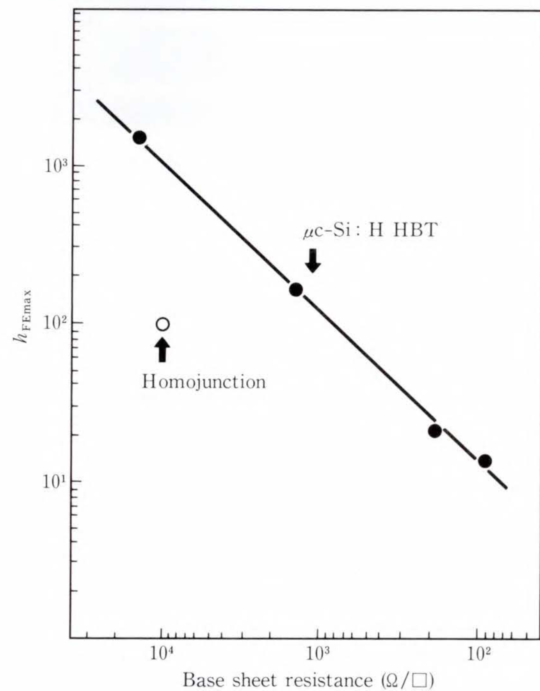


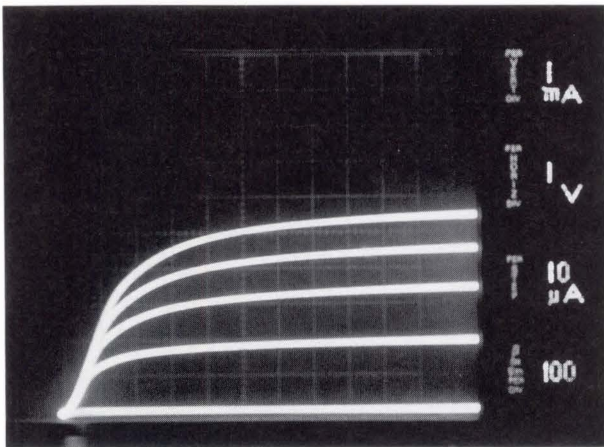
Fig. 6–Maximum common emitter current gain h_{FEmax} of the μc-Si:H HBT as a function of measured sub-emitter base sheet resistance.

seen in this figure, there is a large barrier for holes ΔE_V (0.53 eV) which is expected to reduce the base current.

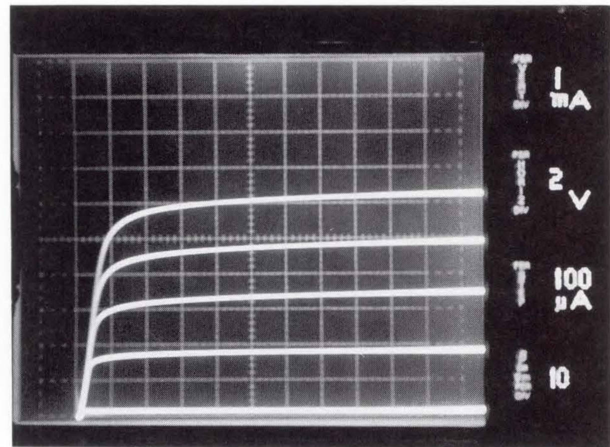
4. Transistor characteristics

A conventional Si bipolar process was used for the HBT fabrication, as represented schematically in Fig. 5. A field oxide was grown on a 1 Ωcm (111) n-Si substrate, and windows were opened in the oxide. The base regions were formed by implanting boron ions at 32 keV with the doping densities of 5×10^{12} cm^2 to 1×10^{15} cm^{-2}. This was followed by annealing at 900°C for 30 min to activate the implanted species. An interlayer dielectric film of SiO_2 was deposited in which emitter windows were opened. The typical emitter size is 5×5 μm^2. Immediately after dipping the wafer in the HF solution, it was put into the reaction chamber of a plasma CVD system to deposit the phosphorous doped μc-Si:H film. The μc-Si:H film, except for the emitter region, was then etched in a NF_3 plasma. The base contact windows were opened in the SiO_2, and the emitter and base electrodes (Al-Si) were deposited by sputtering. The doping densities in the base region of the present devices are summarized in Table 1. The sub-emitter base resistances are also given.

In Fig. 6, the maximum common emitter current gain of the present transistors are plotted as a function of the measured sub-emitter base sheet resistance. As can be seen in this figure, the present HBT has a much higher current gain than a conventional homojunction transistor. The maximum current gain of sample #1 is 1 500 with a base sheet resistance of 14 kΩ/□, and that of sample #4 is 18 while the base sheet resistance is as low as 95 Ω/□. These results indicate that the base resistance of the present HBT can



a) Sample #2: base implant dose 5E13 cm^{-2}



b) Sample #4: base implant dose 1E15 cm^{-2}

Fig. 7—Common emitter I_c-V_{ce} characteristics.

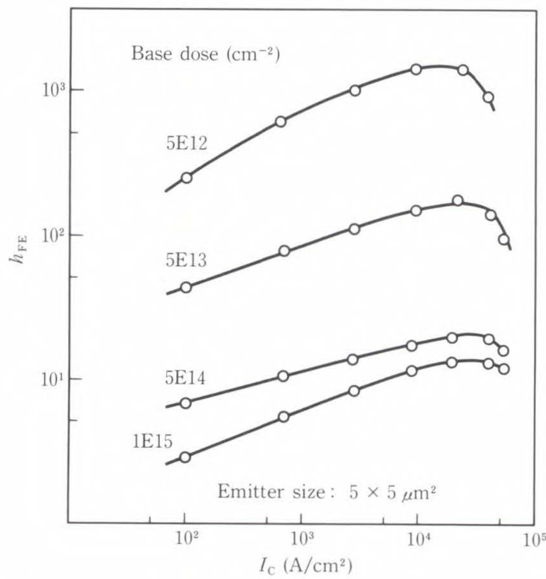


Fig. 8—Common emitter current gain h_{FE} dependence on collector current density of the μc-Si:H HBT's.

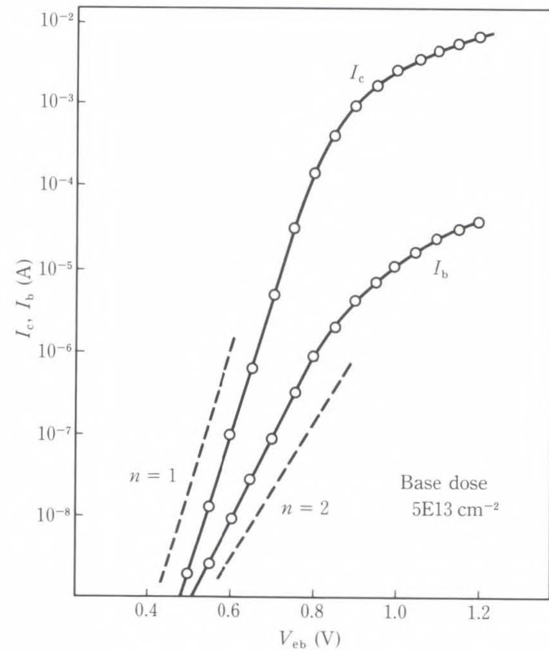


Fig. 9—Characteristics of collector current and base current as a function of V_{eb} for sample #2.

be reduced while maintaining high current gain. Therefore, the μc-Si:H HBT has the potential of surpassing silicon homojunction transistors in speed performance. The common emitter I_c-V_{ce} characteristics of samples #2 and #4 are shown in Figs. 7a) and b), respectively. Satisfactory transistor operations can be clearly observed despite the heavy base dose. The dependence of current gain on collector current is shown in Fig. 8. The maximum current gain is obtained at a collector current as high as 3×10^4 A/cm^{-2}, which is quite satisfactory for scaled high-speed LSIs. Figure 9 shows the characteristics of the collector current I_c and base current I_b as a function of base-emitter voltage. The ideality factors n, for the collector current and base current are about 1.0 and 1.7, respectively. This result indicates

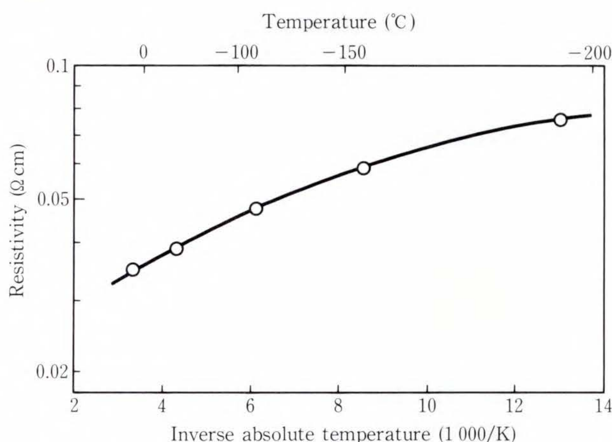


Fig. 10—Resistivity of μc-Si:H film vs. inverse temperature.

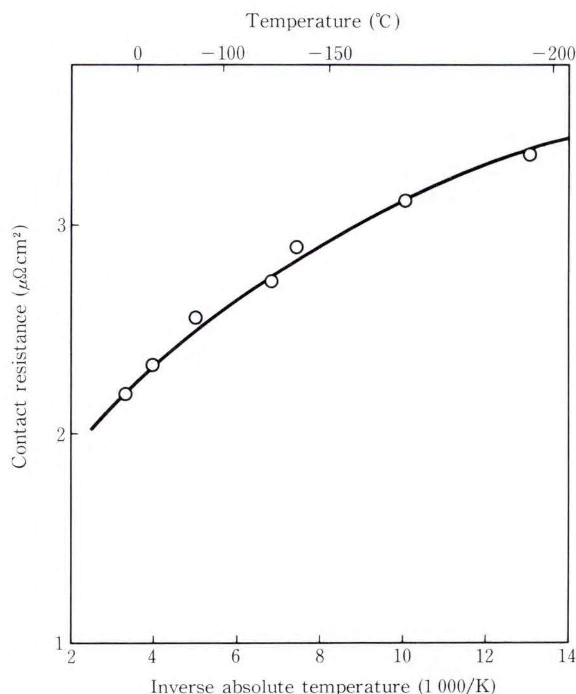
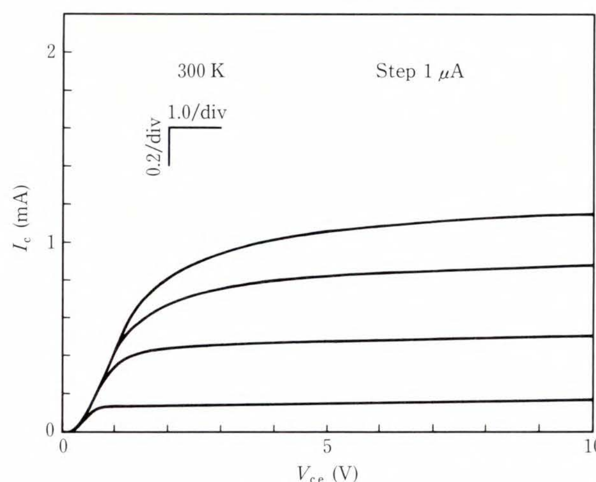
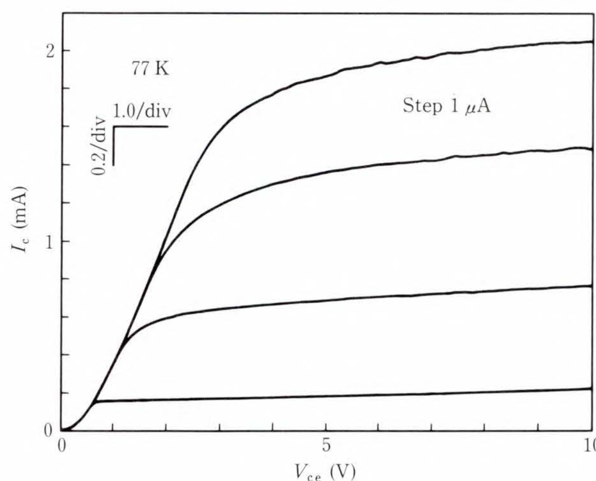


Fig. 11—Contact resistance of μc-Si:H with Al vs. inverse temperature.

that I_c and I_b are dominated by the diffusion current and the recombination current, respectively. The degradation of current gain at a low collector current density, as seen in Fig. 8 is caused by this recombination. The μc-Si:H HBT is expected to have a higher current gain if the interface recombination center can be reduced.



a) Room temperature



b) Liquid nitrogen temperature

Fig. 12—Common emitter I_c-V_{ec} characteristics of the μc-Si:H HBT.

5. Low-temperature operation

Before the transistor characteristics were measured at low temperatures, the increase in the emitter resistance at low temperatures was estimated. Figure 10 shows the temperature dependence of the resistivity of the μc-Si:H film. The resistivity of the μc-Si:H film at LNT is increased only by a factor of two. Hall measurements show that this increase in resistivity is due to a degradation in electron mobility. Figure 11 shows the temperature dependence of the contact resistance of the μc-Si:H with Al-Si. The contact resistance is increased by less than a

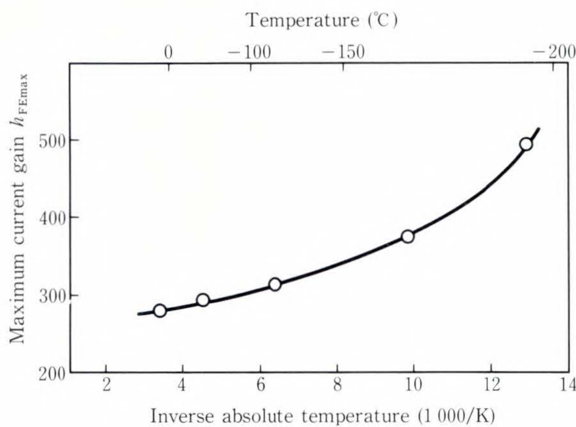


Fig. 13—Maximum current gain of the μc-Si:H HBT vs. inverse temperature.

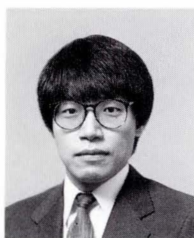
factor of two. These results indicate that the increase in the emitter resistance of the present HBT is expected to be small. The base resistance of the measured sample is about 5.0 kΩ/□. Figure 12 shows the I_c-V_{ce} characteristics of the μc-Si:H HBT at room temperature and LNT. Note that the μc-Si:H HBT operates normally even at LNT. The variation of the maximum common emitter current gain with temperature for the present HBT is shown in Fig. 13. The temperature dependence of the maximum current gain for the present HBT is much smaller than what is normally observed in homojunction transistors, in which the gain decreases exponentially with decreasing temperature. This result indicates that hole injection from the base into the emitter is suppressed by the effect of the wide gap emitter. This successful low-temperature operation of the μc-Si:H HBT is expected to be promising for future high-speed bipolar and Bi-CMOS LSIs.

6. Conclusion

An npn Si HBT has been fabricated using μc-Si:H as a wide gap emitter, showing much higher current gain than a conventional homojunction transistor. Therefore, the base resistance of the μc-Si:H HBT can be reduced while maintaining high current gain. Since the μc-Si:H has low resistivity, the μc-Si:H is well suited to scaled high-speed LSI applications. The present HBT can be operated normally at LNT.

References

1) Kroemer, H.: Heterostructure bipolar transistors and integrated circuit. *Proc. IEEE*, **70**, 1, p. 13 (1982).
2) Chand, N., Fischer, R., Henderson, T., Klem, J., Koppand, W., and Morkoc, H.: Temperature dependence of current gain in AlGaAs/GaAs heterojunction bipolar transistors. *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **45**, 10, p. 1086 (1984).
3) Oh-uchi, N., Hayashi, H., Yamamoto, H., and Matsushita, T.: A new silicon heterojunction transistor using the doped SIPOS. IEDM Tech. Dig., 1979, p. 522.
4) Kwark, Y.H., Sinton, R., and Swanson, R.M.: SIPOS heterojunction contacts to silicon. IEDM Tech. Dig., 1984, p. 742.
5) Ghannam, M., Nijs, J., Mertens, R., and Dekeersmacker, R.: A silicon bipolar transistor with a hydrogenated amorphous emitter. IEDM Tech. Dig., 1984, p. 746.
6) Sakai, K., Furukawa, S., and Rahman, M.M.: A novel structure amorphous SiC:H emitter HBT using low temperature process. IEDM Tech. Dig., 1985, p. 294.
7) Fujioka, H., Ri, S., Takasaki, K., Fujino, K., and Ban, Y.: A high current gain Si HBT with a hydrogenated micro-crystalline Si emitter. IEDM Tech. Deg., 1987, p. 190.
8) Matsuda, A.: Formation kinetics and control of microcrystallinity in μc-Si:H from glow discharge plasma. J. Non-Cryst. Solids, 50/60, p. 767 (1983).
9) Matsuura, H., Okuno, T., Okusi, H., and Tanaka, K.: Electrical properties of n-amorphous/p-crystalline silicon heterojunctions. *J. Appl. Phys.*, **55**, p. 1012 (1984).



Hiroshi Fujioka
Technology Development Dept.
Advanced Technology Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Industrial Chemistry Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1984
Specializing in IC Process Engineering

Kanetake Takasaki
Technology Development Dept.
Advanced Technology Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Science
Ohsaka University 1973
Dr. of Applied Physics
The University of Tokyo 1978
Specializing in IC Process Engineering

UDC 621.382.32:621.7.04

Application of EB-Lithography for Fabrication of Submicron-Gate-MOSFETs

• Shuzo Ohshio • Tetsuo Izawa *(Manuscript received June 20, 1988)*

The characteristics and the proximity effect of resist in electron-beam direct-writing was studied to form submicron patterns. MOSFETs were obtained with an effective channel length down to about L_{eff} = 0.32 μm. The transistors fabricated using this technique operate well without punch-through. By evaluating the dispersion of many transistors, it was found that there is a strong possibility that devices with a minimum pattern size of 0.2-0.3 μm can be manufactured for practical use.
The influence of the electron-beam direct-writing on the reliability of devices was studied and it was confirmed that this method is sufficiently reliable when used for gate-electrode formation.

1. Introduction

The scale of integrated circuits (ICs) has been rapidly increasing, and today, the 64M-bit DRAM is attracting considerable attention. A very wide range of technologies is required to improve the scale of integration. An integrated circuit does not simply involve the integration of devices but can also mean the integration of technologies. Lithography is an indispensable part of IC manufacture.

Until today, the pattern delineation has depended entirely on optical lithography. However, as integration increases and submicron patterns are required, we are approaching the limit of optical lithography. Lithographies using electron beam (EB) or X-rays have been developed to replace optical lithography. Since the EB can be finely focused and positioned, EB direct-writing technology (in which patterns are directly drawn on the wafer without masking) is the most reliable submicron-pattern formation technique available.

However, a highly accurate submicron pattern may not be guaranteed even with the EB direct writing. There are many factors that influence the pattern accuracy. The characteristics of resist materials play an especially important role. The resolution of negative resists is degraded by post-polymerization effects, in which cross-linking continues and the dimensions of patterns change even after EB irradiation. The proximity effect, caused by electrons reflecting back off the substrate, is also a problem. Furthermore, a high dry etching resistivity is also required to transfer a pattern to the underlying materials with high precision. In this work, these problems were studied, and as a result, highly accurate patterns have been achieved. These patterns were achieved by selecting single-layer chloromethylated polystyrene (CMS) as a resist, by optimizing the molecular weight of the resist, and by correcting the proximity effect.

A transistor is the most important element of an integrated circuit, and as integration increases, its dimensions are being reduced. The physics of a MOSFET change as its dimensions are reduced. A submicron MOSFET

FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, 4, pp. 398-407 (December 1988)

shows unique characteristics. Therefore, it is important to know the behavior of submicron devices made with high dimensional precision, which is not attainable by conventional optical lithography.

For this reason, MOSFETs with fine polysilicon gates were fabricated by EB direct wiring, and the influences of the lithography precision on the uniformity of electric characteristics of the MOSFETs were evaluated. The long-term reliability of the devices irradiated by an electron-beam and the behavior of devices in the deep submicron region of less than 0.5 μm were also evaluated.

Table 1. Properties and characteristics of CMS at 20 kV

M_w	M_w/ M_n	Chloro-methyl-ation ratio (%)	Sensitivity ($\mu C/cm^2$)		γ-value	Resolu-tion (μm)
			D_0	D_{50}		
53 000	< 1.08	≃ 52	0.8	1.8	1.5	2.1
13 000			9.0	12.0	4.1	1.5
7 500			14.0	17.5	4.7	1.0

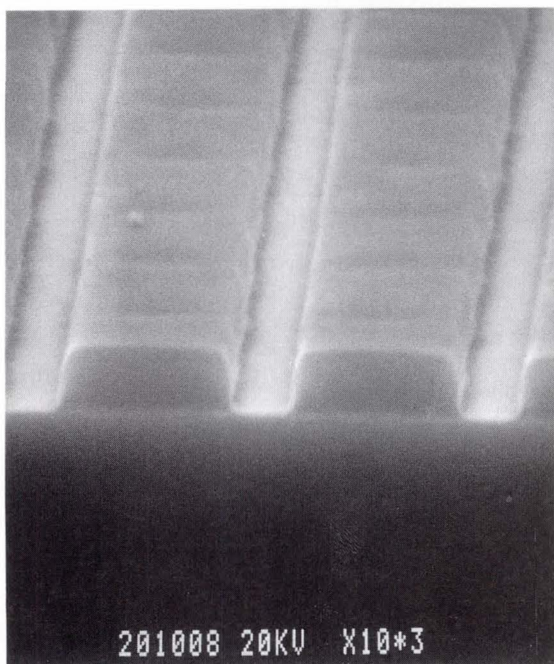
M_w : Weight average molecular weight
M_n : Number average molecular weight
D_0 : Critical dose of gelation
D_{50} : Dose at which a half the initial thickness remains
γ : $\gamma = 1/2 \quad \log (D_{50}/D_0)^{-1}$

2. Fabrication process for submicron MOSFET

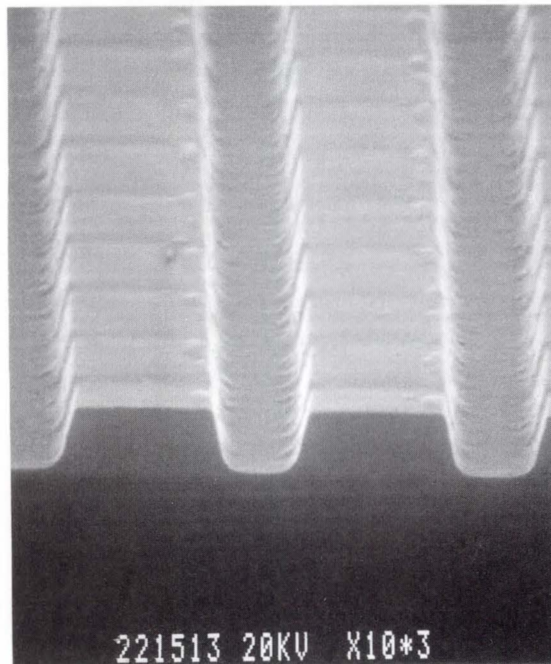
2.1 Electron beam resist

Chloromethylated polystyrene (CMS)[1)] is well known as a dry etching-resistant negative resist free from post-polymerization. TOSOH CMS-EX is a high-sensitivity resist and CMS-EXR is used for high resolution. As it is impossible to form a submicron pattern using these resists, a resist of higher resolution is required. Generally, negative EB resists show that resolution increases with decreasing molecular weight. Therefore the molecular weight of CMS was studied in regard to the formation of quarter-micron patterns.

Table 1 shows the properties and characteristics of the three types of CMS evaluated in this paper. The resolution represents the mini-



a) 10-μm wide space, M_w: 7 500



b) 1.5-μm wide space, M_w: 13 000

Fig. 1—SEM photograph of 3.0-μm wide line of CMS.

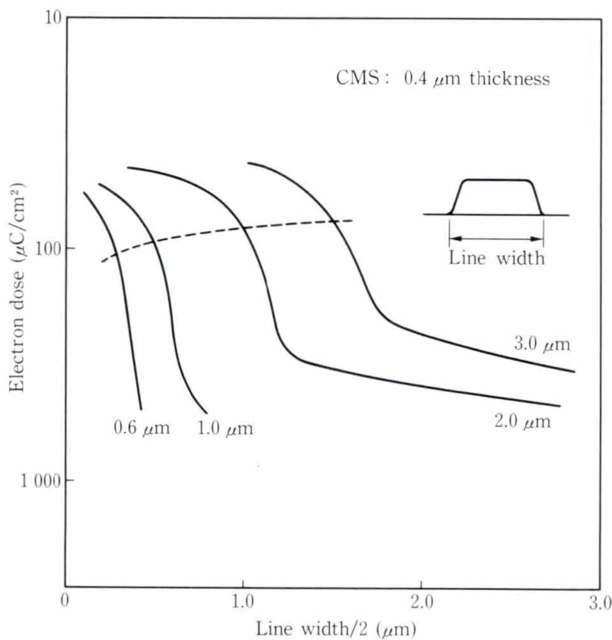


Fig. 2—Exposure intensity curves of 0.4-μm thick CMS for various designed widths.

mum width achieved between the 3-μm wide lines. The initial resist was 1.2 μm thick and 90 percent remained after development. The sensitivity decreases as the molecular weight decreases, but the γ-value shows that the resolution increases. Figure 1 shows the SEM photographs of the narrowest space and shows the 3-μm wide lines using molecular weights of 7 500 and 13 000. Figure 1 shows that lowering the molecular weight improves the resolution. However, since an extremely low molecular weight causes poor heat resistance (low T_g) and long exposure time (large D_0), a CMS having a molecular weight of 7 500 was used in the following experiments.

2.2 Correction of the proximity effect

The proximity effect is a serious problem in electron beam lithography. Incident electrons are scattered on the resist and substrate. Some electrons penetrate the substrate through the resist, and are then scattered back onto the resist.

Consequently, the resist is exposed both by incident electrons and by backscattered electrons. If patterns are close together, the

Table 2. Correction parameters for CMS

Thickness (μm)	Acceleration energy (kV)	Substrate materials	Parameters		
			A	B	C
0.4	30	Si	0.16	0.001 4	3.500
1.2	30	Si	0.26	0.005	3.500

resist is also exposed to backscattered electrons from other patterns. This phenomenon is called the proximity effect and causes a degeneration of pattern accuracy. To correct this problem, it is necessary to improve the accuracy.

T.H.P. Chang[2] has reported that the exposure intensity distribution (EID) can be closely approximated by the sum of two Gaussian distributions.

In this experiment, the EID was expressed as follows:

$$f(r) = \exp\left\{-(r/A)^2\right\} + B\exp\left\{-(r/C)^2\right\} \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots (1)$$

The first term represents the effect of the incident primary beam and the second is that of backscattered electrons. Parameter A represents the horizontal spread of an incident primary beam, B represents the intensity ratio of two Gaussian distributions, C represents the horizontal spread of backscattered electrons, and r represents the distance from the center of the incident beam.

These parameters depend on the acceleration voltage of the electron beam, resist and substrate materials, resist thickness, and the development conditions.

In order to obtain these parameters, a 0.4-μm or 1.0-μm CMS was spin-coated onto silicon substrates. The resist was then exposed at an acceleration voltage of 30 keV. Patterns 20 μm long and 0.6, 1.0, 2.0 and 3.0 μm wide were exposed on each wafer with a dosage ranging of 10-1 000 μC/cm². Figure 2 shows four exposure intensity curves for the 0.4-μm thick resist. The term $f(r)$ in Equation (1) expresses an EID for a small spot beam. EIDs for various patterns are obtained by integrating $f(r)$ with the irradiated patterns as $F(R) = \iint f(r)\,dx \times dy$[3] where R is the distance from

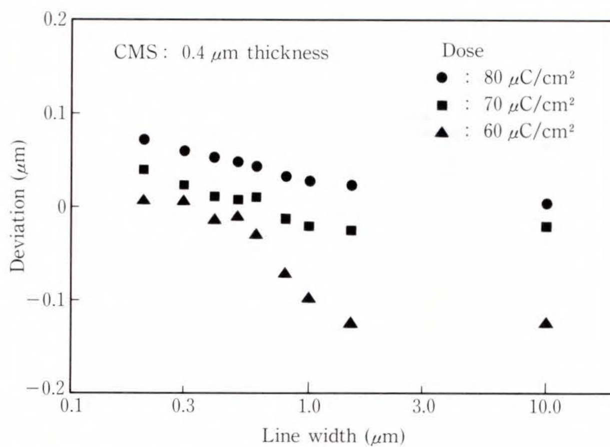


Fig. 3—Deviations of developed resist width as a function of designed width.

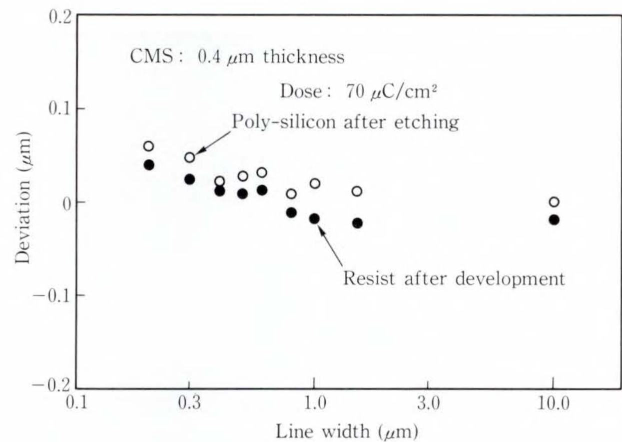


Fig. 4—Deviations of developed resist width and etched polysilicon film width as a function of designed width.

the center of the irradiated patterns. Parameters A, B, and C were determined by matching the $F(R)$s to the measured exposure intensity curves shown in Fig. 2. Table 2 shows the results obtained by this method.

In Table 2, parameters A and B decrease with decreasing resist thickness. A small value of A indicates a small horizontal spread of front scattering at the resist-substrate interface. A small value of B indicates that the exposure was performed by incident electrons rather than backscattered electrons. Therefore, reducing the resist thickness is an effective way to improve resolution.

Y. Machida et al.[3] developed a proximity effect correction which had two modes. One correction was for the dose and the other was to correct the pattern dimensions. In this experiment, the correction method was applied to submicron-gate patterns. The dose and dimension of each pattern were calculated using the values of parameters A, B, and C obtained above.

The fabrication of small gate patterns using a 0.4-μm thick CMS is described below. After coating, the resist was prebaked for 100 s at 80 °C on a hotplate. The resist was developed by a drip method using a solution of 1 part of isoamil acetate to nine parts ethyl cellosolve as a developer and using isopropyl alcohol as a rinse.

Figure 3 shows the deviation from the designed dimensions for line patterns down to 0.2-μm wide. The doses shown in the figure are basic exposure doses. The doses for large patterns and the actual exposure doses are determined according to the pattern dimensions and the proximity effect correction. The dashed line in Fig. 2 indicates the doses for various design widths, and shows that a smaller pattern requires a higher dose.

Errors in the formed pattern width were within the range of ±0.04 μm at 7×10^{-5} C/cm² for deisgn dimensions of 0.2 μm to 10 μm. An accurate pattern delineation was achieved using the proximity effect correction. The pattern was measured by a HITACHI S-6000 SEM dimension measuring instrument.

2.3 Submicron gate formation

Polysilicon etching was carried out using a parallel-plate cathode-couple machine.

SF_6 gas was first studied. Then a non-doped 0.4-μm thick polysilicon film was etched using a 1.0-μm thick resist film. In the case of pure SF_6, the selectivity of polysilicon to silicon dioxide is ten or more and that to the resist is three. However, an undercut of about 0.1 μm was observed. In order to eliminate the undercut, C_2ClF_5 was added to the SF_6 to protect the side wall. As a result, the undercut was controlled but the selectivity to the oxides was reduced to four. It was therefore concluded

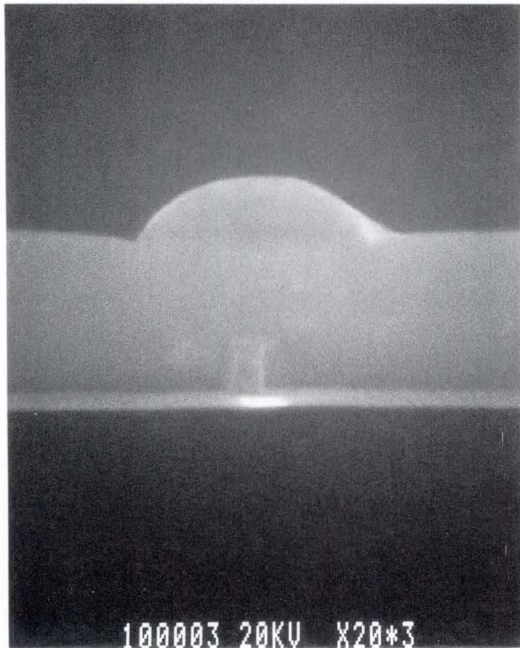


Fig. 5—Cross sectional SEM photograph of 0.25-μm long polysilicon gate (Polysilicon thickness: 400 nm).

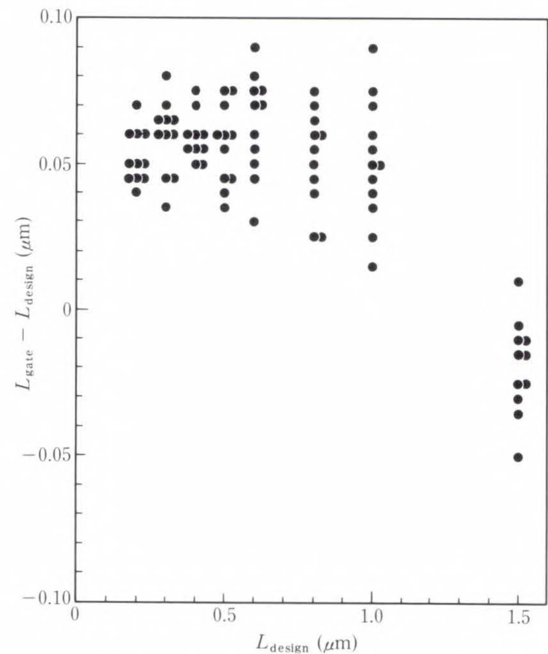


Fig. 6—Variations of gate-length L_{gate} from design length L_{design}.

that it is impossible to form submicron gate electrodes with SF_6.

Br_2 was then studied[4),5)] as an etching gas because it reportedly maintains a high selectivity during etching. The etching conditions were as follows: 250 W RF power, Br_2 gas of 70 sccm and He gas of 70 sccm, pressure of 0.2 Torr, and 10 percent over-etching. A non-doped 0.4-μm thick polysilicon film was etched using a 0.4-μm thick resist film. The selectivity of polysilicon was found to be 30 times that of oxide and 10 times that of the resist. The finished sample showed quite a steep wall without undercut.

Figure 4 shows the error in polysilicon width compared with the resist width. The polysilicon is about 0.05 μm wider than the resist width. This anomalous increase in the width is believed to be caused by the protection of the side wall.

2.4 Device fabrication process

MOSFETs were fabricated using the techniques explained above. These MOSFETs had polysilicon gate electrodes about 0.25 μm to 20 μm in length. Electron-beam direct writing was used only for the gate pattern delineation, while conventional optical lighography was used for the other operations.

The fabrication conditions were as follows: Substrates were p-type silicon wafers of 10 Ω·cm, the channel regions were implanted with boron ions to a dose of 1, 2, or 5 × 10^{12} cm^{-2} at 40 keV, and a 20-nm gate oxide was grown using HCl oxidation. The source and drain were formed by arsenic ions at 3 × 10^{15} cm^{-2} at 70 keV. Figure 5 shows an SEM photograph of a 0.25-μm long gate.

When the polysilicon gate was patterned, gate lengths of eleven transistors were measured along one diameter of a four-inch wafer for each design length. The results are shown in Fig. 6. For a design length of 0.20 μm, the average measured lengths were 0.25 ±0.02 μm. The deviation was within ±10% for each length.

3. Submicron MOSFET

This chapter discusses the characteristics of the MOSFETs fabricated by the lithography mentioned above. Figure 7 shows the I_D-V_D characteristics of a device with a channel doping

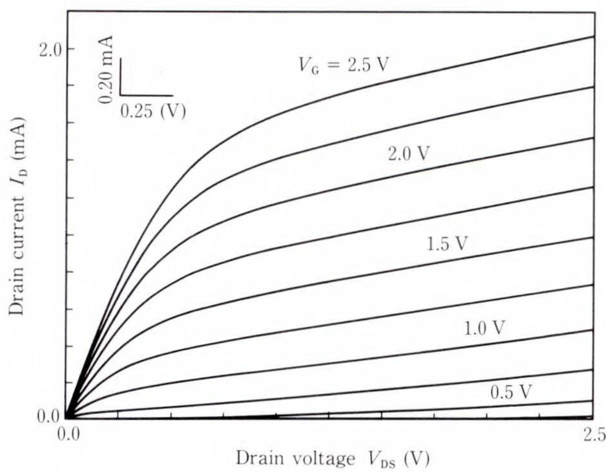


Fig. 7—I_D-V_D characteristics of an MOSFET of L_{eff} = 0.32 μm (L_{design} = 0.3 μm, channel-doping: boron, 5 x 10^{12} cm^{-2}).

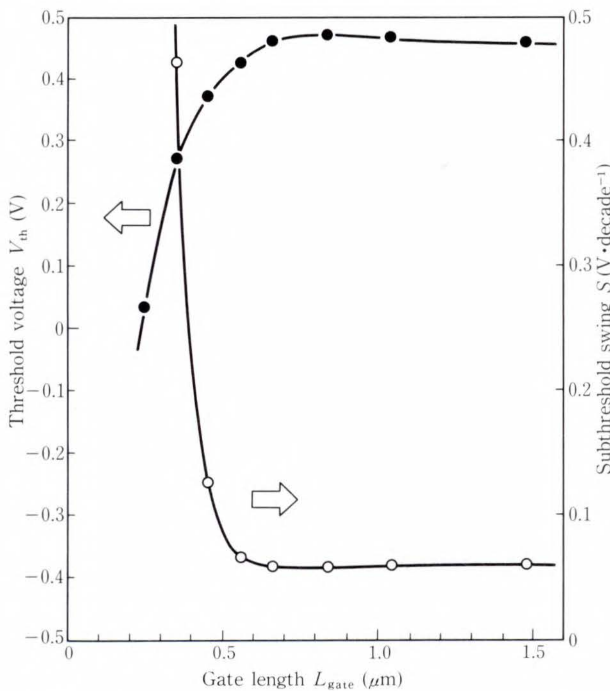


Fig. 8—Threshold voltage shifts and subthreshold swing shifts as short channel effects.

of 5 x 10^{12} cm^{-2} and L_{eff} of 0.32 μm. No punch-through characteristics were observed and operation was stable.

3.1 Short-channel effect

When the channel length of MOSFETs is reduced, electric charges in a channel are affected by the fields formed by the gate and by the fields formed by the source and drain. One of the short-channel effects is a lowering of the threshold voltage, V_{th}. The gate voltage increment required to increase the drain current by a factor of ten in a weakly inverted state with a gate voltage less than or equal to the threshold voltage is called the subthreshold swing, (S). S increases as the channel width decreases. Figure 8 shows the threshold voltage and the subthreshold swing of devices with a channel doping up to 1 x 10^{12} cm^{-2}. The threshold voltage was determined by extrapolating the I_D-V_G characteristics in a linear region with V_D = 0.1 V. The subthreshold swing S was measured with V_D = 3 V. It can be seen that V_{th} decreases and S increases as the gate length is reduced below 0.6 μm. The decrease in the threshold voltage and the increase in the subthreshold swing can be reduced by increasing the substrate concentration of impurities or by reducing the gate oxide thickness according to the scaling rule. However, since the device suffers lower drain-breakdown voltage, increased substrate-bias effect and lower reliability of the gate insulator, practical devices should be operated under conditions in which short-channel effects are minimized. The accuracy of the threshold voltage must be assured by precise control of the gate length. Dispersions of the gate length of one chip (8 x 8 mm^2) and of chips on a wafer were studied for the devices represented in Fig. 8. The results are summarized in Table 3.

Table 3. Variations of threshold voltage

Gate length	Threshold voltage		
Designed (measured) (μm)	Mean (V)	σ in a chip (V)	σ in a wafer (V)
10 (–)	0.456	0.001	0.018
0.4 (0.46)	0.369	0.006	0.023
0.3 (0.36)	0.263	0.008	0.061
0.2 (0.25)	0.043	0.023	0.130

The standard deviations of a chip near the center of a wafer were obtained for 20 transistors. The standard deviations were obtained for 1 000 to 1 700 transistors random-

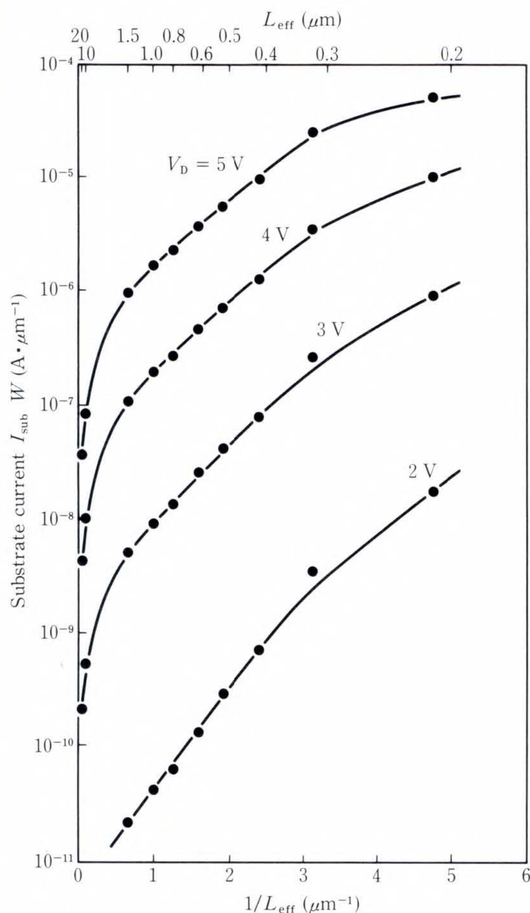


Fig. 9—Channel length dependence of substrate current.

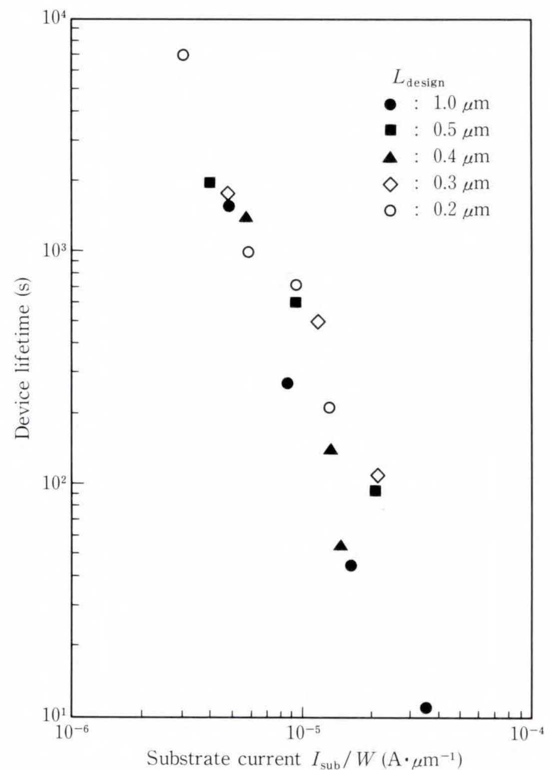


Fig. 10—Device life as a function of substrate current ($\tau \equiv t\ \Delta g_m/g_{m0}$ = 10 percent, $V_G = 1/2\ V_D$).

ly positioned over a four-inch wafer. The standard deviation for a V_{th} of 61 mV in a wafer of 0.3-μm devices is about 0.03 μm, as shown in Fig. 8. This is nearly equal to the previous figure of ±0.02 μm for eleven samples. Therefore, if the tolerable precision of the gate length is ten percent, the present technology can be applied to device fabrication at a level of 0.2 μm or 0.3 μm.

3.2 Hot carrier effect

This section discusses the problem of high electric fields in a miniaturized device, especially the hot carrier effect. Today, as we enter the era of the submicron device, Drain Avalanche Hot Electrons (DAHCs) generated at the drain edge often cause problems when relative high drain voltages are applied. Electrons having a high energy from a strong electric field in the channel region near the drain collide with lattice atoms and generate electron-hole pairs. Avalanche multiplication occurs when the generated electrons and/or holes create more and more pairs. These particles become hot and penetrate the gate-oxide layers. In order to study device degradation caused by DAHCs, the substrate current is measured in relation to the amount of generated DAHCs. The relationship between the substrate current and the device degradation (e.g. the change in transconductance g_m) has been thoroughly investigated.

From observation, the life of a device τ is represented[6)] by

$$\tau = D\,(I_{sub})^{-\rho}, \qquad (2)$$

where I_{sub} is the substrate current and ρ is a constant of about 3.0 to 3.4. I_{sub} is related to the effective channel length L_{eff}[6)], by

$$I_{sub} = E \exp\,(L_{eff}^{-1}). \qquad (3)$$

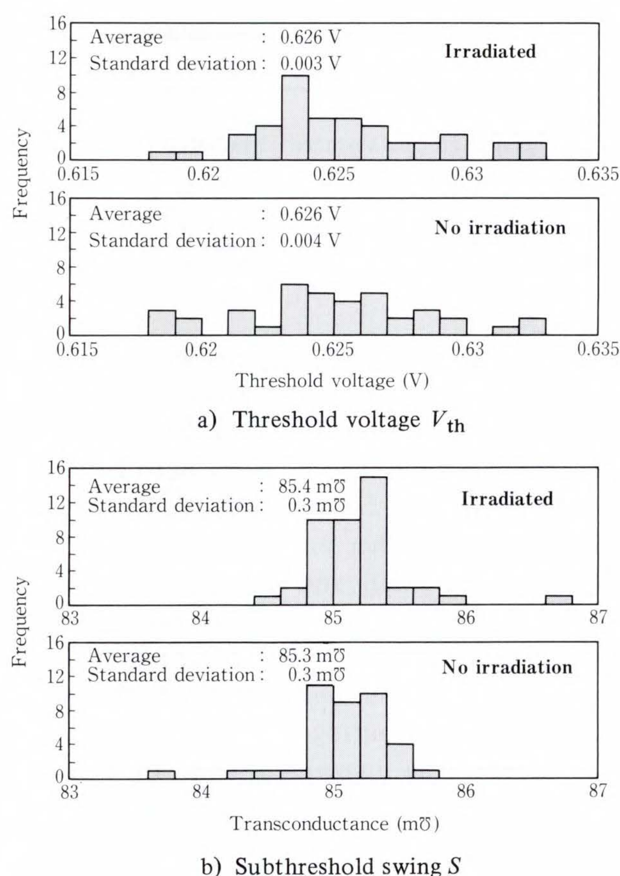
Figures 9 and 10 show the above relationships. In Fig. 10, the life τ is defined as the time

in which the transconductance g_m falls by ten percent. The substrate current was controlled by varying the drain voltage V_D and gate voltage V_G to maintain a condition of $V_G = 1/2\ V_D$. The area near the drain that is damaged by DAHCs is believed to be about 0.1 μm long for a channel length of 0.5 μm to 1.0 μm. If this value does not decrease when the channel length is reduced, the ratio of the damaged area to the entire channel of the transistor increases. Therefore, if the channel length is reduced, the transconductance may deteriorate[6),7)]. However, the channel length did not appear to affect the life of devices even when the channel was 0.2 μm long. Therefore, the authors believe that the size of the damaged area is to some extent proportionally reduced when the channel is shortened, or that degradation of the damaged area governs conductance of the entire device.

Figures 9 and 10 show appropriate supply voltages for miniaturized devices. If a 10-year (3.16×10^8 s) life is required, the supply voltage must be reduced to about 2.5 V for 0.2-μm devices without high-voltage resistant structures such as LDD (Lightly Doped Drain). The maximum voltage is derived from the voltage that yields the maximum permissible substrate current of 10^{-7} A$\cdot\mu$m^{-1}. This current is determined by extrapolating the linear relationship on the log/log graph of life τ verses substrate current I_{sub}. However, it has also been reported[8),9)] that the degradation decreases as the gate-oxide becomes thinner in proportion to the gate length. This relationship requires further study.

3.3 Damage caused by electron beam irradiation

In this study, when the performance of devices fabricated by electron-beam direct writing is appraised, the effects of damage induced by electron-beam irradiation must be evaluated. Irradiation of MOS devices may cause centers which trap electrons or holes in the gate oxide or the silicon-silicon dioxide interface. MOS devices are more susceptible to this damage than bipolar devices because their performance and reliability depend on



a) Threshold voltage V_{th}

b) Subthreshold swing S

Fig. 11—LDD-MOSFETs.

the electrical properties of the gate oxide and the interface. The projected range of irradiated electrons is about 1 μm to 2 μm at 10 keV to 30 keV of accelerated energy, which is usually used in electron-beam exposure. This is a very large spread. Therefore, wherever there is a level in the layer, gate oxides cannot escape exposure to electrons.

The effects of electron irradiation differ with device structures and irradiation conditions. The threshold voltage of MOSFETs is shifted by about minus 1 V to 2 V by 10^{-5} C$\cdot$cm^{-2} of irradiation. However, the change is immediately recovered by high-temperature annealing and no effects on the characteristics of the initial device are found. The annealing effect was confirmed in the following experiment.

The MOSFETs in this experiment were fabricated with optical lithography. Conven-

Table 4. Changes of transconductance caused by DC-stress

	SD (V_D = 6 V)		LDD (V_D = 10 V)	
	Irradiated	No irradiation	Irradiated	No irradiation
Mean	−4.2%	−4.5%	−5.7%	−5.6%
σ	1.2%	1.0%	1.1%	0.7%

(L_{gate} = 0.8 μm, V_G = 1/2 V_D, 1 000 s)

tional single-drain (SD) devices were irradiated just after polysilicon-gate definition, and LDD MOSFETs were irradiated just after the oxide spacer formation. The dose for both structures was 7.5×10^{-5} C·cm^{-2} at 30 keV. To eliminate the effects of other processing, reference chip without irradiation and a sample chip to be irradiated were selected from each adjacent row of chips within a wafer. After ion implantation for source and drain formation, the wafers were annealed in nitrogen at 900 °C for 20 min to activate the implanted ions. In the final process, they were annealed in nitrogen diluted hydrogen for 30 min at 450 °C. The lightly doped regions were formed by a P-implantation of 1.2×10^{13} cm^{-2} at 35 keV, and with a 0.2-μm long spacer. Figure 11a) shows the threshold voltage V_{th}, and Fig. 11b) shows the transconductance g_m of the finished LDD-MOSFETs. As is apparent from these histograms, no significant changes induced by electron beam irradiation were observed for either value.

The influence on hot-carrier immuity for both SD and LDD samples was also studied. For transistors with gates of L_{gate} = 0.8 μm, SD devices were subject to a DC stress of V_D = 6 V and a V_G = 3 V for 1 000 s, and LDD-devices, were subject to V_D = 10 V and V_G = 5 V for 1 000 s. The number of samples used in the test was 80 to 105 for each condition. Changes in transconductance from the initial stage are as shown in Table 4.

No significant difference was found between the SD and LDD devices. Therefore, the authors conclude that there is no adverse effect of electron beam lithography on devices that are annealed at a temperature of 900 °C or more after irradiation.

4. Conclusion

There is the prospect of using the electron-beam direct-writing technique to manufacture devices at a quarter-micron level for practical use. A CMS resist was selected as the electron beam resist because of its high resolution and high dry etching resistance. By optimizing the molecular weight of the resist and using the proximity effect correlation, a MOSFET with a polysilicon gate of 0.25 μm long was successfully fabricated.

Fabricated MOSFETs having effective gate lengths down to L_{eff} = 0.32 μm operate well without the punch-through phenomenon. Influences of electron beam irradiation on the device reliability were evaluated and it was confirmed that electron-beam direct-writing to form gate electrodes will cause no problems provided that an annealing process at a high temperature of 900 °C or more is carried out.

References

1) Imamura, S., and Sugawara, S.: Negative Resist Material to Dry Etching Process (I). Proc. 15 Symp. Semicond. Integrated Circuits Technol., 1978, pp. 24-29.
2) Chang, T.H.P.: Proximity Effect in Electron-Beam Lithography. *J. Vac. Sci. Technol.*, **12**, 6, pp. 1271-1275 (1975).
3) Machida, Y., Furuya, S., and Nakayama, N.: Proximity Effect Correction of Submicron Patterns in Electron Beam Lithography. (in Japanese), IECE, Jpn., Tech. Rep., **SSD83**-183, pp. 41-46 (1984).
4) Mihara, S., Abe, N., Fujino, K., and Ban, Y.: High Rate and Selectivity Trench Etch. (in Japanese), *Simicond. World*, (Japanese ed.), **7**, 2, pp. 40-42 (1988).
5) Nakamura, M., Kurimoto, T., Yano, H., and Yanagida, K.: The Effect of Wafer Temperature on RIE. (in Japanese), IEEJ Papers Tech. Meet. Electron Devices, **EDD-88**-43, pp. 17-26 (1988).
6) Takeda, E.: Hot-Carrier and Wear-Out Phenomena in Submicron VLSIs. Digest Tech. Papers 1985 Symp. VLSI Technol., 1985, pp. 2-5.
7) Chung, J., Jeng, M.-C., Moon, J.E., Wu, A.T., Chan, T.Y., Ko, P.K., and Hu, C.: Deep-Submicrometer MOS Devices Fabrication Using a Photoresist-Ashing Technique. *IEEE Electron Devices Lett.*, **EDL-9**, pp. 186-188 (1988).
8) Yoshida, M., Tohyama, D., Maeguchi, K., and

Kanzaki, K.: Increase of Resistance to Hot Carriers in Thin Oxide MOSFETs. Tech. Digest 1985 Int. Electron Devices Meet., 1985, pp. 254-257.

9) Toyoshima, Y., Matsuoka, F., Hayashida, H., Iwai, H., and Kanzaki, K.: A Study on Gate Thickness Dependence of Hot Carrier Induced Degradation for n-MOSFETs. Digest Tech. Papers 1988 Symp. VLSI Technol., 1988, pp. 15-16.

Shuzo Ohshio
Device Development Dept.
Advanced Technology Div.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Fujitsu Technical Institute 1978
Specializing in Semiconductor Process

Tetsuo Izawa
Device Development Dept.
Advanced Technology Div.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Physics
University of Tsukuba 1983
Specializing in
Semiconductor Devices

UDC 621.382.2:621.7.04

SOI-Device on Bonded Wafer

● Hiroshi Gotou ● Yoshihiro Arimoto ● Masashi Ozeki ● Kazunori Imaoka

The bonded wafer technique to fabricate SOI (Silicon On Insulator) devices has been extensively studied. This technique has been successfully applied to fabrication of a 64-Kbit SOI-DRAM, which exhibits a low soft error rate up to 1/7 that of conventional DRAMs, depending on the substrate thickness of the bonded wafer. It was found that the soft error depended on the base substrate bias voltage.
It is also shown that the bonded wafer technique can solve the latchup problem in CMOS, and is advantageous when used in the fabrication of SOI bipolar devices. Two new types of bipolar transistor are proposed.

1. Introduction

Research and development of Silicon On Insulator (SOI) devices has a long history. This research has shown that SOI devices have many advantages, such as realizing extremely high-speed devices[1)] and latchup-free CMOS. Also, soft errors caused by radioactive rays occur less often in these devices[2)] and they exhibit a high breakdown voltage[3)].

However, these features have only been utilized in integrated circuits for special applications, and the use of SOI-LSI devices has not been widespread. This is because no wafers can satisfy the required conditions. To obtain SOI-LSI devices, a SOI wafer having the same quality as a conventional wafer is required. The wafer must also be economical for the use of SOI-LSI devices to become widespread. Moreover, it is desirable to use conventional LSI process technology. If these conditions were satisfied, SOI-LSI devices could easily be realized.

The authors believe that wafer bonding, SIMOX, and FIPOS are candidates for practical use in manufacturing SOI-LSI devices. Of these methods, wafer bonding is the most suitable to produce wafers for general-purpose devices because bonded wafers have the following features:

1) High-quality wafers as good as conventional wafers can be obtained.
2) The thickness of the buried insulator can be freely selected.
3) The thickness of the active substrate can be freely set.
4) Wafers having the desired resistivity can be used.
5) The conduction type of the base substrate under the buried insulator layer can be selected.
6) The cost of the bonded wafer is about three times that of conventional wafers, but is lower than other types of SOI.

With these features, the bonded wafer has great potential for practical use. To verify its potential, the authors made an SOI wafer using the wafer bonding technique, and this wafer was used to make a 64-Kbit DRAM. The prototype DRAM can write to and read all bits. The soft error rate was the characteristic of the DRAM which improved most of all – almost one order of magnitude compared to bulk wafers. The reason a DRAM was made was because it requires high-quality wafers, and almost all other devices can be produced using the wafers that are used to manufacture DRAMs.

When making a CMOS device, it is important

Table 1: Thickness of substrate

Thickness	Feature
10 μm or less	The soft errors decrease.
5 μm or less	Complete isolation is easily enabled.
1 μm or less	The parasitic capacitance decreases and the speed increases.
0.2 μm or less	The mobility increases[9].

to solve the latchup problem. The authors have shown that complete isolation can be achieved using the bonded SOI wafer enabling latchup-free devices to be made.

BiCMOS demonstrates the potential of SOI devices.

The authors have proposed two types of bipolar transistors having a new structure that uses thin substrates as the new alternative BiCMOS devices. These bipolar transistors use a layer on the buried insulator side induced by an electric field as the collector. This electrically induced layer was made by applying a voltage between the active substrate and the base substrate. The resulting transistors operated satisfactorily, thus opening a new field of application for SOI devices. It was also found that the region near the buried insulator has excellent crystallinity.

2. Manufacturing the bonded SOI wafer

The SOI wafer manufacturing technique using wafer bonding is currently under development, and various manufacturing methods are being developed. These methods can be classified from several points of view as follows[4)-8)]

1) Types of wafers for active substrate
   i) Epitaxial wafer
   ii) Non-epitaxial wafer
2) Types of inter-layer insulators
   i) Doped silicon oxide
   ii) Silicon thermal oxide
   iii) Other than silicon oxide
3) Substrate bonding methods
   i) Annealing
   ii) Mechanical pressing and annealing
   iii) Electric-field pressing and annealing

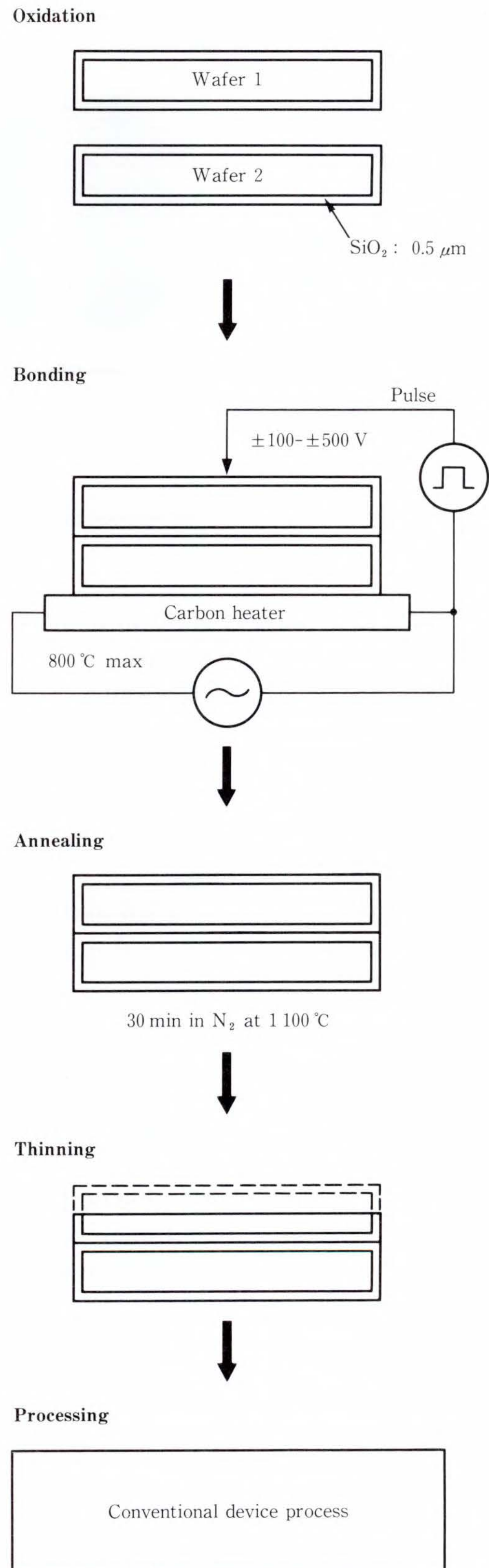


Fig. 1—Wafer fabrication process.

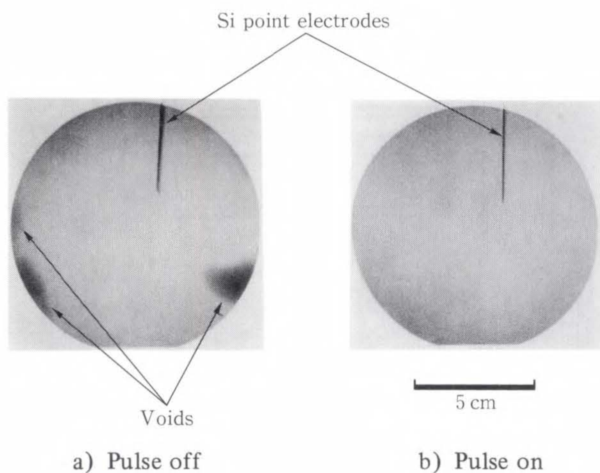


Fig. 2—Electric field effect on bonding.

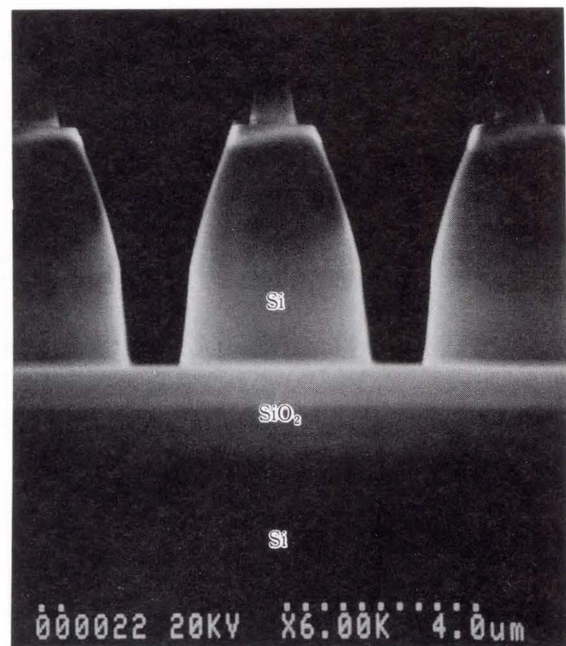


Fig. 3—Silicon pillar on SiO_2 layer.

iv) Pulse-field pressing and annealing

4) Thin layer formation methods
   i) Mechanical-chemical polishing
   ii) Mechanical-chemical polishing after chemical thin-layer formation

The optimum thickness of the active substrate is determined according to the feature of the SOI device to be utilized.

The features can be classified according to the thickness of the active substrate as in Table 1.

At the current state of wafer processing technology, the thin-layer formation method by mechanical-chemical polishing using the conventional wafer is suitable for producing active substrates of 3 μm or more. The thin-layer formation method by chemical etching and mechanical-chemical polishing using the epitaxial wafer as the active substrate is suitable for producing active substrates of 5 μm or less.

The pulse-field assisted bonding method (PAB) developed by the authors is explained below and is illustrated in Fig. 1. Two conventional wafers, or an epitaxial wafer for the active substrate and a conventional wafer for the base substrate are thermally oxidized to form an oxide layer 0.5 μm thick. These wafer surfaces are then bonded using a carbon heater at a reduced pressure atmosphere of 10^{-1} Pa while applying a pulse voltage between the wafers to provide an electrostatic force. The bonding temperature is 800 °C. The amplitude of the pulse voltage is 300 V, its width 100 ms, and its period 500 ms. A pulse voltage is used to prevent the voltage drop caused by the electric breakdown of the inter-layer insulator. A short application of pulses makes it difficult for the electric breakdown to occur. Powerful bonding takes place within a short time immediately after the pulse voltage is applied.

Figure 2 shows how the bonding occurs when the pulse voltage is applied compared to when it is not applied. After bonding, the wafer surfaces are annealed for 30 min at 1 100 °C to increase the bonding strength. When the CZ wafer is used as the active substrate, the SOI wafer is subject to mechanical-chemical polishing. When the epitaxial wafer is used as the active substrate, the layer is chemically thinned and subject to mechanical-chemical polishing.

The macroscopic bonding strength of a wafer produced in this way is 100 kg/cm^2 or more. However, it is extremely difficult to measure the local bonding strength. To evaluate this, 4 x 4 μm Si poles were made on a 7-μm thick active substrate and the poles were washed

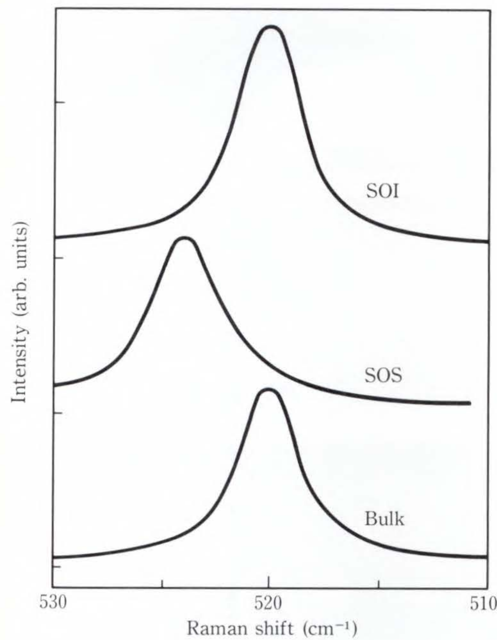


Fig. 4—Raman spectrum for a bonding wafer.

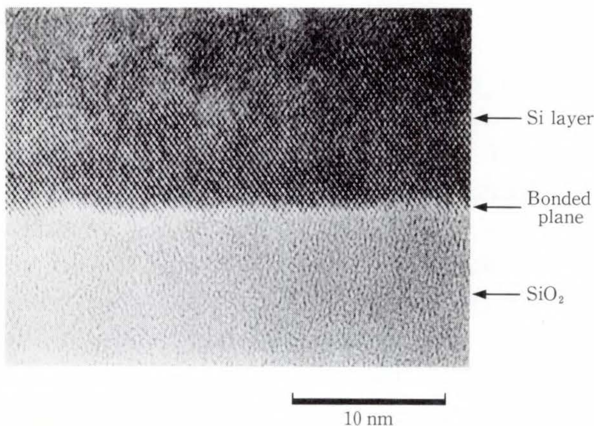


Fig. 5—Cross sectional TEM lattice image.

with water (see Fig. 3). No wafer peeled during this treatment. This shows that the wafer has sufficient bonding strength, even at the microscopic level. Figure 4 shows the residual stress of the active substrate measured by Raman spectroscopy. The residual stress is below the measurement limit. The warpage of the 3-inch to 6-inch SOI wafers was 50 μm or less.

Figure 5 shows a cross-sectional TEM lattice image of the bonded bare silicon substrate and the oxidized silicon substrate bonded by the above method. This image

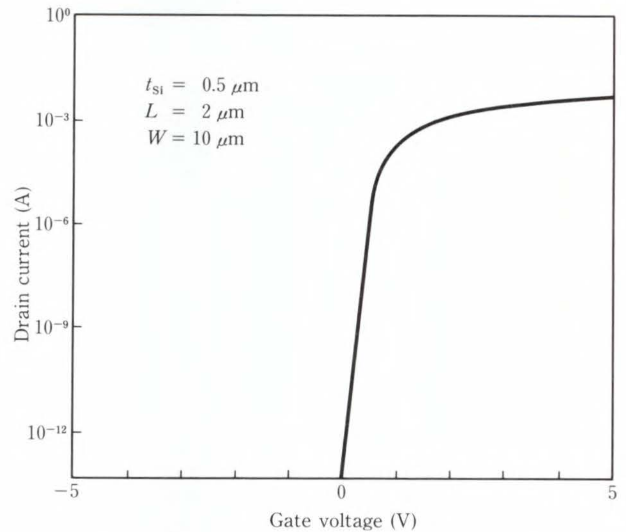


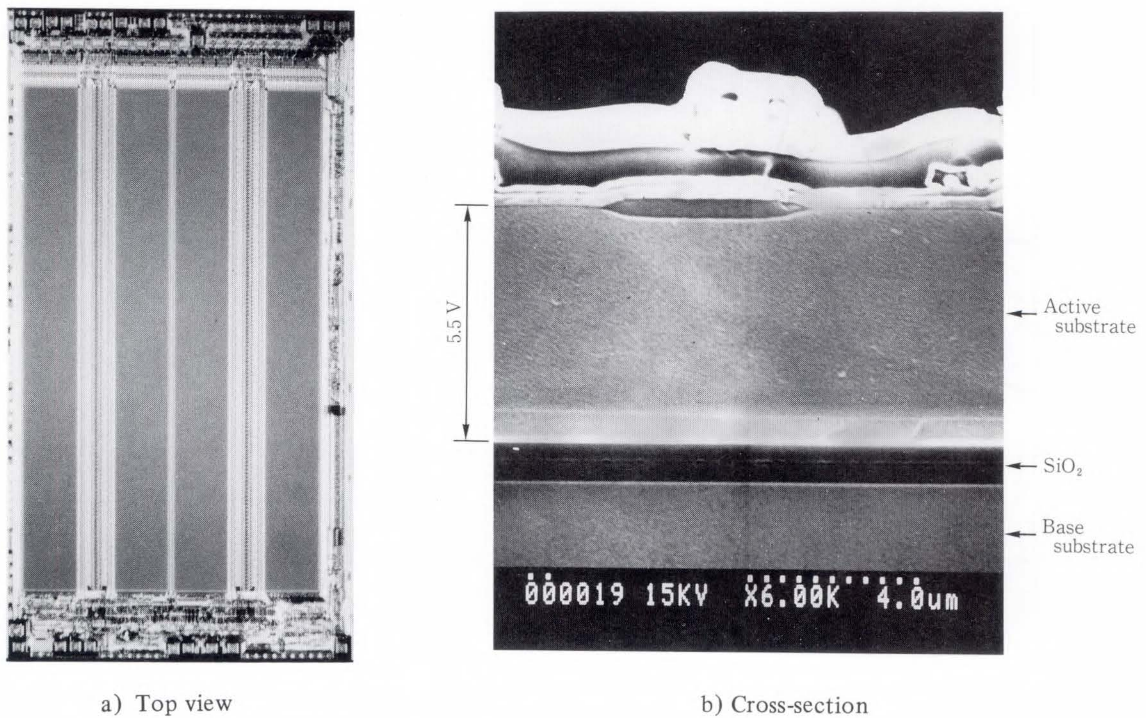
Fig. 6—n-channel MOSFET characteristics.

is of the interface between the bare silicon and oxidized film. This image shows that no crystal defects occurred at this interface, demonstrating that a SOI substrate free of defects up to the interface can be obtained using this bonding method.

3. 64-Kbit SOI-DRAM

Figure 6 shows that the characteristics of a MOSFET made on a bonded SOI wafer are almost the same as those of a MOSFET made on a bulk silicon wafer. These characteristics were satisfactory enough to proceed with the manufacture for LSI devices.

SOI wafers having active substrates 5 μm to 20 μm thick were made using a pair of conventional p-type wafers. A 64-Kbit DRAM was fabricated using the 3-μm rule from these wafers. The resulting SOI-DRAM has operated with all bits. Figure 7 shows the image and a cross-sectional SEM lattice image. The mask patterns and process conditions were the same as those for conventional wafers. No problems occurred throughout the entire process. The DRAM was selected for fabrication because it is very sensitive to crystallinity, thus providing a good means for evaluating the technology. If it is possible to make the DRAM, other devices can also be easily made using this technology.



a) Top view

b) Cross-section

Fig. 7—64-Kbit SOI-DRAM.

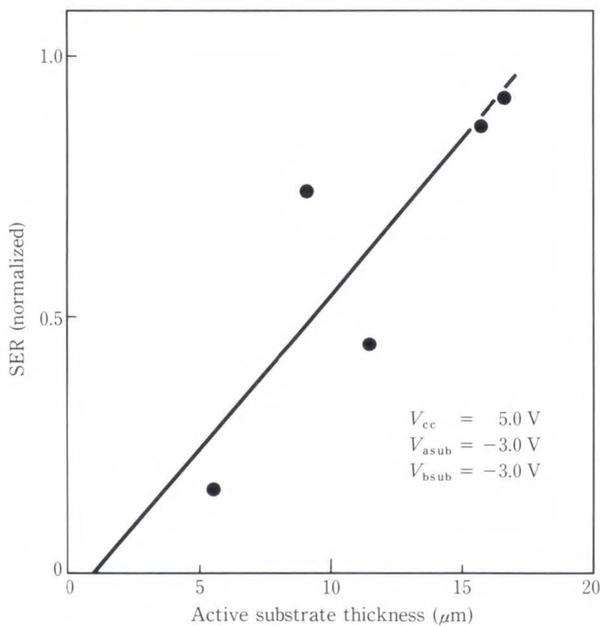


Fig. 8—Substrate thickness dependence of soft errors of 64-Kbit SOI-DRAM.

The access time is about ten percent faster than conventional wafers. This may result from the difference in the substrate bias dependence of the threshold voltage (V_{th}) between a transistor on a conventional wafer and a transistor on a SOI wafer. The SOI-MOSFET has a smaller substrate bias dependence than the conventional MOSFET. Therefore, the value of V_{th} during operation of the MOSFET in the DRAM is smaller for the SOI-DRAM, thus reducing the access time.

When the bit number distribution of the data retention time for multiple DRAM chips was checked, the distribution ratio for less than one second was found to be less than 0.5 percent. This means that the bonded substrate has a quality high enough to produce SOI-LSI devices.

It is very important to reduce the soft errors in the LSI memory.

It is said that most soft errors are caused by alpha-particles resulting from the materials used in the LSI chip. To check the dependency of soft errors on the thickness of the active substrate, alpha-particles generated from americium were applied to the SOI-DRAM. Figure 8 shows the results. The number of soft errors increases as the thickness of the substrate increases. There are 1/7 the soft

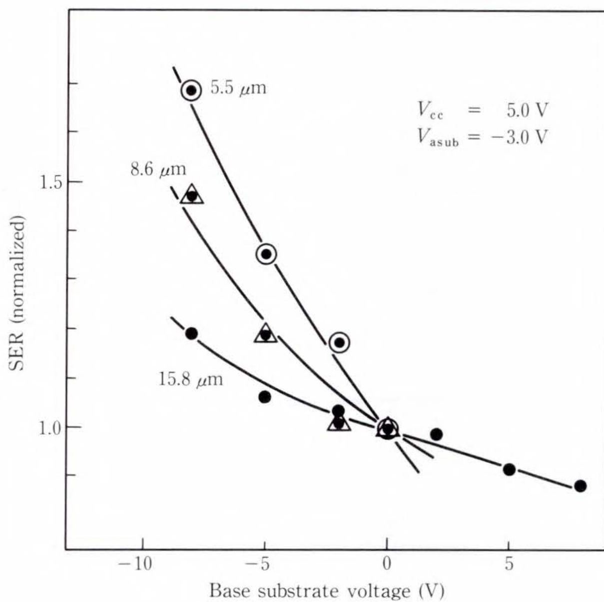


Fig. 9—Substrate bias dependence of soft errors of 64-Kbit DRAM.

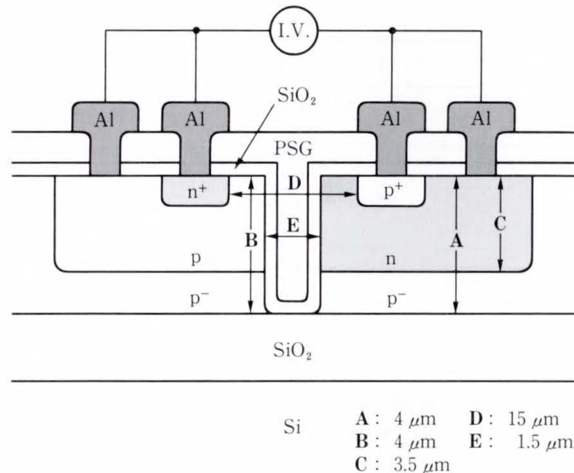


Fig. 10—Schematic cross-section of a thyristor.

errors of a conventional DRAM when the substrate thickness is 5 μm. The number of soft errors is about the same as conventional wafers when the thickness is 20 μm. (The range of movement of the alpha-particles generated from americium in the silicon substrate is up to 20 μm.) Thus, soft errors are reduced when the SOI substrate is 5 μm to 20 μm thick, and the reliability of LSI is also improved.

It was also confirmed that the rate at which soft errors occur can be varied by applying a bias voltage to the base substrate. Figure 9 shows the relationship between soft errors and the base substrate voltage for three different thicknesses. When a negative bias voltage is applied, the soft errors increase. When a positive bias voltage is applied, the soft errors decrease. However, a high positive voltage cannot be applied to reduce the soft errors, because a back channel occurs near the inter-layer insulator of the active substrate. For the p-type SOI substrate, a negative bias voltage is generally applied to prevent the back channel from occurring. However, a nagative bias voltage increases the soft errors.

This dependence is assumed to occur because the band of the active substrate near the inter-layer insulator bends slightly due to the bias voltage of the base substrate. Although this band is only slight, it is considered effective in attracting electrons induced by the alpha-particles toward the insulator, varying the funneling length, and slightly varying the gate threshold voltage of the transistor.

4. Complete isolation

Highly integrated CMOS devices suffer from the latchup problem. This is because complete isolation is extremely difficult to achieve using a bulk silicon wafer. However, complete isolation is enabled when the SOI wafer is used. Therefore, the authors believe that a latchup-free CMOS device can be made.

To verify this, the authors studied the thyristor structure schematically represented in Fig. 10. The p-well and n-well source and drain of this CMOS device are also schematically shown. This circuit was checked for the occurence of the latchup phenomenon. Figure 11 shows the results. It was found that no latchup would occur when isolation was complete. However, if isolation was incomplete, that is, if the trench did not reach the inter-layer insulator, latchup was observed. In this case, several discontinuous points were observed in the voltage-current characteristics as the circuit current increased. This is assumed to be caused by the internal resistance of the

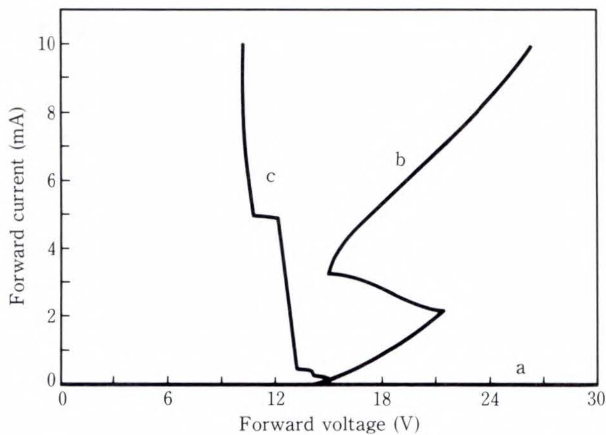


Fig. 11—Latchup characteristics of thyristor in Fig. 10 (distance from the trench bottom to isolation layers: a) 0 μm b) 0.1 μm c) 0.5 μm.)

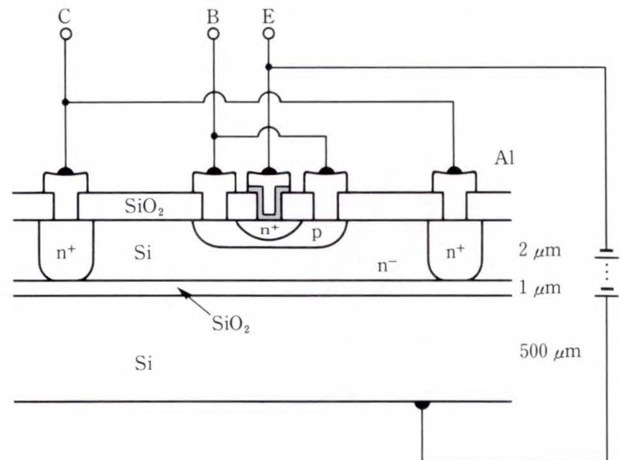


Fig. 12—Schematic cross-section of collector uses accemulation layer (CAL) transistor.

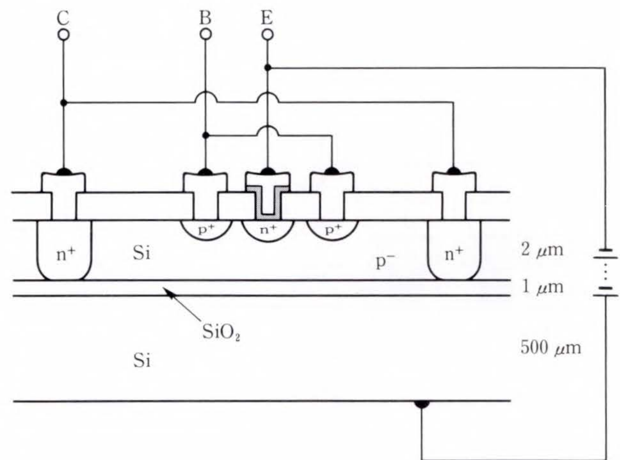


Fig. 13—Schematic cross-section of collector uses inversion layer (CIL) transistor.

thyristor, because it is similar to the second breakdown observed in the power transistor.

5. New SOI devices

It is important to discuss the potential of high-density, high-speed SOI devices. An example of a potential SOI device is a BiCMOS in which the bipolar transistor and MOSFET are combined in the same chip.

It is possible to make conventional vertical bipolar transistors on the bonded substrate, and obtain static characteristics of these transistors identical to those of conventional transistors. Therefore, it is also possible to make a SOI bipolar device. The bipolar transistor and conventional MOSFET can be made on the same SOI wafer using the conventional method. However, the thickness of the SOI stustrate must meet the requirements of the bipolar transistor, which sacrifices the performance of the MOSFET. That is, the substrate thickness must not reduce the stray capacitance of the MOSFET. To avoid this problem, a lateral bipolar transistor capable of being made on a thin active substrate[10] has recently been studied. However, it is difficult to make a thin base layer for this transistor. If a thin base layer is used, then the parasitic capacitance of the MOSFET causes a problem. This is because a channel is formed near the inter-layer insulator of the base layer having the emitter as the source, collector as the drain, and base substrate as the gate electrode.

Therefore, the authors have proposed two types of bipolar transistors that can be made on a thin active substrate as new alternatives for SOI substrate utilization, and have proved their satisfactory operation. These transistors use field-induced layers due to the electric field of the base substrate as the collector. One type of collector uses an accumulation layer (CAL) and the other uses an inversion layer (CIL). Figures 12 and 13 show their structures. These transistors were fabricated from 2-μm thick

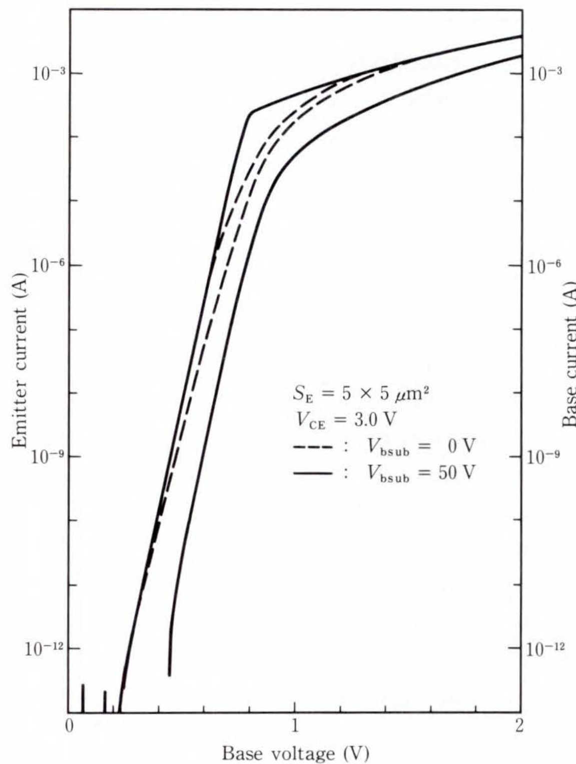


Fig. 14—Gummel plot of CAL transistor.

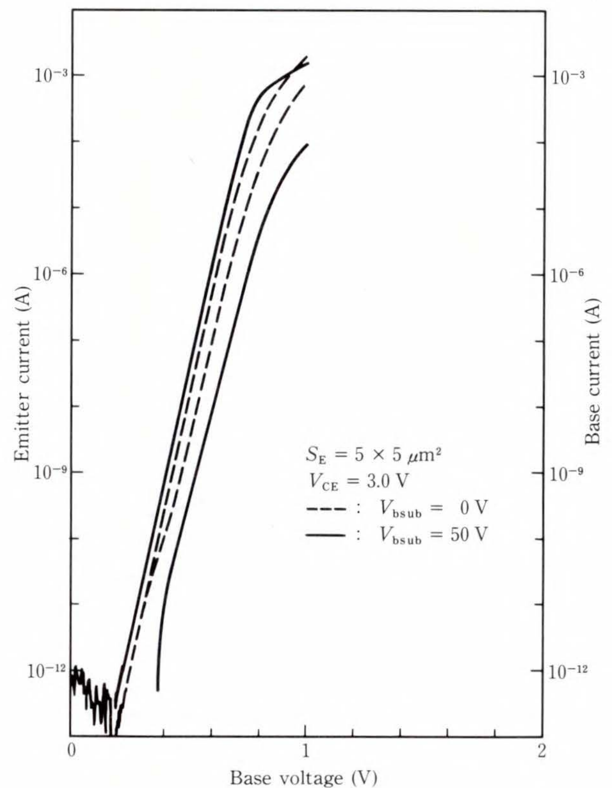


Fig. 15—Gummel plot of CIL transistor.

n-type and p-type SOI wafers using epitaxial wafers.

The fabrication processes are as follows:

1) CAL
   i) n-type active substrate 2 μm thick
   ii) Field oxide formation
   iii) Collector n^+ region formation
   iv) Annealing
   v) Base layer formation
2) CIL
   i) p-type active substrate 2 μm thick
   ii) Field oxide formation
   iii) Base layer formation
   iv) Collector n^+ region formation
   v) Annealing
3) CAL and CIL
   vi) Formation of diffusion region for base electrode
   vii) SiO_2 deposition
   viii) Emitter hole formation
   ix) Polysilicon deposition
   x) Emitter formation
   xi) Emitter/base/collector contact hole formation
   xii) Al wiring

The buried n^+ layer used in conventional transistors is not used for the CAL. Therefore, the CAL is thinner only by this buried n^+ layer. For the CIL, the collector diffusion region is also not made except for the collector n^+ region. Since the collector electrode is made using the inversion layer, the CIL is made on an even thinner substrate than the CAL.

Figures 14 and 15 show the measured emitter current and base current characteristics as a function of the base voltage for various base substrate bias voltages. When a positive bias voltage is applied, the base current (I_B) decreases and the emitter current (I_E) increases. This bias voltage causes the base current to decrease in both the CAL and CIL. The emitter current of the CAL increases in the high-current region, but it increases uniformly in the CIL. Figure 16 shows the relationship between the CAL base voltage and the current gain factor (h_{FE}). This gain factor has been improved significantly in the low base voltage region.

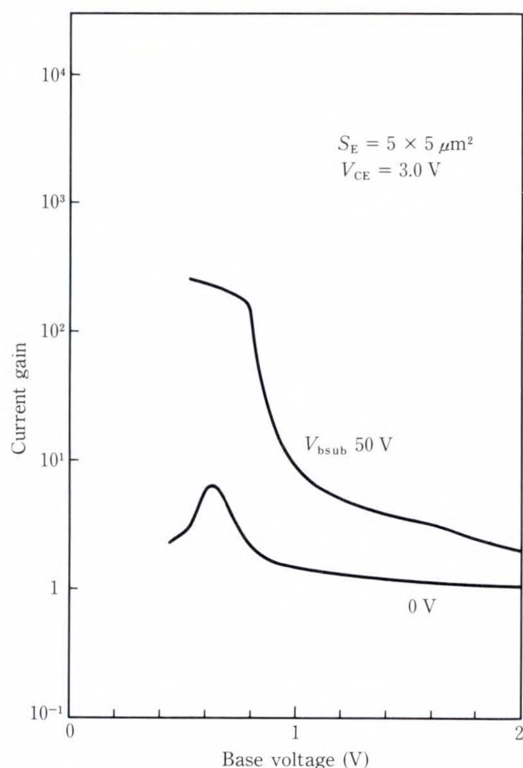


Fig. 16—h_{FE}/V_B characteristics of CAL transistor.

voltage region.

When a heavily doped region and a lightly doped region were made on a collector using the conventional vertical bipolar transistors, the base current is lower than when only a lightly doped region was made[11]. This suggests that the dependence of the CAL and CIL base current on the base substrate voltage is because the n^+ layer is formed on the collector. Similarly, the dependence of the CAL emitter current on the base substrate voltage can be explained by the reduced resistance of the collector layer as a result of formation of the n^+ layer. The dependence of the CIL emitter current on the base substrate voltage must consider the change in values that were normally fixed during operation, such as the change in thickness of the base layer, in addition to the formation of the collector n^+ layer.

These transistors were found to operate satisfactorily, which indicates new alternatives for SOI devices. They also showed that the crystallinity of the bonding plane of the SOI substrate was not damaged.

6. Conclusion

To demonstrate that the bonded substrate can be applied to devices, the authors successfully fabricated 64-Kbit DRAMs which require high-quality wafers. Using this sample device, it was possible to write to and read and 64 Kbits. Using these chips to obtain the relationship between soft errors and substrate thickness, we found that the soft errors were 1/7 that of conventional chips when the substrate thickness was 5 μm. The soft error rate is about the same as for conventional chips when the thickness was 20 μm. It was also shown that soft errors depend on the bias voltage of the base substrate.

It has been shown that the latchup problem in CMOS devices can easily be solved by using the bonded SOI substrate. It has also been shown that complete isolation is required for a latchup-free CMOS device.

We studied the potential of SOI-BiCMOS for future high-density, high-speed SOI devices. As new alternatives, the authors proposed two types of bipolar transistors having a new structure, and proved their satisfactory operation. One uses the accumulation layer as the collector (CAL) and the other uses the inversion layer (CIL). These bipolar transistors can be made on this active substrate which suggests that SOI-BiCMOS can be realized without trading off the characteristics of the SOI-MOSFET.

Thus, the bonded substrate has great potential for use in the manufacturing of SOI-LSI devices.

References

1) Vasudev, P.K., Terrill, K.W., and Seymour, S.: A HIGH PERFORMANCE SUBMICROMETER CMOS/SOI TECHNOLOGY USING ULTRATHIN SILICON FILMS ON SIMOX. 1988 Symp. VLSI Technol., Dig. Tech. Papers, 1988, pp. 61-62.
2) Gotoh, H., Arimoto, Y., Ozeki, M., and Imaoka, K.: Soft Error Rate of 64K SOI-DRAM. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet., Tech. Dig., 1987, pp. 870-871.
3) Kawamura, S., Sasaki, N., Kawai, S., Shirato, T., Aneha, N., and Nakano, M.: 3-D High-Voltage CMOS ICs by Recrystallized SOI merged with Bulk

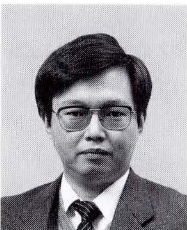
Control-Unit. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet., Tech. Dig., 1987, pp. 758-761.
4) Lasky, J.B., Stiffler, S.R., White, F.R., and Abernathey, J.R.: Silicon-on Insulator (SOI) by Bonding and Etch-Back. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet., Tech. Dig., 1985, pp. 684-687.
5) Ohashi, H., Ohura, J., Tsukakoshi, T., and Shimbo, M.: Improved Dielectrically Isolated Device Integration by Silicon Wafer Direct Bonding (SBD) Technique. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet., Tech. Dig., 1986, pp. 210-213.
6) Anthony, T.R.: Directric Isolation of Silicon by Anodic Bonding. *J. Appl. Phys.*, **58**, pp. 1240-1247 (1985).
7) Frye, P.C., Griffith, J.E., and Wong, Y.H.: A Field-Assisted Bonding Process for Silicon Dielectric Isolation. *J. Electrochem. Soc.*, **133**, 8, pp. 1673-1677 (1986).
8) Muraoka, H., Ohashi, T., and Sumitomo, Y.: Controlled Preferential Etching Technology. Semiconductor Silicon 1973, Electrochem. Soc., 1973, pp. 327-338.
9) Yoshimi, M., Wada, T., Kato, K., and Tango, H.: High Performance SOI MOSFET Using Ultra-thin SOI Film. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet., Tech. Dig., 1987, pp. 640-643.
10) Strum, J.C., McVittie, J.P., Gibbons, J.F., and Pfeiffer, L.: A lateral Silicon-on-Insulator Bipolar Transistor with a Self-Aligned Base Contact. *IEEE Electron Device Let.*, **EDL-8**, -3, pp. 104-106 (1987).
11) Iwai, H., Sasaki, G., Unno, Y., Niitsu, Y., Norishima, M., Sugimoto, Y., and Kanzaki, K.: 0.8-μm Bi-CMOS Technology with High f_T Ion-Implanted Emitter Bipolar Transistor. IEEE Int. Electron Devices Meet., Tech. Dig., 1987, pp. 28-31.

Hiroshi Gotou

Process Engineering Dept.
Process Development Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Science University of Tokyo 1975
Dr. of Physics
University of Tsukuba 1982
Specializing in Device Technology

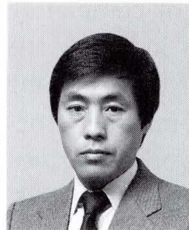
Masashi Ozeki

Semiconductor Crystal Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
Shizuoka University 1968
Dr. of Engineering Science
Osaka University 1977
Specializing in Semiconductor Crystals



Yoshihiro Arimoto

Semiconductor Crystal Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electronic Eng.
Nagoya Institute of Technology 1975
Master of Physical Electronics Eng.
Tokyo Institute of Technology 1977
Specializing in SOI



Kazunori Imaoka

Process Engineering Dept.
Process Development Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Yamaguchi University 1971
Master of Applied Physics
Nagoya University 1973
Specializing in Devices Technology

UDC 621.3.049.774:621.7.04

Overview of Mask Technology

● Kimio Yanagida ● Takao Furukawa ● Takeo Kikuchi

(Manuscript received June 20, 1988)

Mask-making technology plays an important role in generating the patterns for devices used in semiconductor fabrication. Fujitsu recognizes the importance of this technology and has developed it from the early days of semiconductor fabrication.
This paper describes the mask-making technologies currently being used: data processing, exposure, process and inspection technology. This is followed by a discussion of the future trends in mask-making technology.

1. Introduction

Fujitsu established its Mask Technology Division 25 years ago, in 1963, marking it probably the third oldest division in the world of semiconductor manufactures after IBM and TI. This is because Fujitsu was quick to recognize the importance of microlithography in the development and fabrication of semiconductor devices.

To realize Fujitsu's objective of completely fabricating semiconductor devices in-house, the development of the technology for fabricating the masks started with all mask-making processes, including materials, artwork (pattern generation), master masks and working masks, being developed simultaneously.

This paper first describes the history of mask technology. Then the early stages of reserch and development up to the current state of the basis technology are described. This paper lists the subsequent technological innovations in a chronological table and provides a supplementary description of the major technologies, comparing them to the corresponding IC changes. Details of current mask technology and future trends are described last.

2. History

Fujitsu started plotting artwork (i.e. pattern generation) 150 times larger than the actual size on kent paper using an X-Y coordinate graph machine. In 1966, artwork was plotted 250 times the actual size on a peel coat film to improve the pattern accuracy. In 1968, we developed an automatic plotting machine that drew the artwork 100 times the actual size on a film to handle the higher integration of ICs. At the same time, we developed computer aided design (CAD) for automatic plotting. In 1971, we installed a Pattern Generator® that exposed patterns ten times their actual size on reticle blanks to improve the pattern accuracy. We also installed a FACOM 230-50 as the host computer to fully utilize the CAD and established the groundwork for data processing technology. As the development of ICs progressed from 16-Kbit DRAM to 64-Kbit DRAM, the patterning accuracy had to be improved. We started investigating the installation of a electron beam (EB) exposure system in 1978 and began reticle patterning using our EB system in 1981. Subsequently, we have generated patterns for VLSIs while continually upgrading the performance of our system to this day.

We first manufactured the master mask by printing and laying out a 30 × pattern on a 1 200-mm^2 film. We installed a Photo Repeater® in 1967 to manufacture the mask for a two-inch wafer. We also installed a Photo Repeater® for the Cr hard plate, the first in Japan, in 1968.

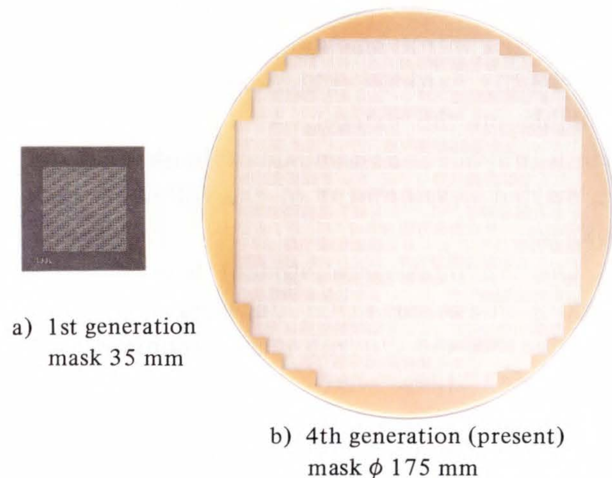
The only device manufactuers that have achieved in-house development of mask materials such as Cr hard plates are IBM, TI, and Fujitsu. During this period, the emulsion (Em) master mask was continuously mass produced. Around 1978, we entirely changed the master mask to the hard (Hd) master mask. In 1983, we installed the fabrication technology of direct lighography master masks by EB in the production line.

The first fabricated the working mask by printing the above-mentioned 30 x film master on Em blanks using a 1/30 reduction camera. In 1965, we developed contact printing technology to fabricate a working mask from the master mask, and put it to practical use. We first fabricated this working mask from a 35-mm² mask corresponding to a 1-inch wafer.

Then, we began to fabricate large masks for large-diameter wafers (see Fig. 1). In 1974, we developed two innovative and original technologies to reduce the cost and improve the quality of the working mask. They were the mask anti over contact surface finishing technology and a soft contact printer. In addition, we investigated synthetic quartz materials, which will be described later. We currently provide a 175-mm diameter mask. The mask factory is installed adjacent to the wafer factory because it supplies the wafer process with masks.

One of the major results of mask technology applications was the practical use of the direct wafer pattern exposure technology we developed, based on the master mask production technology. This stepper exposure technology was first used in 1977. This technology could be realized only after being integrated with the reticle manufacturing technology. Fujitsu was the first company to put these technologies to practical use.

Since 1969, we have placed great emphasis on the development and application of CAD for design patterns. At this time, with the development of the mass production VLSIs and gate arrays with quick turn around time (QTAT), the Data Processing Department supports the Design Department using mask CAD technology. Now, submicron patterns are also becoming increasingly widespread. Mask technology is the bridging technology of accurately forming the device required by the Design Department of Wafer Processing. Therefore, mask technology plays an important role by supporting the Design Department in pattern formation and by providing the Process Department with reticle masks.



a) 1st generation mask 35 mm

b) 4th generation (present) mask ϕ 175 mm

Fig. 1—Mask size comparison.

3. Development and expansion of mask element technology

The chronological table (see Fig. 2) lists the development and expansion of mask element technology. Figure 3 shows the transition of the manufacturing process roughly classified by generation. This section provides supplementary background information to the development of the manufacturing processes.

3.1 Early technology—working mask technology

Fujitsu's early efforts aimed to achieve a mask overlay accuracy of 1 μm for the first generation (1963 to 1966). At that time, such a high mask overlay accuracy was unheard of. To maintain this accuracy, it was necessary to minimize the layout error. Therefore, we planned to manufacture the mask by reducing it in a single step at high magnification. We designed and manufactured a high-magnification reduction camera, a 1/30 vertical type. For the layout, we developed a specially

designed printing machine by combining our numerical control machine (FANUC Prototype Model-120) with a photoengraving machine available on the market. As a result, we were able to provide a 35-mm square mask. In 1965, we started development of the following technologies.

One technical development was to realize working mask of metal on glass (Cr mask). This led to the current mask technology. At that time, there were two major problems with the working mask. The life span was short and high-contrast patterns having sharp shapes could not be formed. The life span of the working mask was short because it was easily scratched when it was used in the wafer process. High-contrast patterns having sharp shapes were difficult to form because, due to the low sensitivity of the photo resist, there was little latitude in the exposure, and interference frings were generated on the mask by excess light permeating when the mask was exposed to intense light.

Another technical development was the mask contact print system. This system provided the foundation for mass producing high-quality and low-cost working masks in the third generation, as described later.

3.2 Establishment of basic mask-making technology

When the development of IC (CSL) for electronic switching systems began, we developed mask-making technology for the CSL. The key feature in this second generation was the step & repeat camera (i.e. a Photo Repeater®) installed in 1967. Later, installation of a Photo Repeater® having several

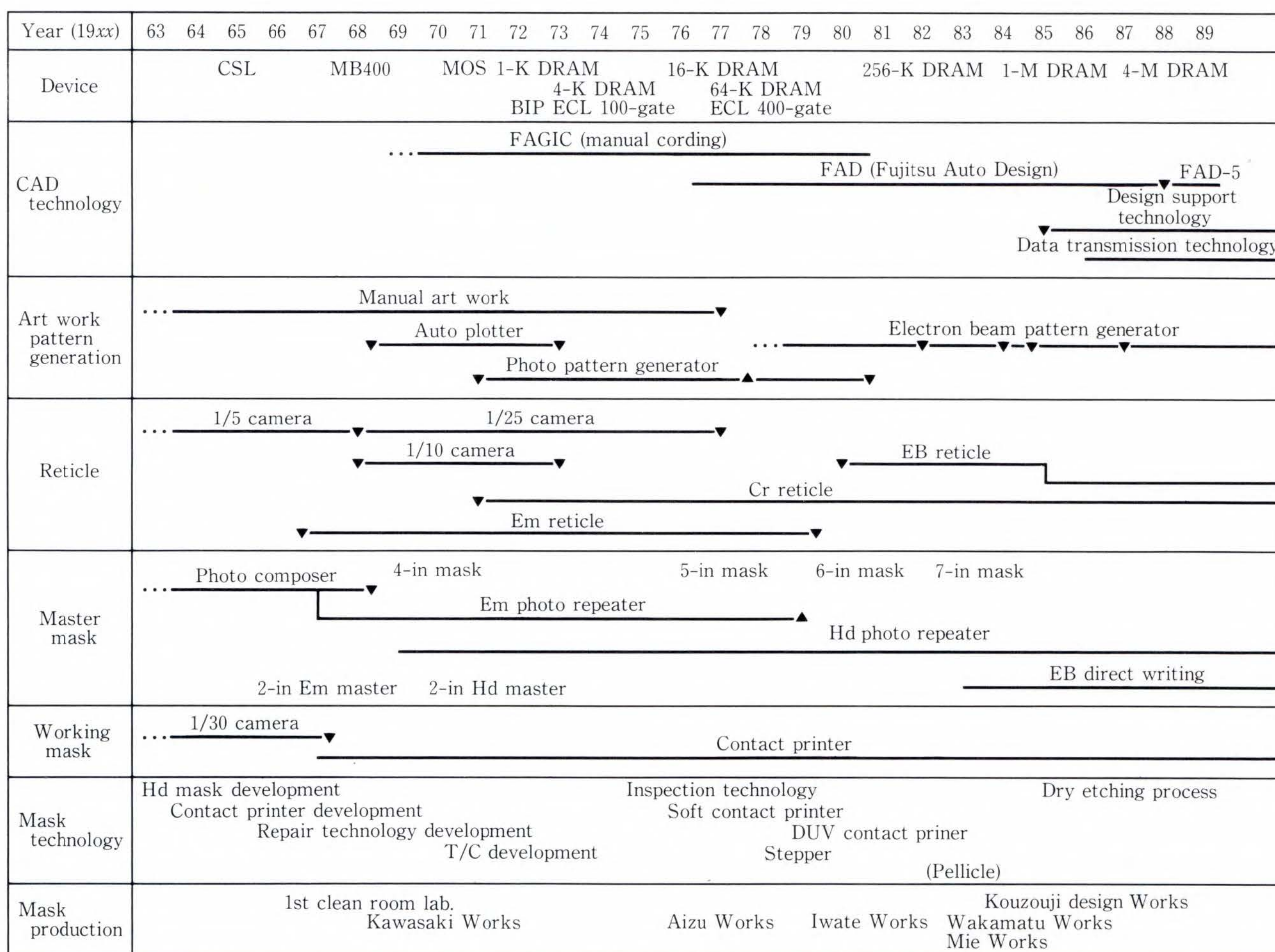


Fig. 2—Trend in mask engineering technology.

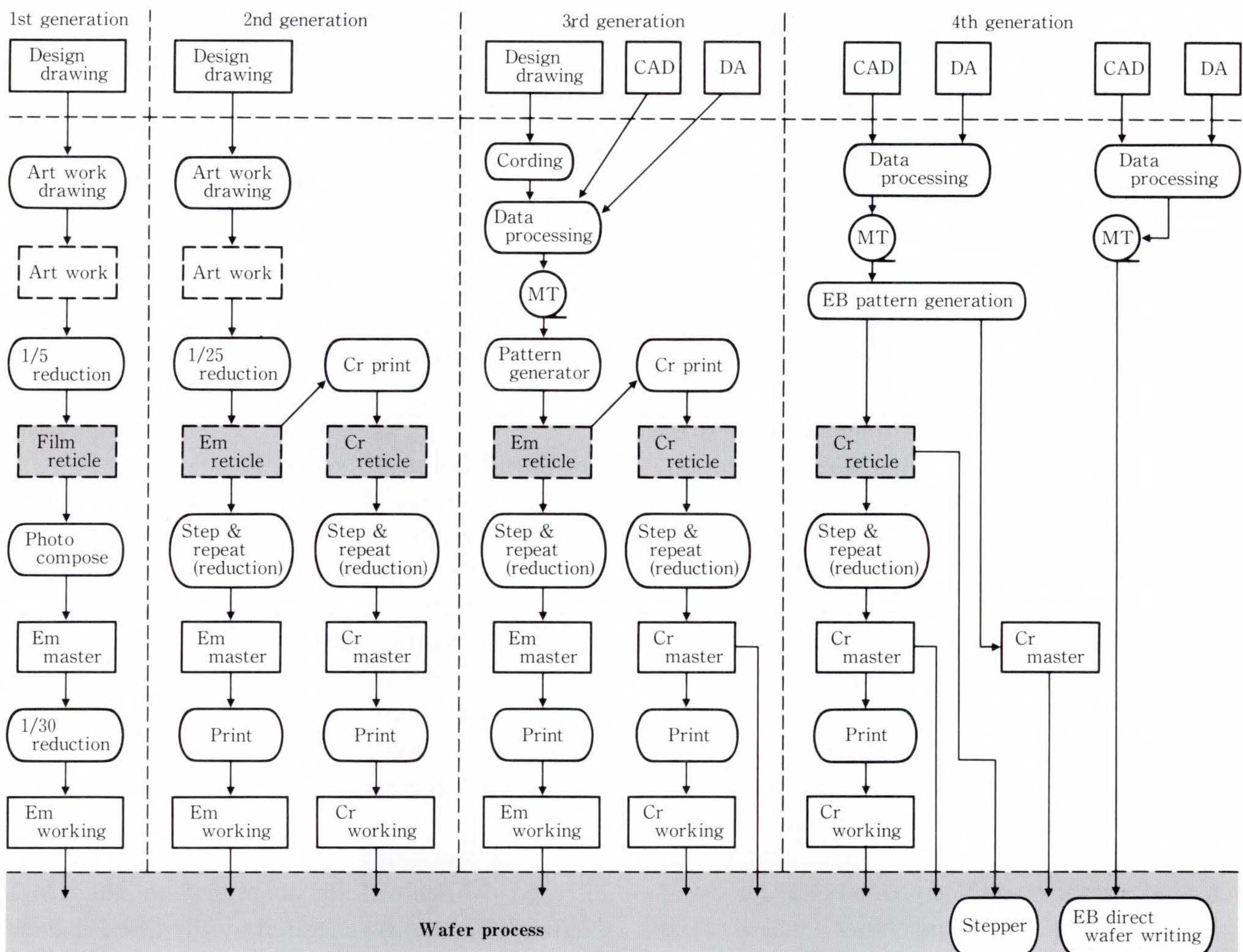


Fig. 3—Trend of mask making technology flow.

modifications in the performance helped establish the mask technology. (The second generation started at this time.) Installation of the Pattern Generator® in 1971 for IC development of the MOS 1-Kbit DRAM and ECL 100-gate array determined the direction of the reticle making technology.

Although supplementary, we also independently developed important technology for the repair technique required to harden the mask material for Cr. This technique eliminates pattern defects caused by contamination and defects in treated resist materials to ensure a 100-percent defect-free reticle. The repair technique was later improved from a laser system to the focused ion beam system, which is a current basic technique.

3.3 Mask-making technology in growth period

This third generation (1974 to 1983) occurred when ICs became LSIs, that is when MOS devices progressed from 4-Kbit to 16-Kbit DRAMs and bipolar devices started being developed with ECL 400 gates. This period was a major turning point in the quality and accuracy of masks. To achieve fine patterns, to reduce the defect density, and to improve the total MTF, sodalime glass (blue and white blanks) which was used for hard (Cr) and soft (Em) glass blanks was changed to synthetic quartz glass, which is chemically and physically stable.

At that time, the cost of the synthetic quartz glass was about 25 times that of sodalime glass. However, the features of synthetic quartz glass, viz., optical permeability, abrasion

resistance, resistance to chemicals, and low thermal expansion, solved the problems associated with thermal expansion that occurred in the wafer process when sodalime glass was used and solved the process instability. Furthermore, we obtained other improvements, such as cost reduction, because the synthetic quartz could be efficiently reused, resulting in the cost being less than that of sodalime glass.

We installed automatic surface inspection technology at the same time when the blanks pinhole (Ph) inspection machine was developed. The surface inspection was then changed from sensory inspection to machine inspection. We also developed and installed a clean room to improve accuracy and quality. This technology to maintain local cleanliness and maintain the ambient temperature to within 0.1 °C played an important role in stabilizing the alignment accuracy in the mask making and wafer processes.

At the same time, we also developed laser interferometric measurement technology to control the accuracy, and installed an interferometer in 1972. The interferometer is required to thoroughly control the accuracy of both products and machines when mass producing masks. Higher integration of LSIs, conversion of mass produced MOS from 256-Kbit DRAM to 1-Mbit DRAM, development of the 4-Mbit and 16-Mbit DRAM VLSI, and large-scale, ultrashort delivery time of the gate array product have resulted in another major turning point for mask-making technology. The next chapter describes the technology of the fourth generation.

4. Current mask technology

Incorporating the above changes, the Mask Engineering Department supplies the Wafer Processing Department with reticles and masks. Figure 4 shows the current functional structure of the Mask Department. The Kawasaki Works is mainly responsible for the Mask Department, and is also mainly responsible for technical development, and making prototypes. It also fabricates the reticles and partially fabricates the masks for mass-produced LSIs including advanced and prototype LSIs.

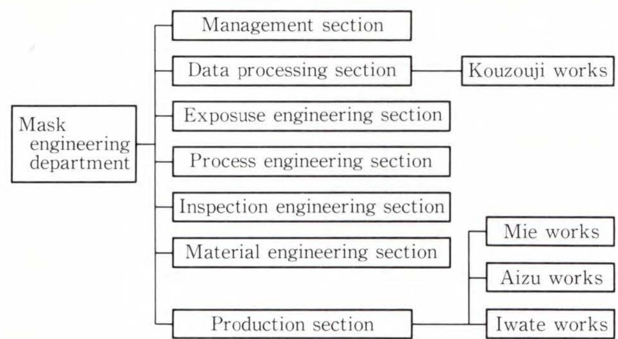


Fig. 4—Function structure of mask department.

As described above, a mask shop is installed at each wafer process factory and produces and supplies the reticles and masks for the LSIs fabricated at the works. This is an important advantage to provide customers with devices in a QTAT that other companies cannot provide. At present, these shops develop the reticle and mask technologies and fabricate them. The processes flow is outlined below.

4.1 Data processing

To fabricate LSIs according to the CAD data (design data) generated by the LSI designer, the first process required is data processing. Data processing converts the design data into manufacturing data for the EB exposure machine (exposure data) and inspection machine (inspection data). These processes depend on conversion technology using super computers and on verification technology that verifies the converted data.

Before describing these processes, the flow of the data process is described in Fig. 5. First, the design data is transferred domestically and internationally to super computers through communication lines. Then, specific types of LSI manufacturing machine data (process data) are created, such as the alignment pattern data used in the stepper. We convert both types of data into exposure data using the conversion software we developed. The converted data is then verified and transferred to the most suitable factory to fabricate the reticles and masks.

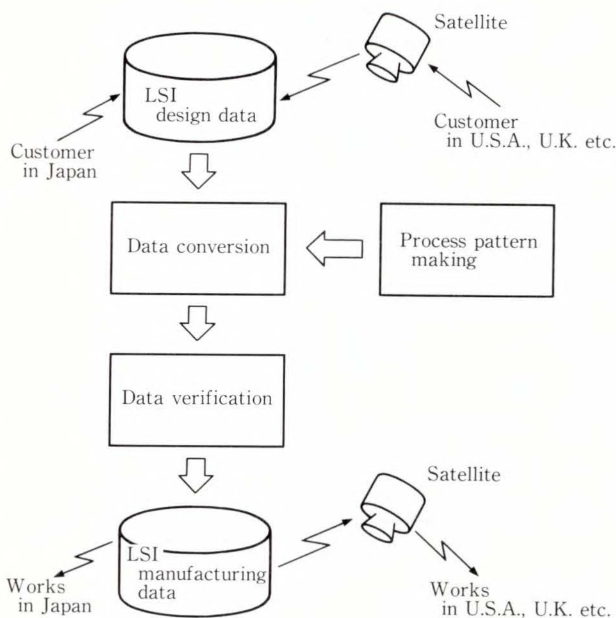


Fig. 5—Data processing flow.

The various computers in each factory form a network using the Flexible System Link (FSL)[1]. FLS enables inter-system communication to use high-speed transmission of up to 33 Mbit/s and channel connection through high-speed and highly reliable communication lines consisting of optical fiber cables. Our network is effective for LSI fabrication in each remote factory. This advanced network between the design center and mask shop has been proposed and is being implemented in the USA. We have already been able to reduce the delivery time of ASICs using this network.

4.1.1 Data conversion technology

In this subsection, we describe the data conversion technology that forms the nucleus of data processing. Data conversion technology enables the conversion process that generates exposure data from design data and enables the pattern generation process that generates process pattern data for the equipment used for wafer fabrication (e.g. stepper). As the complexity of wafer fabrication increases, process pattern data is also becoming more complex. Process pattern data and design data become more complex as the required device pattern becomes increasingly complex.

Table 1. Data convert processing result

Conversion softwear	CPU time (FACOM M 780)	Output data
	Ratio	Ratio
Non-hierarchical structured softwear	23.1	20.1
Hierarchical structured softwear	1.0	1.0

There are results of memory device (about 50 million patterns).

To resolve these problems, we have developed an original data conversion system called Fujitsu Artwork Data (FAD) processing on a FACOM M-780 main frame computer. Although the FAD system enables conversion of large amounts of data, the dramatic increase of the volume of design data in recent years requires a more efficient system. Therefore, we have introduced a hierarchical structure into exposure data to manage the exposure data more easily, and a new FAD system which enables both the conversion time and the volume of exposure data to be reduced.

Table 1 lists the results of the conversion process for the data of one 24-Mbit DRAM mask. This mask data includes about fifty million patterns (5×10^7). Table 1 shows that the productivity of the new FAD system is 23 times higher than the conventional system and enables a 5-percent reduction in the volume of exposure data compared to the conventional system. The new FAD system has had a significant impact on high-density memory devices in which the same pattern is repeated frequently, and has contributed to the development and fabrication of these devices.

Data compaction technology is essential for the next generation of high-density devices. Compaction techniques reduce not only the load on the data conversion process but also the data transfer between works. Currently, the new FAD system enables the handling of large amounts and various types of data from both domestic and overseas customers via a communication network and satellite system.

4.1.2 Data verification technology

Data verification is another very important aspect of data processing. It is necessary to compare design data with exposure data and to check the exposure data based on the design rules. Verification processes include the comparison of reticle to design data, CD measuring, and checking the compliance with design rules using both software and the specified hardware. As the feature size of devices becomes smaller, a verification accuracy of 0.01 μm or less will be required for the next generation of devices. This new technology is currently being developed.

4.2 EB exposure system

With the advances of optical exposure technology such as excimer steppers in the wafer process, the 16-Mbit DRAM VLSI will soon be able to be patterned using the stepper. However, design rules as severe as 0.5 μm or more will require highly accurate reticles for stable production of LSIs. For 5 x reticles, each layer must maintain an overall error in the dimensions and a positioning accuracy of 0.1 μm or less and an inter-layer overlay accuracy of 0.1 μm or less.

This section describes the highly accurate reticle patterning EB exposure system, named NOWEL[2], which has been developed to meet these requirements. Table 2 lists the system specifications and Fig. 6 is a block diagram of the system.

NOWEL has the following three major characteristics:

1) Vertical landing deflection system,
2) double-exposure method A/B mode, and
3) repeated data compression.

The following two subsections describe its characteristics in detail.

4.2.1 Vertical landing deflection system

The NOWEL deflection system consists of a two-state deflector, that is, an electromagnetic deflector that deflects the 5-mm² main field and an electrostatic octpole deflector for deflecting a field of 100 μm. The electromagnetic deflector is composed of three saddle coils in series for both the X-axis and the Y-axis.

Table 2. Specifications of NOWEL system

Item	Specification
Writing method	Step-and-repeat moving stage Variable-shaped beam (max 4 μm^2) Dual deflection system Vector scan
Beam voltage	20 kV
Current density	20 A/cm^2, LaB_6 gun
Clock rate	Max 5 MHz
Substrate	max ϕ7 in Automatic loading. 5 in^2
CD control	$<$ 0.1 μm (3 σ)
Butting accuracy	$\leqslant$ 0.1 μm (main field, 5 mm^2)
Overlay accuracy	$\leqslant$ 0.1 μm (3 σ)
Edge roughness	$\leqslant$ 0.05 μm

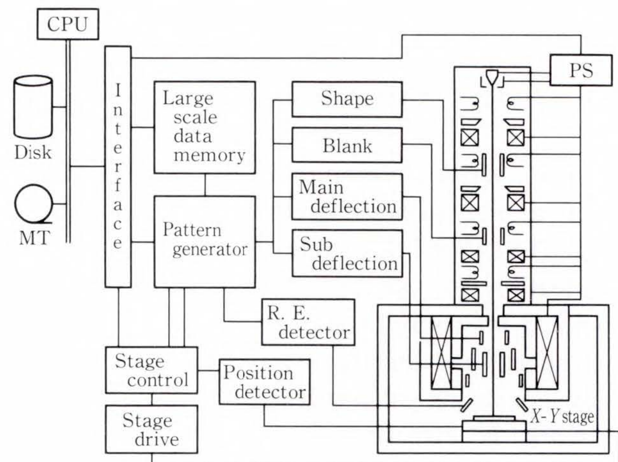
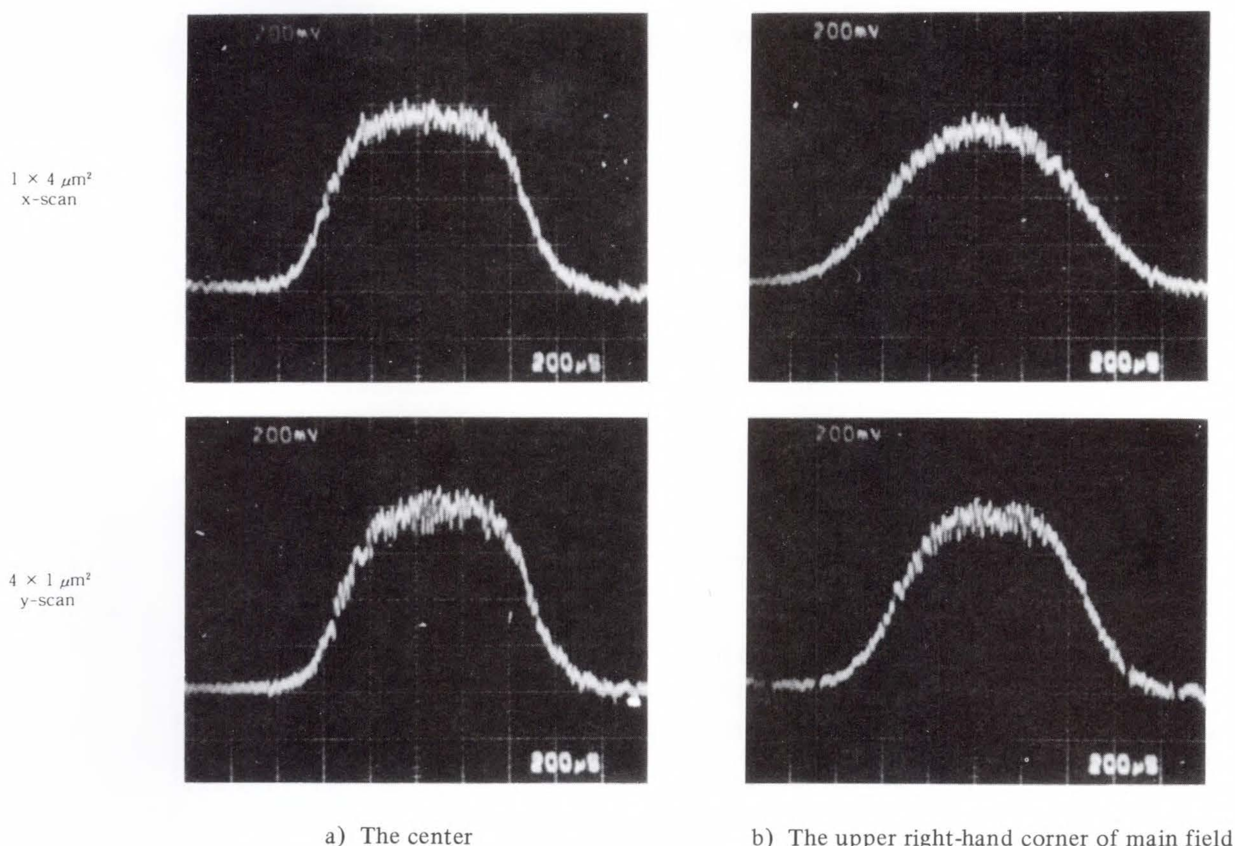


Fig. 6—Block diagram of NOWEL system.

Vertical landing is achieved by combining a short-working distance lens ($M = 0.86$) and the electromagnetic deflector. Simulation of the deflection system is based on a third-order aberration theory. For a 5-mm² deflection area, vertical landing, and low deflection aberration, we obtained five third-order aberration coefficients and a primary chromatic aberration coefficient. The results of numerical calculation of an aberration that cannot be dynamically corrected and their preset conditions are listed in Table 3.

Figure 7 shows the differential backscattered electron signal at the center and at the upper right corner of the main field. These correspond to a 1-μm wide beam. The X component of

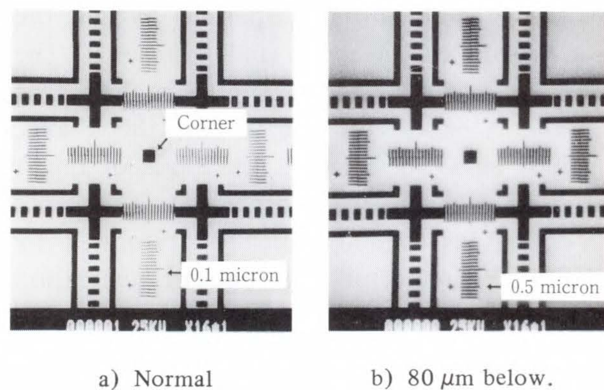


a) The center b) The upper right-hand corner of main field

Fig. 7—Differentiated backscatter electron signals from calibration grid.

Table 3. Conditions of deflection system

Item	Specification	
Setting	Beam voltage	20 keV
	Energy distribution	2 eV
	Beam half angle	7 m · rad
Aberration	Coma	0.027 µm
	Spherical	0.097 µm
	Transverse chromatic	0.100 µm
	Axial chromatic	0.070 µm
Telecentricity	Root mean square	0.158 µm
	Beam landing angle	0.4 m · rad



a) Normal b) 80 µm below.

Fig. 8—Main field butting error vs substrate height variation, z position.

the aberration is largest at the upper right corner. Expansion of the beam due to this aberration is about 0.2 µm. This value is worse than the results of numerical calculation and is assumed to be due to an error during coil manufacturing and assembly.

Figure 8 shows the change of the field butting error at different substrate heights. The difference in the reading of the vernier between the adjustment reference level and the level 80 µm below the adjustment reference level is 0.4 µm. That is, the beam landing angle at the corner of the main field is about 2.5 m·rad. Since the variation in the height of the actual substrate is about 10 µm, the effect is only 0.05 µm.

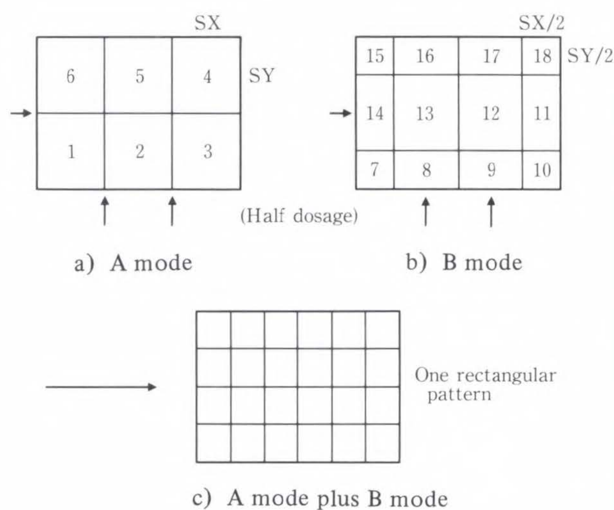


Fig. 9–Basic concept of the A- or B-modes.

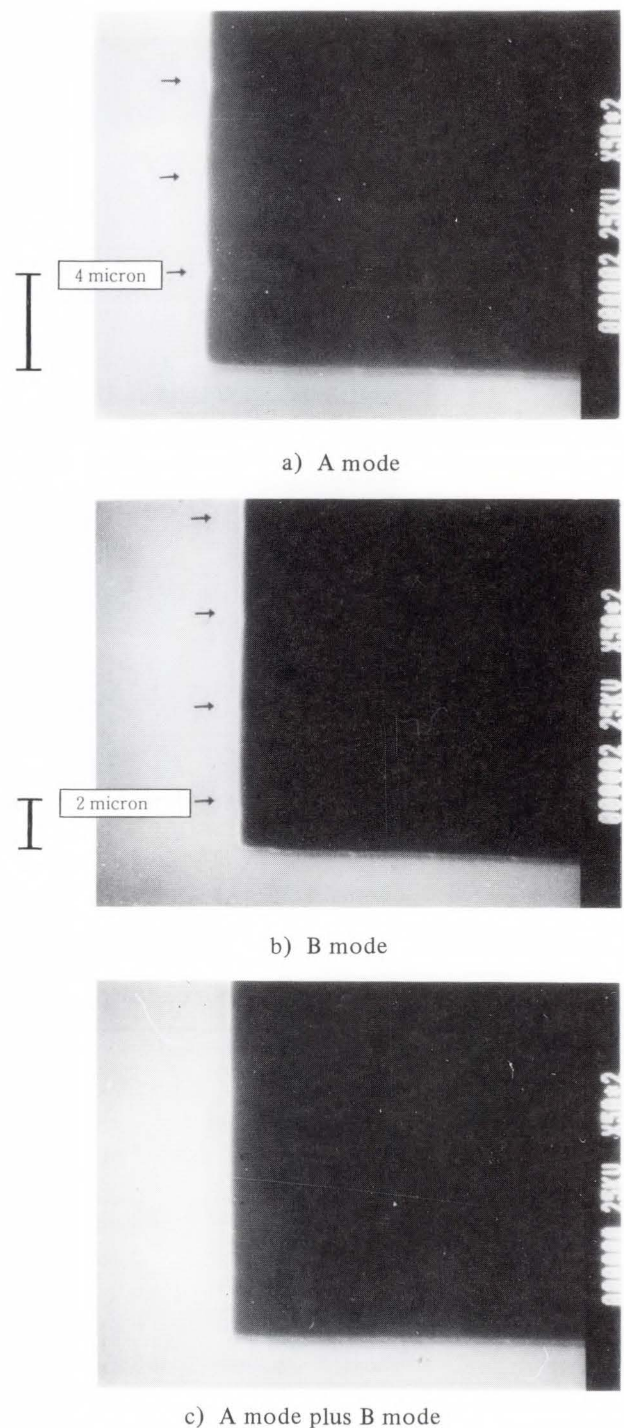


Fig. 10–Scanning electron microscope (SEM) micrographs.

4.2.2 Double-exposure method "A/B mode"

Figure 9 shows the basic concept of the A/B mode, which uses a rectangular pattern. The pattern is continuously exposed twice and is subject to half the dosage each time it is exposed. The numbers in a) and b) of Fig. 9 indicate the sequence of the exposure. The initial exposure equally divides the pattern into $m \times n$ shots. This called the A mode.

The B mode shifts the pattern by half the shot size in the A mode and exposes it. The peripheral section has a shot size half that for the A mode for the X-axis, the Y-axis, or both axes. As a result, the edges of the A and B shots cancel each other out. This series of operations is automatically performed by the logic circuit of the pattern generation unit. Figure 10 shows the resist pattern exposed in each mode. The pattern edge roughness was improved to less than 0.05 μm using the A/B mode.

4.2.3 Repetitive data compression

Figure 11 shows how the NOWEL hierarchical data is stored in the memory. The memory cell area consists of memory cell blocks composed of small cell units. Therefore, for repetitive data such as a memory cell, the cell unit pattern data and the repetition information can be specified in the LSI.

The repetition information include the coordinates of the starting point, array pitch of the repetition and number of arrays. There are two hierarchical layers specified in each repetition, one in the block unit and the other in the LSI block. For the pattern data, only the basic cell and peripheral circuit are required. The subfield matches the cell unit size.

The main deflector develops the unit accord-

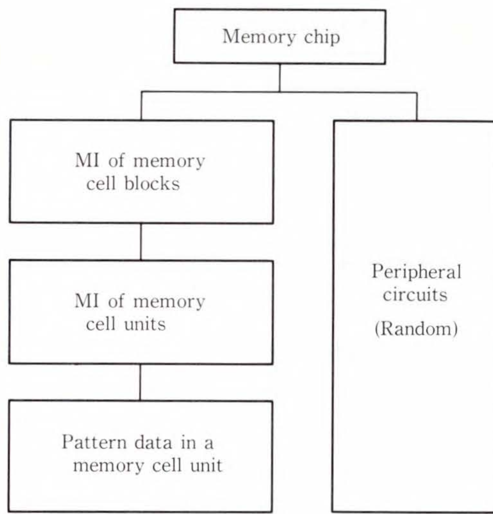


Fig. 11–Hierarchical structure of pattern data.

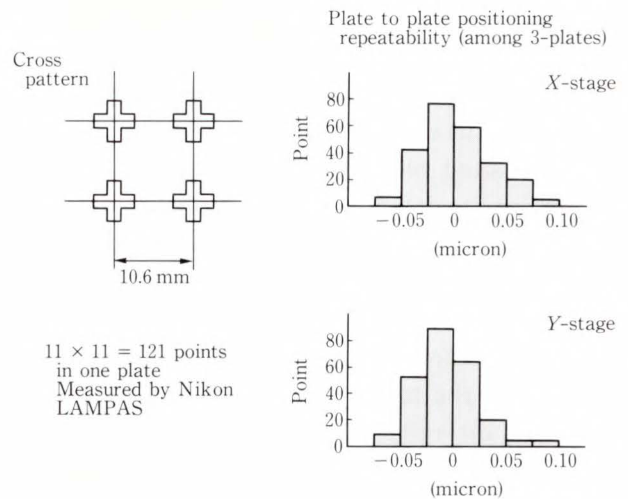


Fig. 12–Plot of overlay accuracy derived from three patterns.

ing to the repetition information in the block. This is called the Main Defection Matrix Mode. We developed a 20-bit DAC for accurate positioning, especially when specifying the position in this mode (0.005-μm LSB for a 5-mm deflection). The block in the cell area is configured by moving the stage.

The above data compression technology can ignore the amount of cell data. Since only the peripheral circuit is considered, the total data compression ratio for a 16-Mbit DRAM was reduced to about one tenth the earlier ratio.

4.2.4 Overlay accuracy

Figure 12 shows the overlay accuracy for three test reticles, including the repeatability of the inter-recticle position. We measured the position of the 11-x-11 crossed patterns configured in a 10.6-mm pitch using a Nikon 2I and observed how the two reticles overlapped. The error was less than 0.1 μm.

Of the three features of the NOWEL, A/B mode and repetitive data compression are completely effective. However, the vertical landing deflection system has a 0.2-μm aberration in the 5-mm field which resulted in a value worse than the target value. Therefore, in actual operation, we suppress the aberration of a single reticle and the field butting error by using the field in an area smaller than 2 mm^2 square. We can obtain a dimensional accuracy of 0.07 μm (3 σ).

4.3 Process technology

This section describes the automation of reticle processing and dry etching.

4.3.1 Automation technology

The reticle processor currently being used is an in-line processor that automatically performs the processes from resist developing to chrome film etching.

This processor has the following two features.

1) Mixed simultaneous processing of positive and negative blanks by automatic recognition
2) Mechanical transfer system to minimize contamination caused by the carriers

The first feature, mixed processing of positive and negative blanks, enables both positive and negative resists to be used so that the processing capability of the EB exposure system (NOWEL) can be fully utilized. Proper use of the resists minimizes the exposure area required to form the pattern and improves the throughput. This processor has lines that can handle both types of resists and performs this processing by providing MPUs that control each line's equipment and a CPU that controls

the overall system.

The second feature, the mechanical transfer system, achieves cleanliness during the process. This is important because even one particle of dust deposited on the reticle during processing will make it defective. The problem of contamination generated from the mechanical transfer system remains unsolved, but we eliminated this problem by completely separating the transfer system mechanism section and the blank carrier area and by installing the unit in a laminar down-flow thermal clean booth. By docking this machine to the exposure machine transfer line, the processes from exposure to chrome etching can be performed completely automatically. This has enabled defect-free reticles to be manufactured at high yield.

4.3.3 Dry etching technology

To cope with fine patterns, we began development of dry etching technology in 1979. At present, we process all reticles for VLSI using dry etching. There are two technical problems presented by dry etching of the reticle. One is that the resist and Cr selectivity is low because the Cr etching rate is low (and conversely, the etching rate of the EB resist is high). The other problem is that the reactor becomes large, which makes it difficult to obtain uniformity of the plasma because the blanks are square. We improved the selectivity by increasing the pressure to the point where a practical throughput could be obtained. This is because the selectivity depends on the pressure in the reactor and RF plasma power supplied to the plasma. We also changed the discharge system to a cathode-coupled plane parallel electrode and reduced the RF plasma power. To improve the plasma uniformity, the inside of the reactor and the outer vacuum tube system were constructed symmetrically. This is because the uniformity of the RF discharge plasma depends on the symmetry of EM wave propagation within the machine. By applying the above technologies, we installed dry etching in which CD control is simple and in which the sharpness of the pattern edge is superior for reticle processing.

Table 4. Inspection specifications of high grade 5 × reticle

Inspection item	Specification
Defect size	$\leqq 1.0\ \mu m$
CD accuracy	$\pm 0.1\ \mu m$
Runout orthogonality	3 ppm

4.4 Inspection technology

The inspection checks that the reticles are manufactured accurately to the shape, dimensions, and position specified by the design information.

The current reticle inspection is explained below.

1) Defect inspection

Detects any pattern abnormality on the reticle, using a die-to-die inspection or data base inspection machine.

2) Data base inspection[3)]

Compares the inspection data with reticle pattern, and defects common to all chips (defects caused by exposure data).

3) CD inspection

Measures the specified dimensions of the patterns. Normally, it checks the minimum line width.

4) Metrology inspection

Uses a laser interferometric measuring machine to measure the length of the reticle pattern from the absolute coordinate and checks for orthogonality errors.

5) Final inspection

Inspects the front and rear sides of the reticle for dust and scratches.

6) Defect repair

Repairs all defects detected by the defect inspection.

The inspection specification is determined by the reticle magnification (5 × and 10 ×) and the required accuracy of the device type. Table 4 shows the 5 × reticle inspection specification for an advanced LSI. Especially for patterns 1 μm or less on LSI devices (5 μm on 5 × reticles), even a pattern edge defect only about ten percent the size of the pattern width on the reticle can become a catastrophic defect

because the pattern is close to the maximum resolution of the reduction stepper in the wafer process. Therefore, for reticles having fine patterns such as for a 4-Mbit DRAM, it is necessary to detect defects of 0.5 μm or less on the reticle. We can inspect the reticles more accurately and efficiently by laying out a dedicated inspection measurement pattern in the reticle independent of the device pattern.

It is also necessary to improve the data base inspection in the future. This is because the reticle die-to-die inspection can detect the defects by comparing both patterns, but it cannot detect the abnormalities that repeatedly occur in the reticle pattern. However, data base inspection can detect these abnormalities and ensure that the pattern matches the CAD data of the reticle.

The inspection items in the data base inspection are as follows:

1) Inspection of defects that occur at random in a single chip reticle
2) Inspection of exposure data, pattern deformation and whether the pattern has fallen off
3) Inspection of abnormalities that occur in the exposure system and the present conditions of the positioning coordinates.

We created the data for the data base inspection machine from design data in parallel with the exposure machine data. To process the large amount of data for devices such as a 4-Mbit DRAM, the data compression system is applied to reproducible memory types and has been put to practical use. We use different data processing programs to create the inspection data and exposure data. As a result, we can detect preset errors that occur when creating the exposure data and program errors by comparing the inspection data. However, the data base inspection also compares the image from the actual reticle pattern with the inspection data which results in problems associated with the deterioration of accuracy, such as the acceptability/unacceptability of the pattern shapes and positioning errors caused by both the exposure and inspection system. Thus, there is still room for improvement in the inspection accuracy and we are continuing to study the inspection methods for reticle-making technology.

5. Future of mask technology

The optical exposure technology in the lithography of the wafer process will continue to be the one to meet the diversification of ICs, fine patterns for higher integration, and the requirements for high accuracy. To resolve these issues, we are continuing to develop the technology. When addressing the increase in the amount of data due to high integration, the problem will not be fully solved if we use different methods to handle the increase in the data processing time and patterning time of the exposure machine. This means that we cannot solve this future problem only through the development of individual technologies. It is necessary to develop combinations of technologies. In view of these considerations, our plan for the future is as follows.

We are currently developing the blanks required by 64-Mbit DRAMs as follows. We have almost completed a method that can manufacture glass resistant to the KrF excimer laser (non-fluorescent). The blanks require the development of an angular resist coating technology to coat the entire surface with an accuracy of 5 mm to achieve a sensitivity dispersion of ±0.01 μm, and the development of a Cr metalizing technology having a pattern fracture ratio due to cleaning of less than 1 ppb. We are developing an ultra-clean automatic process for the manufacture of pinholeless blanks. For glass cleaning, we have already partially implemented an automatic cleaning technology for particles 0.1 μm or less. We are also developing in-line sputtering processes and are obtaining good results.

According to our view that data processing is directly related to QTAT, we will continue to work on completing the processing for QTAT, we will attempt to complete the processing in a shorter period of time by incorporating special processing software that exclusively processes characteristic patterns for each type into the conventional general data processing

software. We are also developing technology to change the conventional two-dimensional verification to three-dimensional verification by simulating the pattern formed on the actual wafer from the pattern on the reticle or from the design data.

The exposure technology requires an exposure machine having a much higher resolution and accuracy which will result in an increase in the exposure data. For the exposure machine, we are now developing the next generation NOWEL that can manufacture reticles for up to 64-Mbit DRAMs. As described above, we are already compressing the exposure data by making the best use of the pattern features for each type, but we will further expand the range in the future.

The reticle process department will mainly develop the process, with emphasis on CD controllability for future fine minituarization of the dimensions. All patterns that form the device are not submicron patterns. Some reticles have patterns as large as 100 μm or more or have submicron patterns mixed. It is difficult to manufacture these reticles within the required dimensional accuracy for both, although proximity effect correction at exposure can resolve this problem. The multilayer resist process can also resolve the problem. Therefore, we are setting our development goals to a dimensional control accuracy of 0.01 μm. The yield from reticle manufacturing is an important factor that affects the ASIC TAT. We believe that the high yield resulting from a stabilized process will contribute to the realization of QTAT.

The inspection technology also requires high accuracy and high-speed performance. To improve the accuracy, we are studying improvements in the current optical inspection and an inspection machine that uses an electron beam[4]. However, if the accuracy is simply raised, the inspection speed will be reduced at the current technical level. Therefore, we must also develop a system that automatically changes the inspection mode according to the contents of the reticle pattern. It will perform high-accuracy inspection where high-accuracy is required and will perform high-speed inspection when accuracy is not required. To handle large-scale data in the data base inspection, we will compress highly efficient data and improve the data compression effect further in the memory types (repetitive patterns that are frequently used such as memory types, patterns in which memory and logic are mixed in a single device such as some of the logic types, and patterns having logic only). We will also expand the system so that it can be applied to patterns having little repeatability such as random logic types.

We believe that the purpose of the inspection is not only to evaluate the acceptability or unacceptability of reticles, but also to help promote the development of the technology by accurately analyzing the various types of inspection information and appropriately feeding them back into the exposure machine and process. For this purpose, we are planning to develop a system in which we can consistently provide high-quality reticles by incorporating the data base into the inspection results, automatically analyzing the results, and incorporating an online system between the inspection and exposure systems.

6. Conclusion

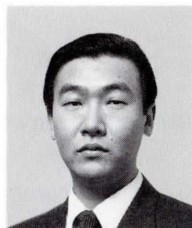
With the advances in ICs, the mask technology department has continued its technological innovations mainly in the fine-pattern formation technology. To cope with the incorporation of VLSIs in the future, the Mask Department will develop large-capacity data processing technology and quality assurance technology in addition to the fine-pattern formation technology, and will continue to contribute to the development of the semiconductor industry.

References

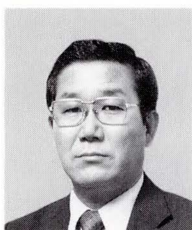
1) Serikawa, H.: FSL. *FUJITSU*, (in Japanese), **38**, 3, pp. 194-199 (1987).
2) Hamaguchi, S., Kai, J., and Yasuda, H.: High-precision reticle making by electron-beam lithography. *J. Vac. Sci. Technol.*, **B6**, 1, pp. 204-208 (1988).
3) Awamura, D.: Reticle inspection technology to

compare the pattern against data. *Proc. SPIE*, **334**, pp. 230-237 (1982).
4) Simpson, R.A., and Davis, D.E.: Detecting sub-micron pattern defects on optical photo masks using an enhanced EL-3 electron-beam lithography tool. *Proc. SPIE*, **334**, pp. 208-215 (1982).

Kimio Yanagida
Process Development Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Tokyo Science University 1964
Specializing in Process Development



Takeo Kikuchi
Mask Engineering Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Mechanical Eng.
Tokyo Science University 1984
Specializing in MASK Engineering Development



Takao Furukawa
Mask Engineering Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Junior College of Osaka Pref. University 1962
Specializing in MASK Engineering Development

UDC 621.3.049.76

Packaging Technology for ASICs

● Michio Sono (Manuscript received October 21, 1988)

The use of ASICs is rapidly progressing and expanding. ASIC packaging technologies are also enabling higher density, diversification, and customization. This review introduces the package line-up and ASIC packages currently offered by Fujitsu, then describes current technological problems and future trends.

1. Introduction

The demand for ASICs is increasing in a wide range of fields[1)-3)]. In response to this trend[4)-6)], ASIC packages are required to perform more functions than before. For this reason, Fujitsu has been developing new technologies such as package structures and new materials.

The main technological problems to be solved for ASIC packages are as follows:

1) High pin count technology
2) Large chip technology
3) High-density assembly technology
4) High-power device technology
5) Special custom package technology.

These technological problems are often interrelated. Thus, a combination of these new technologies will enable ASIC functions to be fully utilized and will lead to the development of package families that can meet all user's requirements and applications. The ASIC field is rapidly advancing and is highly competitive.

This paper introduces the current situation and future trends concerning Fujitsu's ASIC packaging technologies.

2. ASIC packages

Figure 1 shows the current package line-up. Of these groups, the types of packaging mainly used for ASICs are listed below with a description of their features.

2.1 Shrink DIP (SH DIP)

The lead pitch of the standard DIP has been reduced from 100 mil to 70 mil to reduce the package length. The row space has been also reduced from 600 mil to 400 mil for the 28-pin package and from 900 mil to 750 mil for the 64-pin package. Shrink DIP is used in microcomputers and gate arrays.

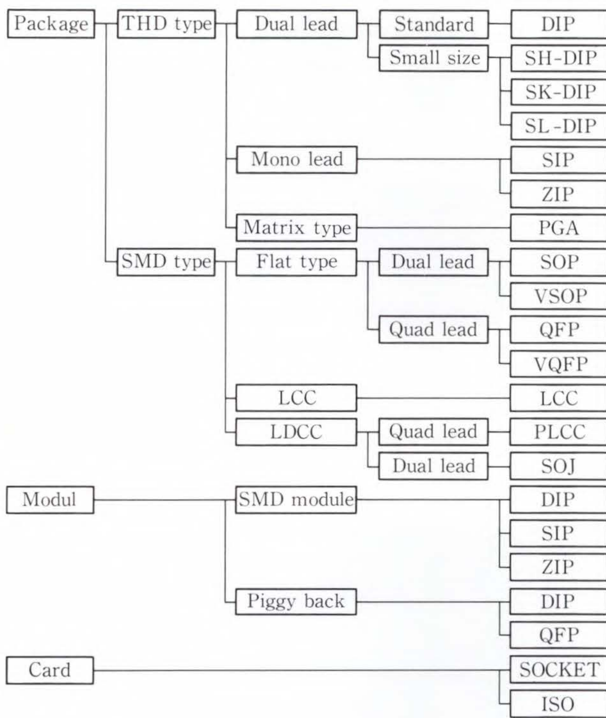
2.2 Pin Grid Array (PGA)

PGA is suitable for a high pin count because koval pins are arranged in a matrix on the ceramic substrate (see Fig. 2). A resin seal was initially used, but now a seam weld is used to reduce costs and improve reliability. A frit seal is also sometimes used. When a high-power device is mounted, a cavity-down structure having an attached radiation fin is used to lower the thermal resistance.

PGA has recently been used as a Surface Mount Device (SMD) rather than a Through Hole Device (THD) because the pin pitch has been reduced due to the higher pin count and the pin itself is smaller. PGA is used in microcomputers and gate arrays. Recently, it has also been used in high-speed Bi-CMOS and ET (ECL/TTL) devices.

2.3 Plastic Pin Grid Array (PPGA)

The basic structure of the PPGA is the same as that of the PGA. A printed wiring board is used for the substrate to reduce cost. PPGA has



THD	: Through hall device	SMD	: Surface mount device
LCC	: Leadless chip carrier	LDCC	: Leaded chip carrier
SH-DIP	: Shrink DIP	SK-DIP	: Skinny DIP
SL-DIP	: Slim DIP	SIP	: Single in-line package
ZIP	: Zig-zag in-line package		
ISO	: International organization for standardization		

Fig. 1—Current package line-up.

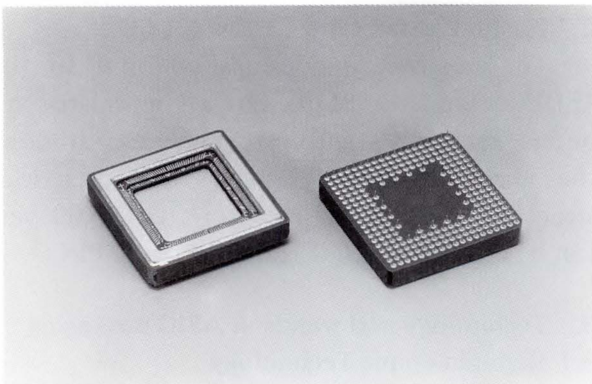
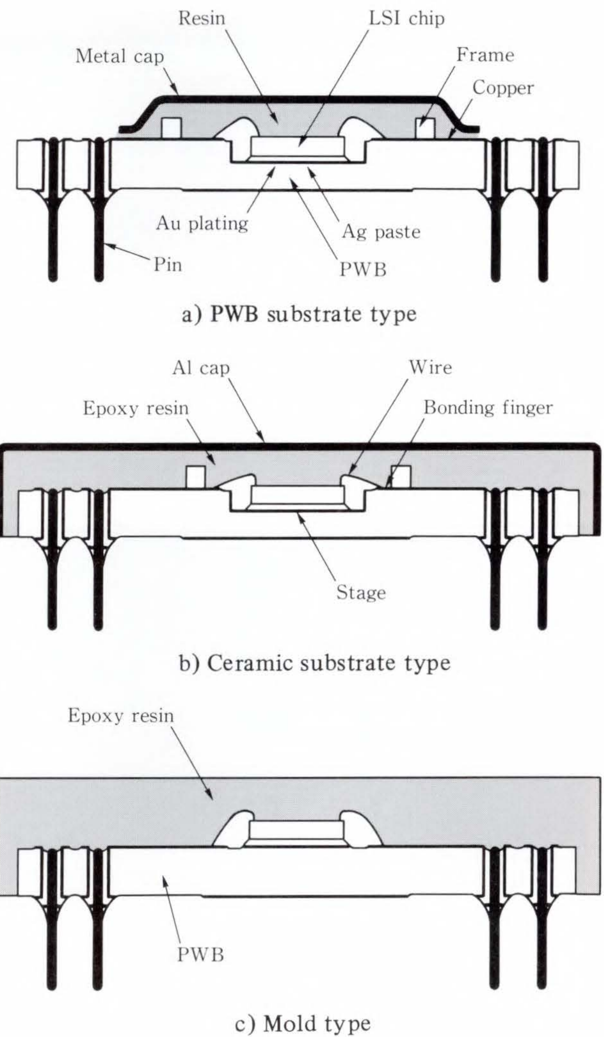


Fig. 2—Pin grid array (PGA).

good electrical characteristics and a low package weight because it uses Cu wiring (35 μm thick), and has good matching because the substrate material is the same as that of the printed wiring board. PPGA is used in a broader range of applications. However, the limitations of the



a) PWB substrate type

b) Ceramic substrate type

c) Mold type

Fig. 3—Plastic pin grid array (PPGA) structures.

wiring pattern and outer lead limit the maximum number of pins in a PPGA to about 200. Various structures are being investigated. Figure 3 shows the cross sections of possible PPGA structures. Figures 3a) and b) are similar to the PGA structure, have a resin seal using the potting method, and c) use the transfer mold method for sealing. In the future, PPGA will mainly be used for general-purpose gate arrays. Figure 4 shows a PPGA.

2.4 Small Outline Package (SOP)

The external dimensions of this package conform to both EIAJ and JEDEC standards.

Recently, thin Shrink SOP (SSOP), including Very SOP (VSOP) and Thin SOP (TSOP), has been developed for card mounting. SOP is used

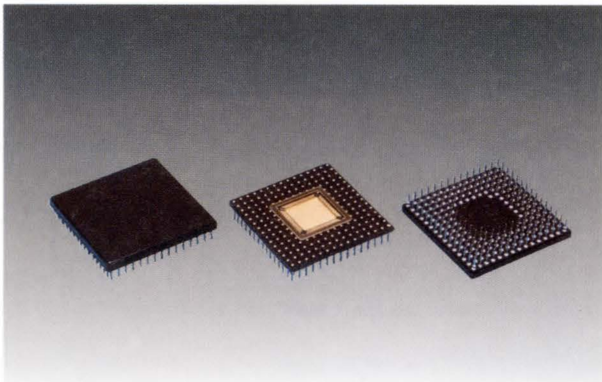


Fig. 4–PPGA.

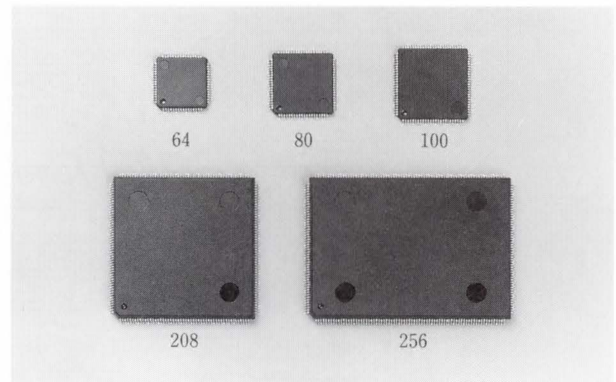


Fig. 6–Very small quad flat package (SQFP).

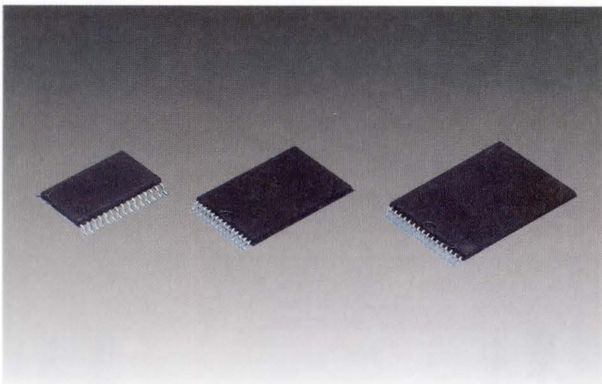


Fig. 5–Small outline package (SOP).

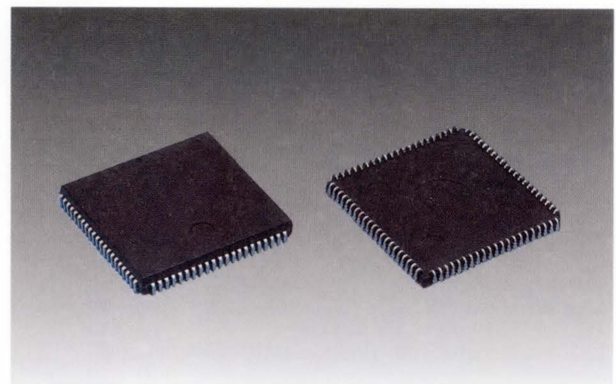


Fig. 7–Plastic leaded chip carrier (PLCC).

in microcomputers. (see Fig. 5).

2.5 Quad Flat Package (QFP)

The external dimensions of this package also conform to the JEDEC standard. Large quantities of QFPs of many types are used in gate arrays, custom devices, and microcomputers. Thin Shrink QFP (SQFP), including Very Small QFP (VQFP) and Thin QFP (TQFP) has been developed in the same way as SOP (see Fig. 6).

2.6 Leadless Chip Carrier (LCC)

The external dimensions conform to the JEDEC standard. LCC is used to obtain a highly reliable device. As more pins are required, solder connection becomes unstable due to dispersion in the solder pad when mounting a LCC on the printed wiring board. Therefore, a leaded chip carrier is being developed.

2.7 Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier (PLCC)

The external dimensions conform to the JEDEC standard. PLCC is used in microcomputers, gate arrays, and custom devices. Although the mounting area is small, the outer lead structure is a J type. Therefore, only 100 pins can be manufactured. Figure 7 shows a PLCC.

3. Technology and trends in ASIC packaging

3.1 High-pin-count Technology

Table 1 lists the current high-pin-count packages. The packages have been developed to improve IC/LSI integration and accommodate a higher pin count. The pitch has been reduced because the body size was reduced while the number of pins has increased. The ceramic package is fundamentally different from the plastic package because its manufacturing method is different. Ceramic QFP and PGA can achieve a higher pin count than the plastic

Table 1. Current high pin count packages

Package	Pin count	Pin pitch	Body size
Plastic QFP	80	0.80	14 x 20
	100	0.65	14 x 20
	120	0.80	28 x 28
	160	0.65	28 x 28
PLCC	44	1.27	16.6 x 16.6
	68	1.27	24.2 x 24.2
	84	1.27	29.3 x 29.3
PPGA	135	2.54	31.8 x 31.8
	144	2.54	36.8 x 36.8
	179	2.54	39.4 x 39.4
Ceramic QFP	60	0.5	18.3 x 18.3
	84	0.5	12.7 x 12.7
	164	0.5	27.9 x 27.9
	180	0.4	22.5 x 22.5
	260	0.5	41.1 x 41.1
PGA	179	2.54	38.1 x 38.1
	208	2.54	43.0 x 43.0
	256	2.54	50 x 50
	256	1.27	25.1 x 25.1
LCC	84	1.0	23.4 x 23.4
	200	0.5 tagger	15 x 15

package. Figure 8 shows the relationship between the number of pins and body size, and shows projections for the future. The ceramic package has technological advantages which enable it to achieve a higher pin count.

The technological problems for various package types are described below.

3.1.1 Reduction of inner lead pitch

For the ceramic package, the inner lead pitch has been reduced, as described below.

A sample of the LCC200 having an inner lead pitch of 0.2 mm, has been successfully manufactured. As a result, the W grain size and size distribution were mainly adjusted to improve the metalized paste composition.

The lithographic process was improved to enhance the precision of the screen mask and pattern. The precision of the green sheet was improved by increasing the precision of the facility making the green sheet and dryness of the green sheet.

A two-step bonding pad structure was also developed. To further reduce the pitch, the two-step bonding pad must be changed to a zigzag structure and a multi-step bonding pad structure must be developed.

The pattern precision must be enhanced by improving the screen print technology. Alignment precision of the multilayer wiring must be improved by improving the green sheet lamination technology.

Finally, the package distortion must be reduced by improving the firing technique.

For the plastic package, the inner lead pitch was reduced as described below.

Figure 9 shows the relationship between the

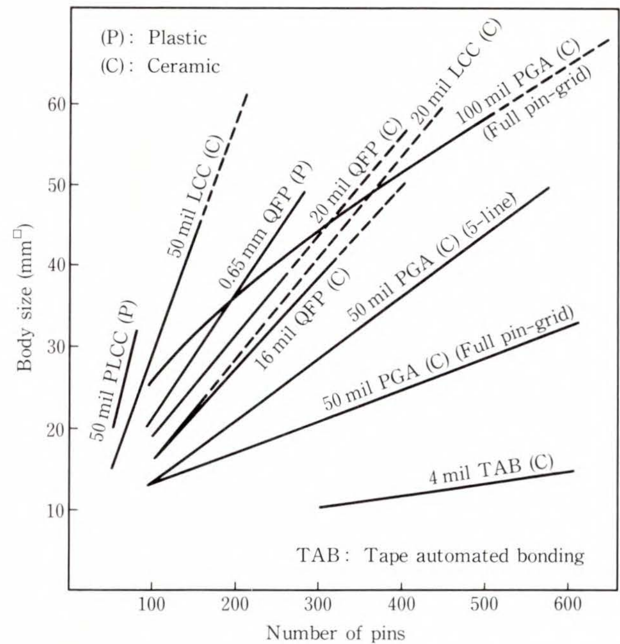


Fig. 8—Number of pins vs. body size.

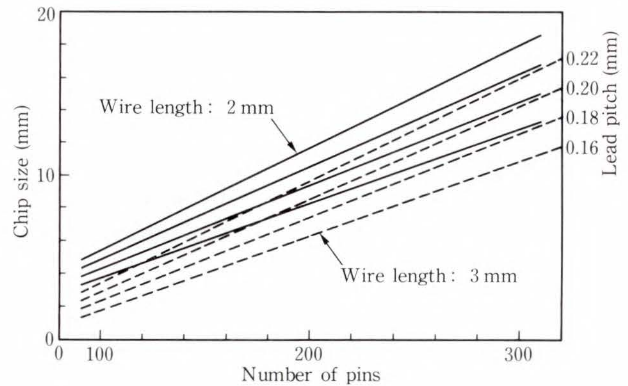


Fig. 9—Number of pins vs. chip size.

Table 2. Lead frame materials

Alloy	Element (%)	λ (Cal·cm-·s·°C)	Electric (% IACS)	Hardness (kgf/mm^2)	Tencil (kgf/mm^2)	Youngs (kgf/mm^2)	Elongation (%)
Cu	99.96 Cu	0.934	100	110	35	–	6
42 Alloy	Fe-42Ni	0.036	2.5	200	80	16 800	7
MF202	Cu-2.0Sn-0.2Ni	0.37	30	190	55	11 500	11
TAMAC 11	Cu-0.15Sn-0.09Ag-0.06P-0.06Mg	0.80	82	135	43	12 500	>2
SLF-3	Cu-0.8Cr-0.12Sn	0.75	80	170	55	12 000	10
EFTEC64	Cu-0.3Cr-0.25Sn-0.1Zn	0.72	75	165	55	12 100	>10
MCL-1	Cu-0.3Cr-0.1Zr	0.72	–	180	60	14 000	>4
CCZ	Cu-0.55Cr-0.25Zr	0.83	85	150	50	13 900	13
EFTEC200	Cu-0.25Ti-1.5Ni-2.0Sn-0.5Zn	0.36	35	195	65	12 500	>5
KLF-125	Cu-1.25Sn-3.2Ni-0.7Si-0.3Zn	0.36	35	>200	>60	12 500	10
NK164	Cu-1.6Ni-0.4Si-0.4Zn	0.47	50	>170	>55	14 000	>5

T.E.C.: 42 Alloy = 4.3 x 10/°C, Cu Alloy = about 18 x 10/°C
Specific gravity: 42 Alloy = 8.2, Cu Alloy = 8.9

number of pins and chip size when the wire length and wire angle are taken into consideration when designing the pattern. This figure indicates that the QFP320 pin can be manufactured and the lead pitch can be reduced to 0.16 mm when it is properly designed. The process limitation for the lead frame when using the stamping method has conventionally been the lead thickness for both the pattern width and gap[7]).

Currently, the pattern width and gap are about 70 percent of the lead thickness. That is, when 42 alloy having la thickness of 0.15 mm is used, a pitch of about 0.2 mm can be processed. To further reduce the pitch, the lead thickness must be reduced. This will reduce the amount of heat conducted through the lead frame and thus reduce the heat dissipation characteristics of the entire package.

As the lead strength also becomes insufficient, a lead thickness of 0.15 mm and a 0.2 mm pitch is a practical limit. Since a copper lead is soft and the lead strength is low, the lead thickness is limited to 0.2 mm for practical applications, and the lead pitch is limited to about 0.2 mm. The copper material[8]) has low electrical resistance and high heat conductivity, thus the lead thickness can be reduced if the mechanical strength is improved. The use of the new materials listed in Table 2 is being investigated.

3.1.2 Reduction of outer lead pitch

For the ceramic package, the outer lead pitch has been reduced, as described below.

Currently, a 0.4 mm pitch for QFP180, a 0.5 mm pitch for QFP260, and a 1.27 mm pitch are available for the Pin Grid Array (PGA). In the near future, a pitch of 0.25 mm to 0.32 mm for QFP400 to QFP600 and a 0.63 mm pitch for PGA400 to PGA600 will become available.

To achieve this, the firing shrinkage must be controlled. Although dispersion in the firing shrinkage is generally about 1.0 percent, it is currently 0.5 percent at Fujitsu. However, this is insufficient for developing a high-pin-count package, and the dispersion will be improved to 0.3 percent in the future.

Because improvement of only the precision of the conventional thick film technique is insufficient for forming an outer leaded pad, the fine pitch pattern is achieved by combining the thick film technique and thin film technique.

As the pitch is reduced, the outer lead may not be able to be used with the fine pitch pattern when conventional materials and manufacturing method are used. In this case, Tape Automated Bonding (TAB) lead material and the lead bonding method will be required.

Table 3. Au- and Cu-wire characteristics

a) Au-Wire

Maker	Type	Room temperature		High temperature (250 °C)	
		Fracture strength (g)	Elongation (%)	Fracture strength (g)	Elongation (%)
A	FA (S)	12.9	8.9	9.4	1.9
	FA	15.5	4.5	11.3	2.0
	SR	11.2	4.6	3	4
	C	13.0	5.1	3	4
	M	9.7	8.9	6.7	2.1
B	TG-F-S	13.7	8.7	9.4	5.2
C	SGS-SH	16.3	5.1	11	3
	SGA-1-SH	13.8	5.2	9	3
	SGA-2-SH	15.8	6.9	11	3
D	MGH	15.7	4.3	14.1	3.5
E	MGW-F 1	17.1	5.7	12.8	1.5
	MGW-H 2	16.8	5.7	13.5	1.6

b) Cu-wire

Maker	Type	Characteristics	
		Fracture strength (g)	Elongation (%)
A	TC-A	17.5	11.6
	TC-D	18.0	11.8
B	26	10.6	7.2
	28	16.3	15.8
	32	17.6	15.2
C	H050	17.9	17.4
D	MCR	16.1	18.5
E	EPCU	15.8	16.9

For the plastic package, the outer lead pitch has been reduced, as described below.

The conventional QFP160 pin, having a pitch of 0.65 mm, formerly had the smallest pitch available. But recently, a QFP208 pin having a ptich of 0.5 mm has been manufactured. To achieve this, improvements were made mainly in the cut-off metal mold and bending metal mold structures. The socket technique for testing was also developed. To develop a QFP having 300 or more pins, the lead pitch must be 0.4 mm. To achieve this lead pitch, it is necessary to first improve the lead frame stamping precision, improve the cut-off metal mold and bending metal mold structures for the lead frame, and develop the test socket.

3.1.3 Development of bonding techniques[9)]

To achieve a high pin count, various bonding techniques have been developed as described below.

1) Aluminum wedge bonding

Bonding speed is a major problem for this bonding technique. The speed was 0.6 s/wire a few years ago. It is currently 0.35 s/wire. Aluminium wedge bonding is used for up to 256 pins. But its bonding speed is insufficient for mass production when aluminium wedge bonding is used for a high pin count. It is necessary to develop a bonder having a bonding speed of about 0.2 s/wire.

2) Gold nail head bonding.

The first problem with this bonding technique is wire flow. When the materials listed in Table 3 were investigated, wire for Full Automatic Bonders (AF) having higher strength than conventional Stress Relieved (SR) wire was developed to enable 300 pins to be wired. However, when 300 or more pins are wired, the space between the wires becomes smaller and the wires are liable to touch each other due to wire flow. To solve this problem, a wire having higher strength is being developed. A high-precision wire bonder must be developed to prevent the initial curling during bonding from causing wires to touch each other when 300 or

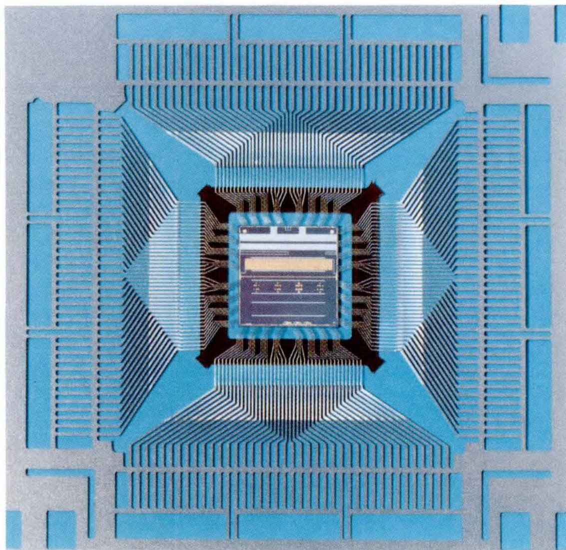


Fig. 10—Sample of after outer lead bonding (OLB).

Table 4. TAB sample dimensions

(Unit: μm)

Application	Plastic QFP	PGA
Pin count	160	440
Bump material	Au	Au (on chip)
Bump size	ϕ 75 x 30	60 x 60 x 25
Lead width	50-70	45
Cu thickness	35	35
Sn plating-thickness	0.5	0.5
Poly imide thickness	75, 125	125
Tape configulation	3 layer	3 layer
Inner lead pitch	100	100
Outer lead pitch	300	100

more pins are wired.

A second problem is the bonding speed. The bonding speed using ultrasonic thermocompression was 0.35 s/wire a few years ago and is currently 0.25 s/wire. Methods to enable a speed of 0.20 s/wire are being investigated.

The third problem is the wire size. Wires of 25 μm, 30 μm, and 38 μm in diameter are currently being used. Development of finer wires to reduce costs are being investigated.

3) Copper nail head bonding[10)]

Copper wire has the following advantages:

i) The growth speed of Cu-AI interlayer metal compound is slower than that of Au-AI.

ii) Copper wire has higher tensile strength and heat conductivity than Au, thus it is advantageous for finer wire.

iii) Copper wire has a higher Young's modulus and shear modulus and lower specific gravity than Au, thus loops are not liable to dangle immediately after bonding and the wire is not liable to flow during molding.

iv) Direct bonding is enabled for copper lead.

v) Copper wire is less expensive than gold. Copper wire therefore has more advantages than gold wire for achieving a higher pin count. The materials listed in Cu-wire of Table 3 are being evaluated. One problem is that copper wire is easily oxidized and an inert atmosphere is required during bonding.

4) Tape Automated Bonding (TAB)

The TAB technique has the following advantages over the wire technique[11)-13)]:

i) Both the pattern width and pitch can be more easily reduced because the Photo Etching method is used in manufacturing the lead.

ii) The bonding time is shorter because the gang bonding method is used.

iii) The bonding strength is higher.

iv) The electrical characteristics are better.

v) Flat bonding is possible. The use of this technique in various applications is being investigated.

Several examples of use are shown below.

First, the use of this technique for a plastic package having 200 or more pins is being examined. After Inner Lead Bonding (ILB), Outer Lead Bonding (OLB) is performed on a lead frame without a stage, then the normal process is performed. Figure 10 shows a sample after OLB. Table 4 lists the specifications of QFP. The major problems of this application are lead stability during molding, thermal stress performance, and moisture performance.

Second, the application of this technique to Plastic PGA (PPGA) is being examined.

This technique has the following advantages:

i) The bonding strength for a Cu lead

Table 5. Thermal expansion coefficient of ceramics

Material	Resistivity (Ω·cm)	Dielectric constant	T.E.C. (10/°C)	λ (Cal·cm·s·°C)
Alumina	>10	8.5-9.5	6.0-6.5	0.03-0.04
SiC	>4 x 10	40	3.5	0.64
SI_3N_4	>10	7.5	2.8-3.2	0.03-0.05
AlN	>10	8.9	5.7	0.14
Mulite	>10	6.6	3.0	0.017
Glass ceramics	>10	5.4	4.8	0.005

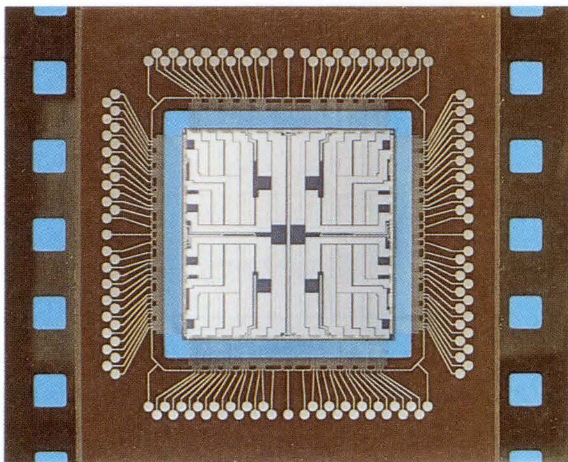


Fig. 11—Test die after inner lead bonding (ILB).

(50 μm x 35 μt) is about 50 g, higher than the strength for gold wire (FA 30 μm), which is about 15 g.

ii) Flat bonding is possible. However, scrubbing is impossible because ILB has already been performed during die bonding, and tape die material is required.

Third, as an example of high-density assembly, a prototype package (TAB) having a pitch of 4 mil and 484 pins was manufactured. Figure 11 shows the configuration of an ILB sample. Table 4 lists the specifications of PGA. Using TAB to manufacture a package having a pitch of 2 mil to 3 mil is being investigated. Major problems of this application are the development of fine pattern tape, the development of a new bonder, and the development of a thermocompression jig and tool.

Fourth, the technique for resin coating after OLB is being examined[14]. After OLB, the package is secured on the carrier and is coated in resin by potting for final shipping.

Current problems are:

i) Improvement of mechanical strength and stress performance of bonding,

ii) development of a sealing method, and

iii) development of a new seal material.

3.2 Large chip technology

Figure 9 shows the relation between the pin count and average chip size.

1) Ceramic package

A Gate Array about 15 mm square is currently mounted on the PGA400 pin. It is possible that a 20 mm square chip can be mounted in the near future if the stresses can be reduced.

First, the stage warp must be reduced to reduce the stress. To reduce the stage warp, the technique for handling the green sheet must be improved to decrease uneven shrinkage during firing.

Second, the die material requires lower stress. Although Au-Si eutectic and glass with a low-melting point are currently used, Ag glass paste, Ag-PI paste and Al-Pl paste are being developed.

Third, ceramics having a low coefficient of thermal expansion must be developed. The ceramics listed in Table 5 are being examined. AlN is the most promising ceramic[15]. Glass ceramic can be fired at low temperatures, enabling Au, Ag, Ag-Ad, Ag-Pt, and Cu to be used as wire materials. These facilitate refining the pattern and increasing the signal speed.

2) Plastic package

A 10 mm square G/A is currently mounted on the QFP160 pin. It is possible that a 15 mm square chip can be mounted in the near future.

Factors

1) First factor : Humidity from resin bulk and resin/lead-frame boundary

2) Second factor : Decrease in resin strength at high temperature T. E. C. over T_g
Decrease in adhesive force at high temperature

Package crack process

Humidity absorption	Storage in storehouse
Diffusion	Through resin bulk
Solder dip	260 ℃, 10 s
Vaporization of water	Vapor pressure
Delamination	Between resin and lead-frame

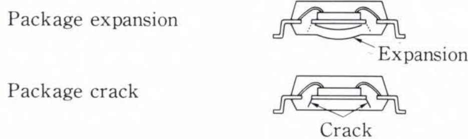


Fig. 12–Package cracking.

The plastic package has more serious problems than the ceramic package because the seal material comes into direct contact with the chip.

The first problem is to improve the thermal stress.

A method for reducing the stresses in the seal resin is being researched. The Young's modulus of epoxy resin was reduced from 1 300 kg/mm to 1 250 kg/mm by transforming the epoxy resin using a soft polymer such as silicone resin, improving the dispersion of the transformed resin in the epoxy resin, and enhancing the chemical bonding between the transformed resin and epoxy resin.

A method for reducing the stress in the Ag paste for die bonding is also being researched. The Young's modulus of Ag paste was reduced from 300 kg/mm to 50 kg/mm by improving the molecular structure of epoxy resin and transforming the epoxy resin using a soft polymer.

A means of making the Ag paste into a film is being investigated. Ag paste is made into a film by changing the epoxy resin of Ag paste into the B-stage. A film has a constant die bonding layer thickness enabling the die to be bonded uniformly and eliminating localized stresses.

The second problem is to improve the solder dip resistance[16),17)]. Figure 12 shows QFP cracking due to the solder dipping. To prevent the package from cracking, a resin having a lower humidity absorption rate is used. Also, the strength of the seal resin, T_g, and adhesion to the lead frame are being improved. The lead frame pattern and structure are also being improved to increase their adhesion to resin. Figure 13 shows the sample model to be used in the experiment. Dimples 200 μm square × 150 μm deep are made by stamping in a regular matrix on the back of the die stage. This increases the adhesion of the resin to the back of the die stage and reduces package cracking.

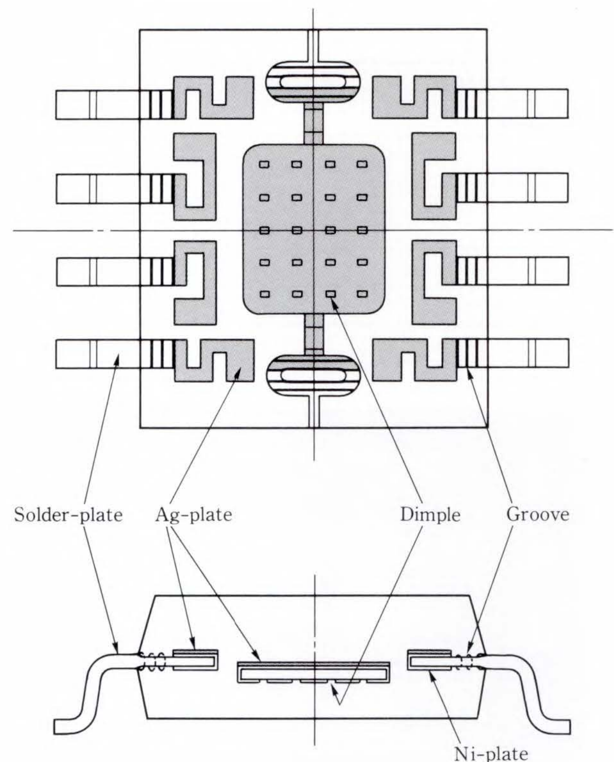


Fig. 13–Sample model patterns.

The third problem is to improve the moisture resistance. Improvement of the lead frame pattern and structure and higher purity of the seal resin are being examined as shown in Fig. 13. GROOVE indicates that several grooves (e.g. 100 μm wide × 50 μm deep) are set on both sides of each lead. This improves the adhesion of resin to the lead frame and makes the interface longer which reduces the humidity absorption rate.

The fourth problem is moldability. On large

Table 6. Resin development

	Item	Factor	Measure
Reliability	Humidity resistance	Humidity absorption	Resin composition improve
		Adherence with lead frame	Coupling agent
		Ionic impurity	Purification of components
	Thermal stress	Elastic coefficient	Plasticizer
		Thermal expansion coefficient	Filler content
		Filler size	Reject largesize filler
	Solderability	Resin strength at high temperature	Resin composition improve
		Thermal expansion coefficient	Filler content increase
		Thermal conductivity	Filler content increase
Moldability	α-particle	Uranium content	Filler purification
	Fluidity	Viscosity	Resin composition, filler
	Fillness	Gel-time, viscosity	Resin composition, catalyst
	Cure	Cure time	Catalyst content
	Mold release	Releasability	Wax content
	Mold stain	Mold stain	Plasticizer, wax
	Marking	Package surface stain	Plasticizer, wax
	Shelf life	Degradation	Catalyst

Table 7. Mounting area of packages

Pin number	Package	Lead pitch (mm)	Mounting area (mm^2)	Area ratio (%)
20	DIP	2.54	187	100
	SOP	1.27	98	52
	ZIP	1.27	74	40
	LCC	1.27	84	45
24	DIP	2.54	460	100
	SL-DIP	2.54	308	67
	SK-DIP	2.54	226	49
	SOP	1.27	119	26
	LCC	1.27	73	16
	SOJ	1.27	135	29
64	SH-DIP	1.778	1 104	100
	PGA	2.54	691	63
	QFP	1.00	428	39
	LCC	1.02	337	31
260	PGA	2.54	2 581	100
		1.27	630	24
	QFP	0.508	1 909	74
		0.4	1 186	46
	TAB	0.15	169	7
	F.C.	0.5	169	7

chips, there tends to be voids, incomplete filling, the wire tends to flow, and the stage tends to shift. The incidence of the molding failing also increases. To prevent the molding from failing, a means to improve the moldability of the resin and the metal mold structure, and a pattern that increases the distance between each lead is being examined.

Seal resin is mainly being developed as a countermeasure for the plastic package[18]. Table 6 lists the current state of resin development.

First, it is important to improve moisture resistance. The humidity absorption rate can be reduced by improving the epoxy resin composition, enhancing the adhesion with the lead frame by improving the coupling agent, and reducing the impurities by making epoxy resin, hardener, and filler components of higher purity.

Second, it is important to reduce the problems caused by thermal stress. A lower Young's modulus will reduce the thermal stress. This is done by adding an agent for increasing flexibility, reducing the rate of thermal expansion by increasing the filler content, and reducing the stress by removing coarse filler[19].

Third, it is important to improve moldability. Moldability is improved by reducing the viscosity of the melt resin. This is done by improving the resin composition and filler size distribution and improving the hardness by using an improved catalyst.

3.3 High-density assembly technology[20]

Table 7 lists the mounting area of each package. The LCC, PLCC, and Small Outline J-Lead Package (SQJ) are advantageous because their mounting area is small and they have a

Table 8. Current or plan shrink packages

Name	SSOP				TSOP			SQFP					TQFP	SQFP			
Pin number	16	20	24	30	20	28	32	32	48	64	80	100	64	120	208	256	304
Pin pitch (mm)	0.65				0.65	0.55	0.60	0.5					0.5	0.5			
Body size (mm)	4.4×5.0	4.4×6.5	5.6×7.8	5.6×9.7	4.4×6.5	8.0×11.8	10.0×13.8	5×5	7×7	10×10	12×12	14×14	10×10	14×20	28×40		40×40
Thickness (mm)	1.2				1.0			1.4					1.0	1.4			
Production	Current				Plan			4Q:88	Current				Plan	Current		Plan	

small number of pins. However, it is almost impossible to check the state of the interconnecting region after mounting. Also, if there are more than 100 pins, the lead pitch cannot be reduced and the body size becomes too large (currently, the pitch is 1.27 mm). Therefore, it is difficult for these packages to become major commercial products. Consequently, QFP and PGA Surface Mount Devices (SMD) will mainly be used in the future. As described above, the body size of these packages is made as small as possible by reducing the pin pitch. Small, thin packages such as SSOP and SQFP have recently been developed for mounting on cards and modules. Table 8 lists the package series. To develop these packages, adhesion between the seal resin and the lead frame and resin strength were first increased, and the moisture absorption rate and melt viscosity of resin were reduced.

As in Fig. 13, the adhesion between the lead frame and the resin was enhanced and the absorption rate was reduced.

The strength of the Au wire was increased and the bonding conditions were improved to set the height of the wire loop to 100 μm or less to accommodate a thinner package.

The current wire loop technique cannot accommodate higher pin counts or the diversification of future thin packages due to the inner lead pitch and wire height. This problem is being investigated because the TAB technique is required.

3.4 High-power device technology

3.4.1 Ceramic package[21)]

Figure 14 shows the relationship between the velocity of the cooling air and the thermal resistance for a FPT-series package. As the stage size increases, the thermal resistance decreases. The cooling fins have a very significant effect.

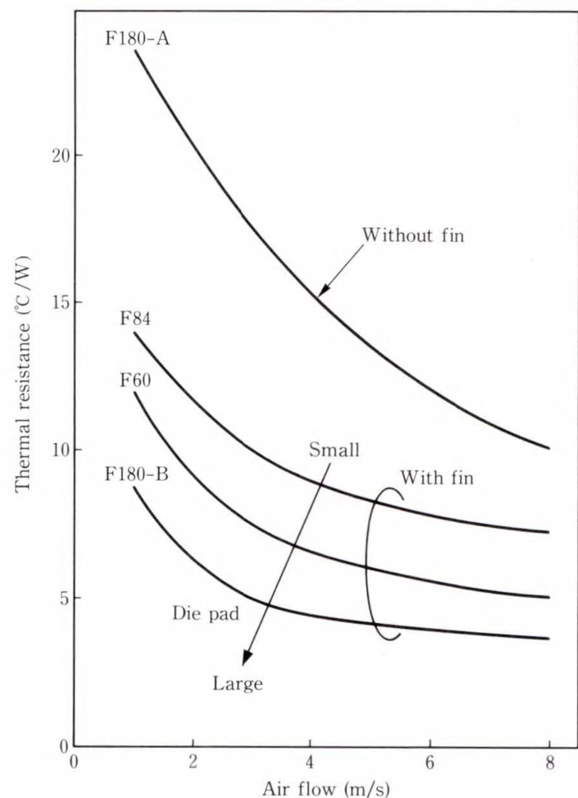


Fig. 14—Thermal resistances of several flat packages.

Figure 15 shows the cross sections of a typical package. To improve heat dissipation, the chip was directly mounted on the metal stage by die bonding. Currently, a gate array having a maximum power consumption of about 10 W can be mounted on a PGA having the structure shown in Fig. 8a). In the near future, devices having a maximum power consumption of 15 W to 20 W will be mounted. Consequently, the design of the cooling fins is being

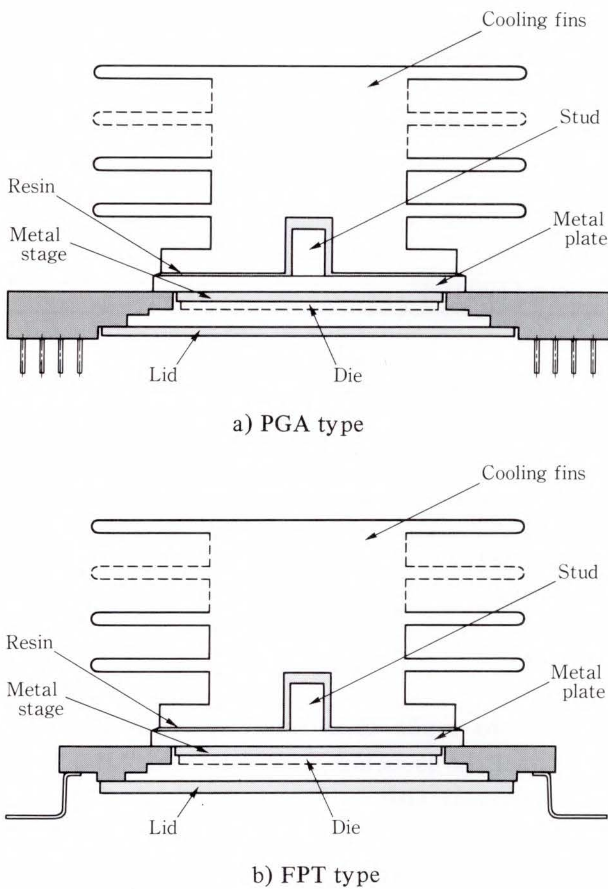


Fig. 15–Cross section of ceramic packages.

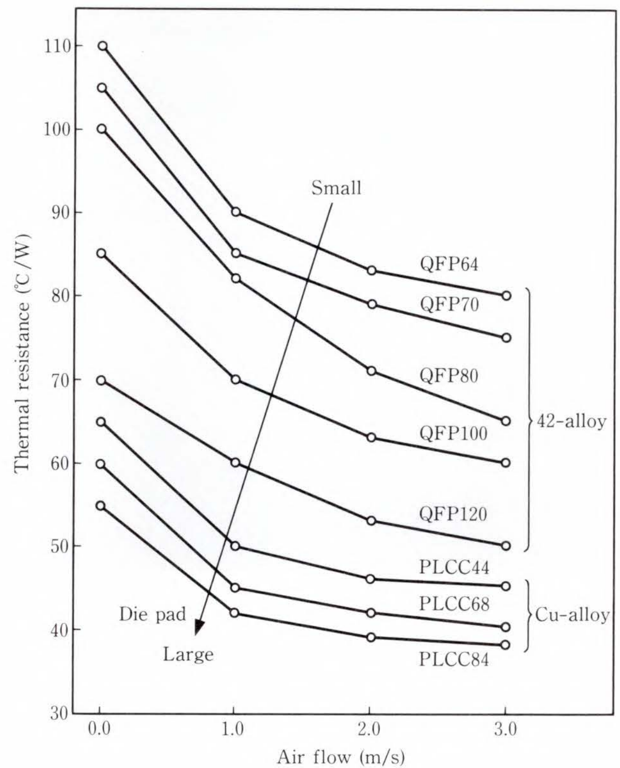


Fig. 16–Typical thermal resistance of plastic packages.

improved.

Cooling methods, such as liquid cooling, are also being investigated.

3.4.2 Plastic package

Figure 16 shows the relationship between the velocity of the cooling air and thermal resistance for each package.

The figure indicates that as the number of pins and the stage size increase, thermal resistance decreases. If the lead frame material is changed from iron alloy 42ALLOY (heat conductivity = 0.036 cal/cm·s·°C) to copper alloy MF202 (heat conductivity = 0.37 cal/cm·s·°C), the thermal resistance decreases by about 50 percent. Currently, gate arrays having a maximum power consumption of about 1 W can be mounted on QFP120. In the future, devices having a maximum power consumption of 2 W to 3 W may be mounted.

Consequently, the heat conductivity of the lead frame must be further increased. For example, if the lead frame material is changed from MF202 to SLF-3 (heat conductivity = 0.75 cal/cm·s·°C) the thermal resistance will decrease by 20-30 percent.

Heat conductivity can be increased to 3-time that of the current value of 0.002 cal/cm·s·°C by changing the seal resin filler to a filler having a heat conductivity higher than the quartz currently being used. This will decrease the thermal resistance by 20-30 percent.

In case the above improvements prove to be insufficient, a means to improve the package structure, including mounting of an external cooling fin, is being investigated.

3.5 Developing wafer package[22]

Figure 17 shows a sample of the manufactured package. Table 9 lists its specifications.

First, the problems in future development must be investigated by considering the relationship between the package and system in terms of the entire package structure, including the seal

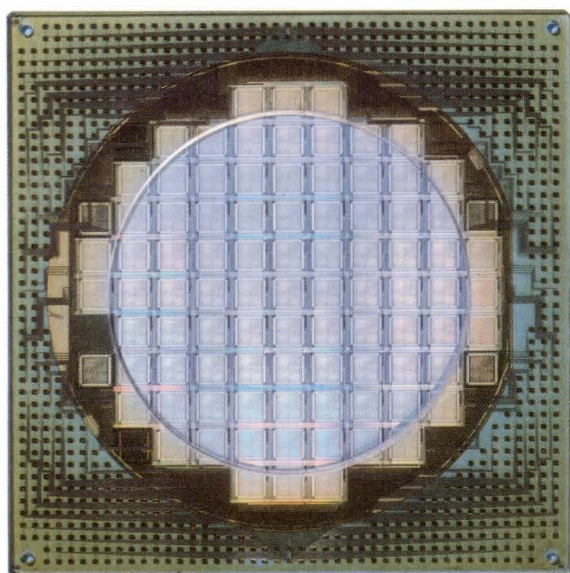


Fig. 17—Sample of wafer package.

Table 9. Specifications of wafer scale integration and its substrate.

a) Feature of WSI

Bump size	10 mil x 10 mil
Bump pitch	20 mil
No. of bump	725
Wafer size	4 inches in dia
Bump material	Pb/sn

b) Feature of substrate

Material	SiO_2/BiO_2 galss
T.C.E.	4.1 ppm
Size	4.65 x 4.65 inches
No. of pad	725
Pad pitch	100 mil
Pad size	40 x 40 mil

and heat dissipation components.

Second, new ceramics must be developed for the substrate material. Ceramics having a high heat conductivity, such as AlN and SiC, glass ceramics that can be fired at low temperature, and mulite ceramics having a lower coefficient of thermal expansion are being investigated.

Third, the bonding method must be researched. Although the wire bonding technique can be used for up to 300 pins, the TAB technique will be used for 300 pins to 600 pins and the flip chip technique will be used for 600 pins or more.

Fourth, the outer lead structure is being investigated. The QFP type is suitable for 300 pins or fewer and the SMD-mounted PGA type is suitable for 300 pins or more.

In addition to the above considerations, methods for using the printed wiring board as a substrate and using the silicon substrate as a mother carrier must also to be investigated.

4. Conclusion

ASIC technology continues to rapidly progress and expand, and ASICs are playing a major role in IC/LSI. ASIC packages are being highly integrated, diversified, and customized. Due to the demand for high-density assembly of IC/LSI to make electronic equipment smaller, the package is being changed from THD using conventional DIP to SMD using FPT. The wide range of packages offered by Fujitsu meet most user requirements.

However, requests for IC/LSI are increasing, and many new devices such as

1) high-integrated gate array (50 000 or more gates),
2) DRAM (16 Mbits to 64 Mbits), and
3) high-function microcomputer (32 bits or more) will be developed.

Demands for custom packages such as wafer packages, modules, and cards are also increasing. This trend will continue with the expansion of ASICs. Therefore, the requiremens for ASIC packages are expected to be more diversified and to become more stringent.

In response to these concerns, this paper first described the ASIC packages offered by Fujitsu.

The technological aspects and trends for these ASIC packages were also described as follows: High-pin-count technology, large-chip technology, high-density-assembly technology, high-power-device technology, and special custom package technology.

As future applications expand, the technological problems they present may increase,

and there will be a quick response to solve these problems.

References

1) Nagami, A.: ASIC Memories giving the most suitable solution for specialization and generalization. NIKKEI MICRODEVICE, **22**, 1987-04, pp. 75-90.
2) Chin, I.: ASIC Technology trend and future spread. COMPUTER DESIGN. **36**, 1987-10, pp. 42-47.
3) Hirai, S.: Prospects of the ASIC. *J. IEICE*, **71**, 2, pp. 172-180 (1988).
4) – : LSI Package is rushing into ASPAC generation. NIKKEI MICRODEVICE, **38**, 1988-08, pp. 31-60.
5) Ohara, Y., Murasugi, K.: Reliability of high pincount flat packages for ASIC. NIKKEI ELECTRONICS, **423**, 1987-11-16, pp. 187-200.
6) Murakami, G. et al.: Packaging Technology. (in Japanese), *Hitachi Hyoron*, **69**, 7, pp. 13-17 (1987).
7) Nakazima, K., and Kitakaze, K.: Lead Frame Materials, **27**, 8, pp. 79-83 (1988).
8) Miyafuji, M.: Development of Cu-Alloy lead frame materials. (in Japanese), Electronic Packaging Technol., **4**, 4, pp. 38-45 (1988).
9) Hatada, K.: The latest technical trend of the wireless bonding. (in Japanese), Semiconductor World, **6**, 10, pp. 84-91 (1987).
10) Oosaka, S.: Proceeding application of Cu wirebonding. (in Japanese), Semiconductor World, **6**, 10, pp. 70-77 (1987).
11) Kinoshita, M.: Chip on board (COB) assembly. (in Japanese), Electronic Packaging Technol., **4**, 4, pp. 46-49 (1988).
12) Takekawa, K. et al.: Using the TAB for general packages. NIKKEI MICRODEVICE, **27**, 1987-09, pp. 99-106.
13) Hatada, K. et al.: New Film-Carrier-Assembly Technology 'Transferred Bump TAB'. (in Japanese), *National Tech. Rept.*, **31**, 3, pp. 412-420 (1985).
14) Hirota, M.: TAB Instruments for resin encapsulation. (in Japanese), Electronic Parts and Materials, **26**, 9, pp. 51-56 (1987).
15) Iwase, N.: AlN Ceramic as next generation packaging material. (in Japanese), Semicon News, **55**, 8, pp. 20-26 (1988).
16) Ikho, K.W.: Technical trend of plastic package for semiconductor. (in Japanese), Electronic Packaging Technol., **4**, 8, pp. 67-71 (1988).
17) Kitano, M.: Analysis of Package Cracking During Reflow Soldering Process. 1988 IEEE, Int. Reliab. Phys. Symp., 1988, pp. 90-95.
18) Sawai K.: Epoxy molding compound for encapsulation of semiconductor. (in Japanese), Electronic Parts and Materials, **4**, 4, pp. 74-79 (1988).
19) Sasaki, S.: The Effect of Fillers in Plastic Resin on IC Devices. (in Japanese), *Trans. IEICE*, **XJ71-C**, 6, pp. 834-840 (1988).
20) –: SMT Newage 88. NIKKEI MICRODEVICE, **38**, 1988-10, pp. 119-137.
21) Iwase, N.: PGA Package using AlN (in Japanese), Electronic Parts and Materials, **26**, 9, pp. 46-50 (1987).
22) Yamashita, K.: Possibility and limit of Eafer Scale LSI. NIKKEI ELECTRONICS, **422**, 1987-06-01, pp. 141-161.

Michio Sono

Assembly and Packaging Eng. Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Chemistry Eng.
Tohoku University 1967
Master of Applied Chemistry Eng.
Tohoku University 1969
Specializing in High Density Packaging and Plastic Materials

UDC 621.3.049.774

Reliability on Short-Channel MOSLSIs

● Ken Shono ● Kenji Ishida ● Nagao Yamada *(Manuscript received June 20, 1988)*

This paper describes the reliability problems associated with the scaling down of MOSLSI. Because the power supply voltage is not scaled, the internal electric field increases, causing reliability problems such as degradation of MOSFET due to hot carrier generation and electric breakdown of the gate oxide. Furthermore, the high-speed operation and narrow metalization width requires the current density to increase, which redues the interconnection reliability.

These problems can be overcome by improving the device structure and fabrication technology.

1. Introduction

To enable devices to have high performance, the channel length of MOSFET and metalization width has been reduced to about 1 μm. However, this causes various problems in reliability, such as hot carriers[1], time-dependent dielectric breakdown (TDDB)[2], and electromigration[3]. These phenomena have various mechanisms, but all result from device scaling down. MOSLSI devices are reduced according to the scaling rule. According to this rule, the dimensions are reduced in equal proportion, thus the electric field and current density remain the same. However, the supply voltage of scaled devices is not proportionally reduced, but remains at 5 V. This departure from the scaling rule makes it difficult to obtain reliability in scaled devices. This problem has, to a large extent, been solved by the introduction of new materials and by improvements in the device structure and fabrication process.

This paper describes the mechanisms of hot carrier generation, time-dependent dielectric breakdown, and electromigration. The paper also presents the countermeasures for these problems.

2. Hot carrier

2.1 Hot carrier generation

Figure 1 shows the basic structure of the n-channel MOSFET. The electrons flow in the channel from source to drain according to the drain electric field. This flow is controlled by the gate. As the channel length is reduced, the electric field generated by the drain increases and the electrons in the channel become highly energized.

The electrons then have sufficient energy to overcome the potential barrier between the SiO_2 and Si, and then enter the gate SiO_2 in the vicinity of the drain. These electrons are called channel hot carriers and form fixed electric charges. They also increase the interface state density and change characteristics such as V_{th} and β. Also, electrons in the channel collide with Si atoms and generate electron-hole pairs by impact ionization. If the electric field is large enough, electron-hole pairs are subsequently generated by avalanche multiplication. These are called avalanche hot carriers. Avalanche hot carriers may obtain sufficient energy to enter the gate SiO_2 and change the characteristics in the same way as channel hot carriers. Experiments have shown that, of the two types of hot carriers, the latter cause more significant

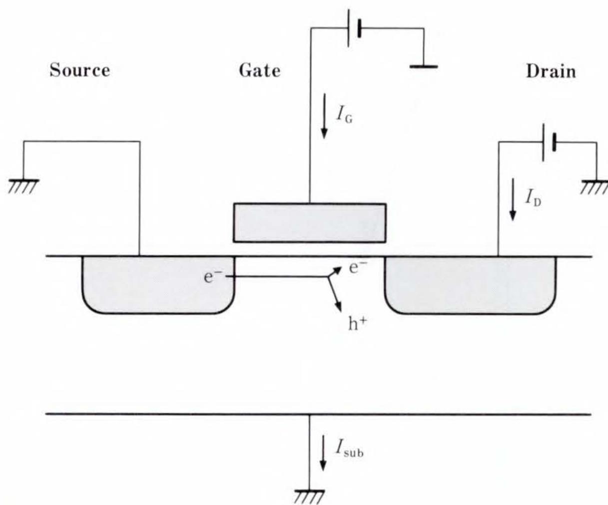


Fig. 1—Impact ionization in short-channel MOSFET.

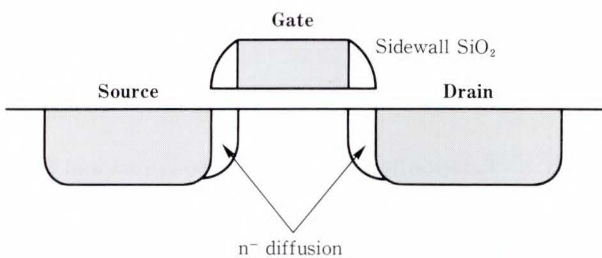


Fig. 2—Schematic of LDD structure.

degradation. Substrate current during MOSFET operation is also due to avalanche multiplication. The generated electrons flow in the drain and the generated holes mostly form the substrate current.

2.2 LDD structure MOSFET

To suppress the generation of hot carriers, the electric field generated by the drain must be reduced. Since the supply voltage cannot be changed (because of the need to maintain device compatibility), the drain voltage cannot be reduced. The electric field is therefore reduced by modification of the device structure.

Figure 2 shows the typical structure of Lightly Doped Drain (LLD). The LDD structure is fabricated by the self-alignment technique so that the offset gate structure developed originally for a high breakdown voltage MOSFET can be applied to the short-channel MOSFET. In the conventional MOSFET, the drain and gate are

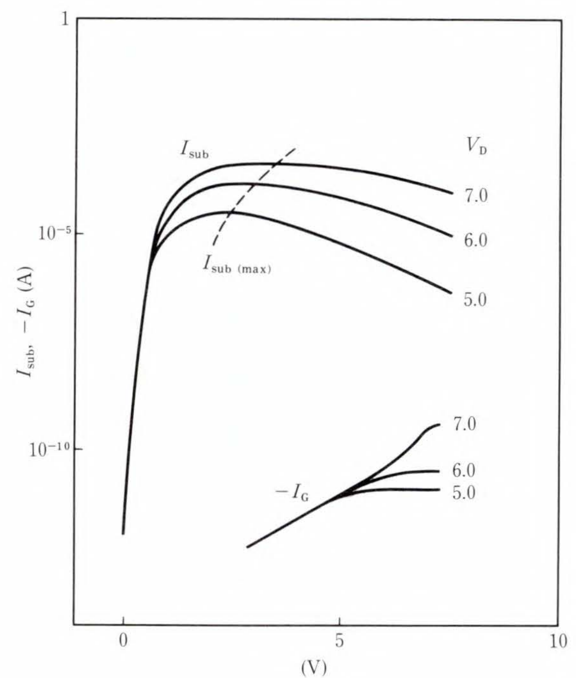


Fig. 3—I_{sub} and I_G dependence on V_G.

vertically aligned, but in the LDD structure they are separated by the sidewall SiO_2. The inner side of the drain under the sidewall SiO_2 is called the offset region. The offset region is lightly doped so that it has a lower impurity concentration than the drain. Accordingly, the slope of the impurity distribution from the drain to the gate and the field strength decrease. This considerably reduces the possibility of impact ionization.

2.3 Change of characteristics by hot carrier

Reliability tests for hot carrier generation were performed on the gate voltage so that the substrate current could be maximized at a high drain voltage. As described in Sec. 2.1, the substrate current is due to avalanche multiplication and indicates the degree of hot carrier generation.

Figure 3 shows the typical relationship between the gate voltage and substrate current. In general, the maximum substrate current is obtained at a gate voltage of about half the drain voltage.

Since the carriers trapped in SiO_2 diffuse less rapidly at lower temperatures, the reliability

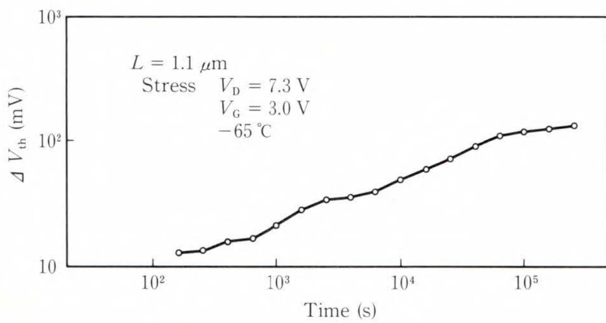


Fig. 4—V_{th} change due to avalanche hot carrier.

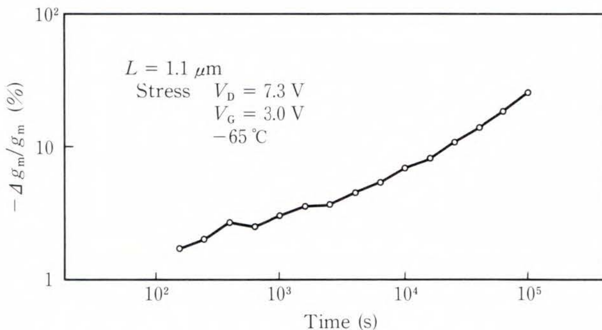


Fig. 5—g_m degradation due to avalanche hot carrier.

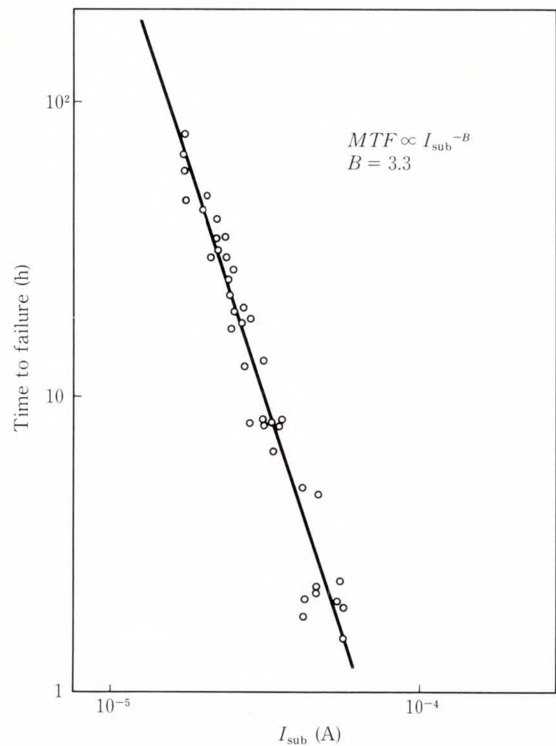


Fig. 6—Relationship between time-to-failure and I_{sub}.

is usually tested at room temperature or lower. Figure 4 shows the change in V_{th} due to avalanche hot carriers, obtained with the test described above. The sample is LDD structure with channel length of 1.1 μm and gate SiO_2 thickness of 18 nm. However, as the fabrication process was not optimized, the structure used is a poor example. The V_{th} was changed by 100 mV at 10^5 s. Figure 5 shows the g_m change for the same test and shows that g_m was reduced by ten percent after 10^4 s. This change in the characteristics is because the carrier injected in SiO_2 generates a fixed electric charge, the interface state density is increased, and because the electrons trapped under the sidewall cause the offset region to have a high resistance.

Since the value of the substrate current indicates the amount of hot carrier generation, there is a relationship between substrate current and the change in the characteristics. The substrate current changes greatly depend on the channel length and the impurity concentration of the offset region. For example, when the life time is defined as the period in which g_m is reduced by ten percent, a linear relationship between the substrate current and the life time can be seen when they are plotted on a log/log scale (shown in Fig. 6).

That is,

$$MTF = A \times (I_{sub})^{-B}, \qquad \text{.........} (1)$$

where MTF is the average life time, I_{sub} is the substrate current, and A and B are constants.

The constants depend on the MOSFET structure. In this example, B was 3.3. (There have been many reports in which B has been between 2 and 4.) The relationship between the substrate current and drain voltage is given by the following equation.

$$I_{sub} = C \times \exp(-D/V_D), \qquad \text{.......} (2)$$

where V_D is the drain voltage and C and D are constants.

The relationship between the life time and drain voltage is give by the following equation.

$$MTF = E \times \exp(-F/V_D), \qquad \text{.....} (3)$$

where E and F are constants.

The life time for practical use can be estimated from the results of an accelerated test using Equations (1) and (3).

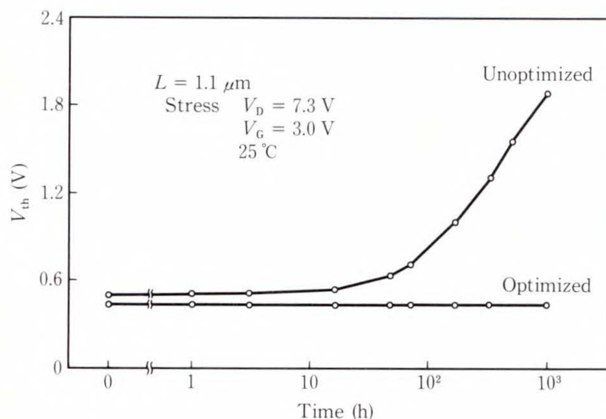


Fig. 7—V_{th} change of LDD MOSFETs.

These expressions show the extent to which the substrate current and supply voltage must be reduced in order to obtain the required life time. If the substrate current is reduced, the life time can be increased. To achieve this, impurity distribution of the offwet region was adjusted to reduce the electric field strength. However, if the concentration is reduced too much, the offset region is easily affected by fixed charge. Therefore, the distribution must be optimized to take these two factors into consideration. Figure 7 compares the test results of optimized and non-optimized MOSFETs. The optimized LDD MOSFET has a stable V_{th} and is therefore the most reliable of the two.

3. TDDB

3.1 Breakdown of oxide

A high-quality silicon oxide film is a stable insulator with a breakdown voltage of approximately 10 MV/cm. In conventional MOSFETs, the gate oxide was about 40 nm. This had a breakdown voltage of about 40 V and was ample for the 5-V supply. In MOSFETs with a 1-μm channel length, the gate oxide thickness is less than 20 nm. If the gate oxide is 15 nm, the breakdown voltage is 15 V, which is still three times the supply voltage.

However, problems were found to exist. Although it might be expected that dielectric breakdown would occur only at the breakdown voltage, it was found that breakdown occurred when voltages considerably less than the breakdown voltage were applied over a long period. This phenomenon is called time-dependent dielectric breakdown (TDDB). Because devices are highly scaled down and complicated, there is a possibility of partial thinning of the oxide. This partial thinning may be the cause of the lowered breakdown voltage. The local defects of SiO_2 become more apparent as the level of integration is increased and the total area of gate oxide consequentially increases. This is considered to be a particularly serious problem in DRAM capacitors.

3.2 TDDB mechanism

At present, the mechanism of TDDB is not fully understood. However, it is known that there are two modes of TDDB, defective mode and intrinsic mode.

The defective mode follows the accumulated failure function. It has an almost exponential distribution and shows a relatively high failure rate in a short period. It is assumed that the paths through which the breakdown current flows and the concectration of the electric field are caused by defects such as oxide pinholes, contamination from impurities, and abnormal device shape. This type of TDDB is considerably reduced by controlling these defects.

The intrinstic mode becomes apparent after the defective mode has been sufficiently reduced. It follows the wear-type accumulated failure function and shows a relatively long life. Even when the applied voltage is below the breakdown voltage, tunnel current and F-N current flows in the oxide. When these currents flow, some types of detects are assumed to be generated in the oxide and field concentration is assumed to occur in some areas.

3.3 TDDB reliability test

The TDDB experiment is performed as follows. The current or voltage across a MOS capacitor is monitored by applying a fixed electric field across it. Normally, F-N current flows even when the MOS capacitor has not broken down. When dielectric breakdown occurs, the voltage becomes abnormally low or

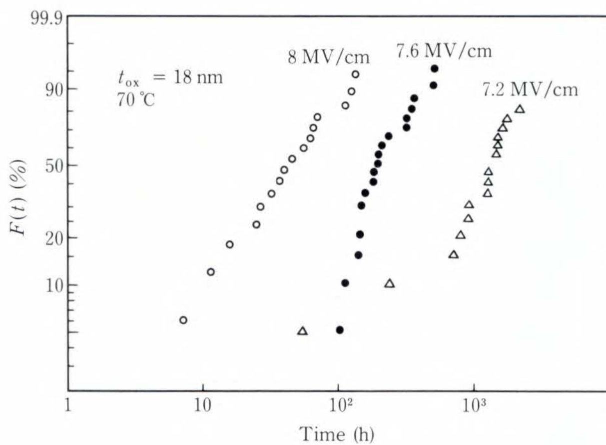


Fig. 8—Accumulated failure due to TDDB.

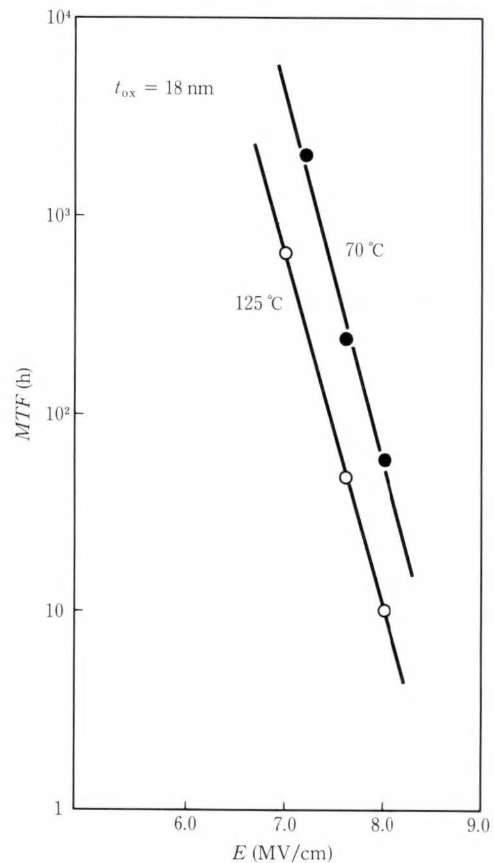


Fig. 9—Relationship between MTF and electric field.

an exceedingly high current flows.

Breakdown of a MOS capacitor can be detected by monitoring these changes in voltage or current. The same procedure is repeated using many samples.

Figure 8 shows the relationship between the accumulated failure rate and the test time for an experiment conducted at 70 °C using an SiO_2 layer of 18 nm. This diagram uses Weibull paper to plot the failure rate distribution. The wear-type failure distribution can be clearly seen. The shape parameter m is approximately 1.5. The life time depends on the electric field strength. A weak electric field results in a long life time. Figure 9 shows the relationship between MTF and electric field strength for the same experiment made at 70 °C and 125 °C.

The life time decreases exponentially as the electric field strength increases. The relationship is given by the following equation.

$$MTF = A \times \exp(-B \times E), \qquad \ldots\ldots (4)$$

where MTF is the average life time, E is the applied electric field strength, and A and B are constants.

The value of constant B is calculated to be 1.8 orders of magnitude per (MV/cm). As the electric field strength increases by 1 MV/cm, the life time decreases by $1/10^{1.8}$.

As is shown in Fig. 9, the relationship at 70 °C and at 125 °C appear as two parallel straight lines, and so Equation (4) can be expressed as follows:

$$MTF = C \times \exp(E_a/kT) \times \exp(-B \times E), \qquad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (5)$$

where E_a is the activation energy, kT is Boltzmann's constant × temperature, and C is a constant.

The activation energy was found to be 0.34 eV.

3.4 Estimation of life time

The life time for practical use is estimated using Equation (5). For usual ICs, the maximum operating termperature is 70 °C. Assuming an applied voltage of 5 V per 10 nm of SiO_2, then $E = 5$ MV/cm.

From Fig. 9, an MTF of 60 h at 70 °C corresponds to an electric field of 8 MV/cm. By applying these values to Equation (5), the following values are obtained:

Temperature coefficient: 1

Electric field coefficient:

$$10^{1.8 \times (8-5)} = 2.5 \times 10^5,$$

and,

$$MTF\ (70\ °C,\ 5\ MV/cm) = 2.5 \times 10^5 \times 60\ h = 1.5 \times 10^7\ h.$$

This is approximately 1 700 years. In practice, however, it is not the average life time that is important but the time when the failure rate reaches an even lower value. This time, corresponding to a lower falure rate, can be calculated based on the fact that the accumulated failure rate follows the Weibull distribution.

The Weibull distribution is given by the following equation.

$$F(t) = 1 - \exp\{-(t/MTF)^m\}, \qquad \ldots (6)$$

where $F(t)$ is the accumulated failure rate, t is the time, and m is the shape parameter. MTF here is defined as the characteristic life time during which the accumulated failure rate reaches $1 - e^{-1}$. This definition differs from the original one.

Consequently, the time when the accumulated failure rate reaches $F(t)$ is given by the following equation.

$$t = MTF \times -\log e\,\{1 - F(t)\}^{1/m}. \qquad \ldots (7)$$

For example, for $m = 1/5$, the time when the accumulated failure rate reaches 0.01 percent is 1/465 of the MTF. Since MTF = 1 700 years for the sample shown in Fig. 9, a failure rate of 0.01 percent corresponds to 3.7 years. For E = 4 MV/cm, the same failure rate corresponds to 230 years. For high reliability, the oxide must be used at a voltage below 1/3 of the breakdown voltage.

4. Electromigration

4.1 Mechanism of electromigration

Metalization in IC is generally a polycrystalline thin Al film grown by magnetron sputtering. When a voltage is applied, electrons flow in the Al layer from the cathode to the anode. The metal atoms receive kinetic energy by colliding with the electrons. Although the atoms are normally constrained in the lattice, there is a probability that atoms may obtain a thermal energy greater than the bonding energy (as determined by the Boltzmann factor). If there is no current, these atoms only exchange lattice positions and do not cause the flux. However, when the electrons contribute their kinetic energy, a flow of atoms is generated in that direction. This is called electromigration. The flux of the atoms can be expressed by the following equation, using the current density and the Boltzmann factor.

$$J_{atm} = A \times J^2 \times \exp(-E_a/kT), \qquad \ldots\ldots\ldots (8)$$

where J_{atm} is the flux of metallic atoms, J is the flux of electronics, E_a is the activation energy, kT is Boltzmann's constant × temperature and A is a constant.

Since metalization has non-uniform dimensions, current density, and temperature distribution, a discontinuity occurs in the flux of atoms. At these discontinuous points, various failure modes occur such as voids, open circuits, and hillocks. Each of these cause the IC to fail. Of these problems, the open circuit has been of particular importance. Recently, short circuit between adjacent metalization caused by hillocks have also been reported.

4.2 Electromigration reliability test

4.2.1 Open circuit failure test

Open circuit failure of metalization is described first. Since the flux of atoms increases with current density and temperature according to Equation (8), the test is done at a high current and temperature.

In general, the current density of the metalization is about 10^5 A/cm^2. Since a blowout occurs due to self-heat generation when the current density of 10^7 A/cm^2 is exceeded, a density of 10^6 A/cm^2 is used in the test. The temperature is usualy chosen to 150-300 °C Figure 10 shows the relationship between temperature and the open circuit life time with a constant current density. The Al sample was doped with Si and was 2 μm wide, 1 μm thick, and 800 μm long. There is a linear relationship between the log of the life time and the inverse of temperature.

This is given by the following equation.

$$MTF = A \times \exp(E_a/kT), \qquad \ldots\ldots\ldots (9)$$

where E_a is the activation energy, kT is Boltz-

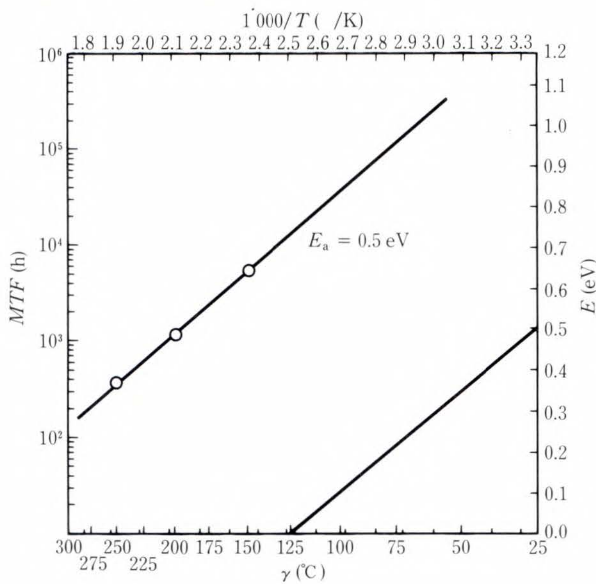


Fig. 10—Arhenius plot of electromigration failure.

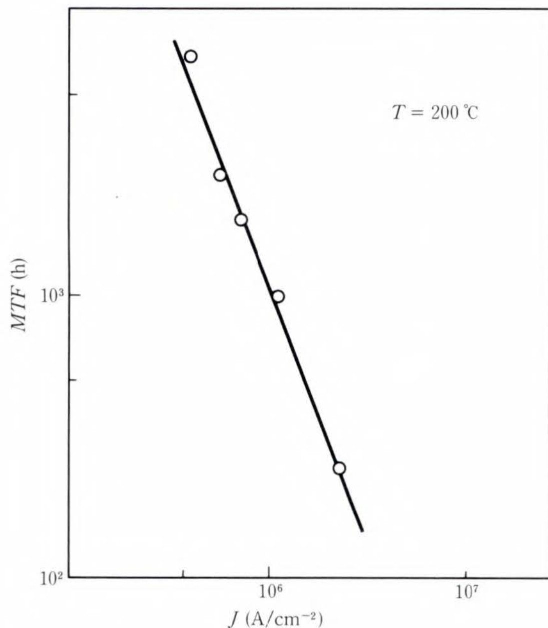


Fig. 11—Relationship between MTF and current density.

mann's constant × temperature, and A is a constant. Figure 10 shows E_a = 0.5 eV. Figure 11 shows a linear relationship in log-log plot between the current density and the open circuit life time when the temperature is constant. (The slope is almost 2.)

This is given by the following equation.

$$MTF = B \times J^{-2}, \qquad \text{..........} (10)$$

where B is a constant.

When Equation (9) and (10) are combined,

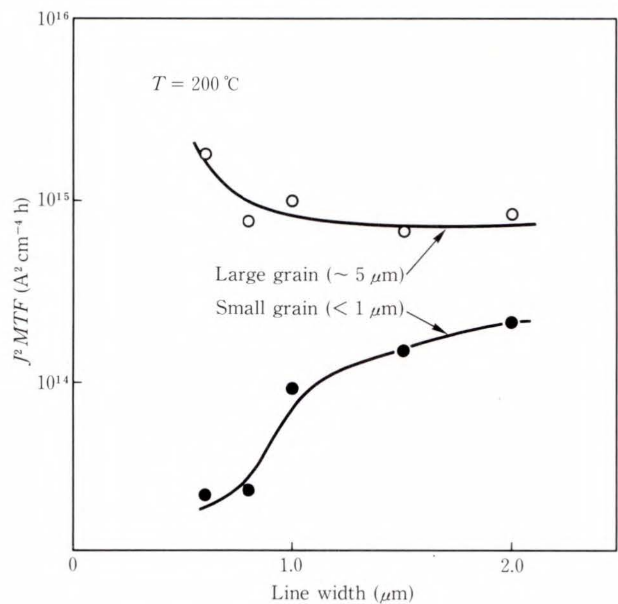


Fig. 12—Relationship between J^2 MTF and current density.

the following equation is obtained.

$$MTF = C \times J^{-2} \times \exp(E_a/kT), \qquad ... (11)$$

where C is a constant.

When Equation (8) and (11) are compared, it can be seen that the open circuit life time is inversely proportional to the flux of the atoms.

E_a = 0.5 eV is a rather small value for the self-diffusion of Al atoms. This is because the sample was a polycrystalline thin film and thus contains large numbers of grain boundaries and crystal defects. Since the bonding energy of atoms is low at grain boundaries or defects, a low value of activated energy is assumed. The open circuit life time can be prolonged by reducing the effect of Al grain boundary diffusion. Figure 12 compares the open circuit life times of two samples with different grain sizes. The samples used Al-Si and were 0.6 μm to 2 μm wide, 0.5 μm thick, and 2 mm long.

The sample with the larger grain size has the longer life time. This is because the number of grain boundaries in large grain sample is smaller than in small grain one. For a large grain, the life time increases as the metalization width decreases. When the metalization width is reduced more than the grain size, the probability of grain boundaries is reduced. This phenomenon is

called the bamboo effect. For small grains, the life time decreases as the metalization width decreases. If the metalization width is decreased, an open-circuit will result due to small Al void and the bamboo effect does not occur. Therefore, the reliable metalization can be obtained by controlling fabrication to grow Al with a large grain size.

4.2.2 Short mode failure test

Hillocks occur at accumulations of the flux of Al atoms.

This occurs where metalization is connected to the diffusion layer and current flows from the diffusion layer. The experiment was done with the metalization connected to the emitter of a bipolar transistor. The bipolar transistor is a convenient device for this experiment because of its high current drive capacity. A second metalization layer is formed on the first layer with an insulation layer. The short circuits between the two layers was then tested. The sample used Al-Si of 4 μm wide, 0.8 μm thick, and 20 μm long. The insulation layer is PSG of 1 μm thick. Figure 13 shows the relationship between times and temperatures of the short circuit failures. The y axis is J^2 MTF as the relationship given by Equation (11) is assumed. The linearity is worse than for the open-circuit failure and E_a = 1.3 eV. The reason why the open circuit failure and the activation energy are different is not known. Since the activation energy is high, these short circuit failures will be exceedingly rare at pratical temperatures.

4.2.3 Open-circuit failure test with pulse current

In metalization, a current greater than the maximum DC current capacity can be passed in a pulse. Metalization passing a pulse current will have a greater life time than metalization passing a DC current equal in magitude to the peak pulse current. Figure 14 shows the relationship between the duty cycle and the mean time until open-circuit failure using a 100-kHz square wave. The sample used Al-Si and was 2 μm wide, 0.5 μm thick, and 800 μm long. Since it was expected that the life time would be very long if the duty cycle was reduced, the experiment was done with a small grain sample with reduced

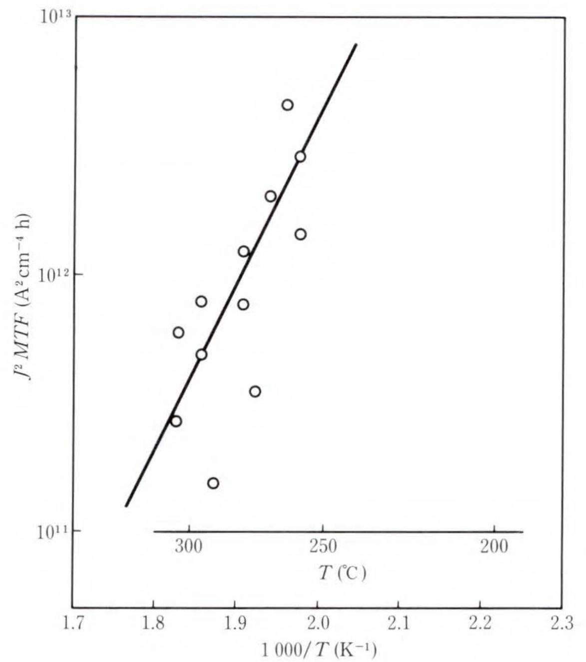


Fig. 13—Arhenius plot of electromigration short circuit failure.

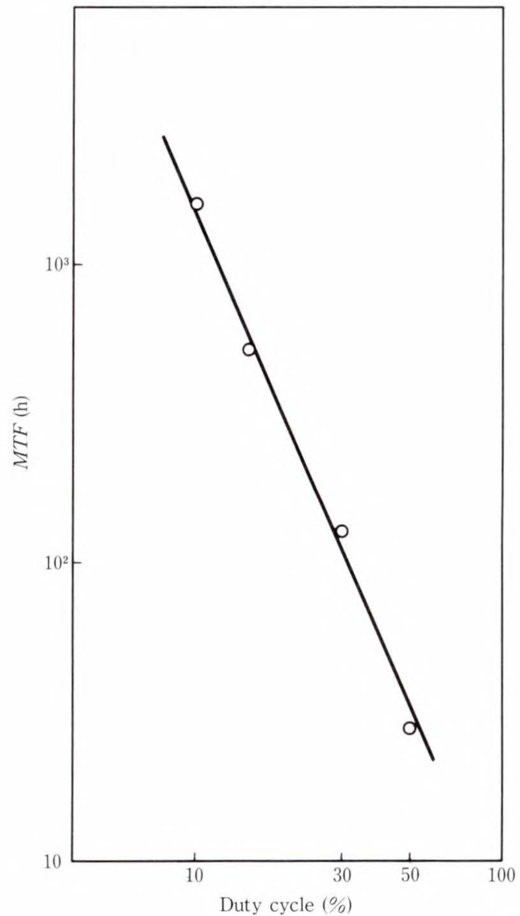


Fig. 14—MTF dependence on duty factor.

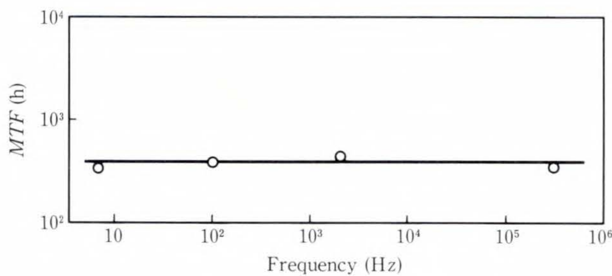


Fig. 15–*MTF* dependence on frequency.

life time. The life time is inversely proportional to the square of the duty cycle.

That is

$$MTF = A \times D^{-2}, \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots\ (12)$$

where D is the duty cycle, and A is a constant.

By combining Equation (11) and (12), *MTF* can be expressed as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} MTF &= B \times (J \times D)^{-2} \times \exp(E_a/kT) \\ &= B \times J_{ave}^{-2} \times \exp(E_a/kT), \quad \ldots\ldots\ (13) \end{aligned}$$

where J_{ave} denotes the average current.

Equation (13) indicates that, for pulse currents, the life time is determined by the average current with modification and can be treated in the same way as DC currents. Figure 15 shows the relationship between the frequency and the life time when the duty cycle is constant. It is clear that the life time does not depend on the frequency and that Equation (13) is valid within the range of 10 kHz to 300 kHz. For pulse currents, a higher peak current determined by duty factor can be allowed to give the same life time for DC.

5. Conclusion

The authors have made a series of experiments on the reliability problems associated with the scaling down of MOS ICs. These experiments included studies on the change of MOSFET characteristics caused by hot carriers, SiO_2 breakdown by TDDB, and open- and short-circuit failures of the metalization by electromigration.

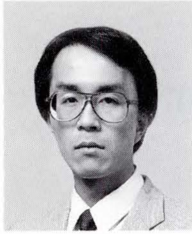
By quantitative analysis of the relationship of the supply voltage and substrate current to the characteristic change, it is found that the LDD structure has full reliability against hot carrier effects. For the TDDB, guidelines for using thin SiO_2 with high reliability were obtained from the relationship between the life time of breakdown, temperature, and electric field.

For electromigration, the authors investigated activation energy and current density dependency, furthermore, the relationship between the grain size, width, and open circuit life time. The authors investigated the open circuit life time of pulse operation and determined that the life time could be calculated by regarding the pulse as a DC current equal to the average current. In addition to open circuit failures, short circuit failures between the first and second metalization were tested and the activation energy was obtained.

It is concluded from these results that these problems can be overcome by improving the device structure and fabrication processes.

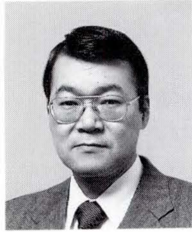
References

1) Fair, R.B., and Sun, R.C.: Treshold Voltage Instability in MOSFET's Due to Channel Hot-Hole Emission. *IEEE Trans. Electron Devices*, **ED-28**, 1, pp. 83-94 (1981).
2) McPherson, J.W., and Baglee, D.A.: Acceleration Factors for Gate Oxide Stressing. Annusl Proc. 23th Int. Relia. Phys. Symp., 1985, pp. 1-5.
3) Black, J.R.: Electromigration of Al-Si Alloy Films. Annual Proc. 16th Int. Reliab. Phys. Symp., 1978, pp. 233-240.



Ken Shono
IC Reliability Engineering Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Applied Physics
Osaka University 1977
Master of Applied Physics
Osaka University 1979
Specializing in Reliability Physics on LSI

Nagao Yamada
IC Reliability Division
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Gakushu-in University 1963
Specializing in Reliability Physics on LSI



Kenji Ishida
IC Reliability Engineering Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Chiba University 1970
Specializing in Reliability Physics on LSI

UDC 621.3.049.774.3

Bipolar Circuit Simulation System Using Two-Dimensional Device Simulator

● Shigeo Satoh ● Hideki Oka ● Noriaki Nakayama

(Manuscript received June 29, 1988)

To accurately estimate bipolar circuit performance, two circuit simulation systems using a two-dimensional device simulator have been developed and compared. One uses the table method and the other uses the direct method.
The direct method was found to be superior to the table method. Using the direct method, the propagation delay time of an ECL gate has been estimated and the influence of extrinsic elements and collector impurity concentration on delay time were investigated.

1. Introduction

Device simulators are widely used to analyze device behavior because a device simulator can reflect the device structure exactly and can also simulate physical phenomena accurately. Device simulators usually examine only the device characteristics. The circuit performance is then estimated from these characteristics. However, when a device is used as a circuit element, its performance must be estimated in the circuit environment.

Therefore, a simulation system which can estimate circuit performance using a two-dimensional device simulator is highly desirable. One example of this type of simulator is MEDUSA[1]. However, MEDUSA only has a one-dimensional device simulator of bipolar devices installed. No simulation system which uses a two-dimensional device simulator has been developed for bipolar circuits.

For these reasons, two types of circuit simulators using a two-dimensional device simulator were developed. One uses numerical tables for transistor equivalent circuit elements. These tables are derived from the static solutions of the device simulator. The other simulator solves circuit equations directly using transient solutions of the device simulator. We call the former the "table method", and the latter the "direct method".

This paper presents the simulation techniques of the two methods, a comparison between them, and application examples of the analysis of propagation delay times of an ECL gate.

2. Simulation method

Figure 1 shows the simulation flow to obtain circuit performance. A conventional circuit simulator such as SPICE[2] uses a transistor model. This transistor model has an equivalent circuit whose elements are expressed by analyti-

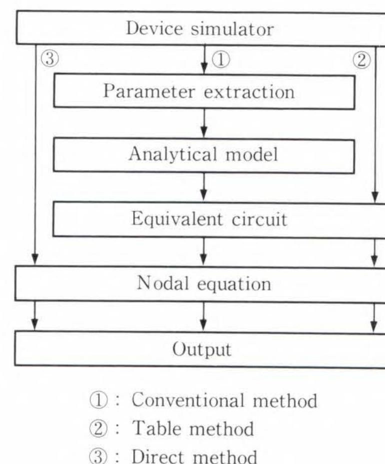


Fig. 1–Simulation flow to obtain circuit performance.

cal models. The analytical model has many parameters that are extracted from the simulation results of the device simulator. This is indicated by arrows ①. However, this parameter extraction is often a very elaborate task, and important factors essential for high speed operation such as high current injection, diffusion capacitance, and two-dimensional effects cannot be modeled exactly by the analytical transistor model.

The table method uses numerical tables obtained from the two-dimensional device simulator without extracting model parameters. It solves nodal equations. This is indicated by arrows ②.

The direct method does not use the equivalent circuit. It solves nodal equations using transient solutions of the device simulator. This is indicated by arrows ③.

2.1 Device simulator

Device simulator FLAPS (Fujitsu Laboratories Analysis Program of Semiconductor devices) solves the basic semiconductor equations which are shown below.

$$\mathrm{div}\,(\epsilon\,\mathrm{grad}\,\psi) = -q\,(p - n + N_D - N_A). \quad \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots (1)$$

$$dn/dt = 1/q\ \mathrm{div}\,\boldsymbol{J}_n + G - R. \quad \ldots\ldots (2)$$

$$dp/dt = -1/q\ \mathrm{div}\,\boldsymbol{J}_p + G - R. \quad \ldots\ldots (3)$$

$$\boldsymbol{J}_n = -qn\mu_n\,\mathrm{grad}\,\phi_n. \quad \ldots\ldots (4)$$

$$\boldsymbol{J}_p = -qp\mu_p\,\mathrm{grad}\,\phi_p. \quad \ldots\ldots (5)$$

$$n = n_{ie}\exp\{q/kT\,(\psi - \phi_n)\}. \quad \ldots\ldots (6)$$

$$p = n_{ie}\exp\{q/kT\,(\phi_p - \psi)\}. \quad \ldots\ldots (7)$$

G is the generation rate term, R the recombination rate term, ϕ_n the quasi-Fermi potential of an electron, ϕ_p the quasi-Fermi potential of a hole, and n_{ie} the intrinsic carrier density. These equations are made discrete using the finite difference method and are solved using the incomplete LU decomposition conjugate gradient method[3]. This program is also vectorized for a vector processor.

2.2 Table method

Figure 2 shows the simulation flow of the table method. Before solving the nodal equations, numerical tables of equivalent circuit elements are created. In this method, we used the equivalent circuit shown in Fig. 3. Capacitances and current sources are obtained from the solutions of the two-dimensional device simulator.

The current tables are obtained from the terminal currents of the base and collector.

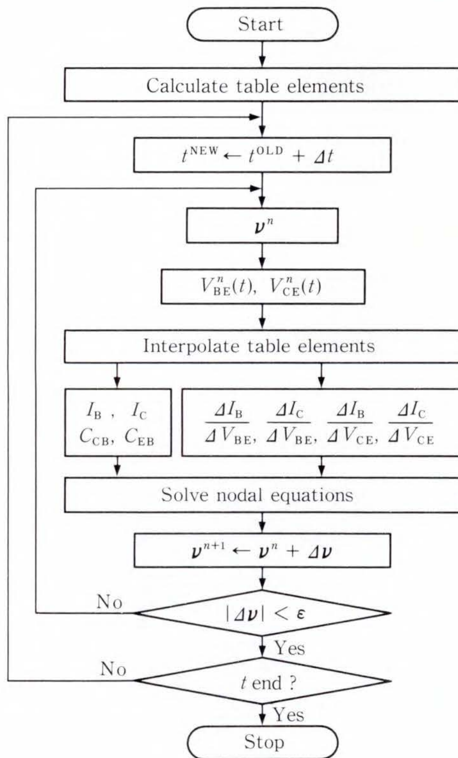


Fig. 2–Simulation flow of table method.

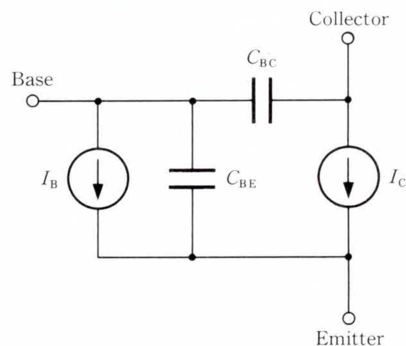


Fig. 3–Equivalent circuit of bipolar transistor used in the table method.

To make capacitance tables, total charge Q in the device is obtained from the following relation.

$$Q = \int \rho ds . \qquad \text{............ (8)}$$

From the derivative of this total charge with respect to the terminal voltages, two capacitances can be obtained.

$$C_{EB} = \Delta Q / \Delta V_{EB} . \qquad \text{.......... (9)}$$

$$C_{CB} = \Delta Q / \Delta V_{CB} . \qquad \text{......... (10)}$$

Figure 4 shows the simulation structure of a bipolar transistor. Because of its symmetrical structure, only half of the device is simulated. This structure has an emitter width of 0.05 μm and a base width of 0.05 μm.

Figure 5 shows two-dimensional numerical tables of currents and capacitances. The maxi-

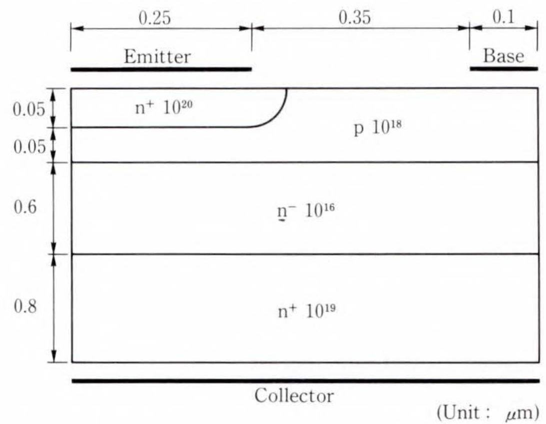
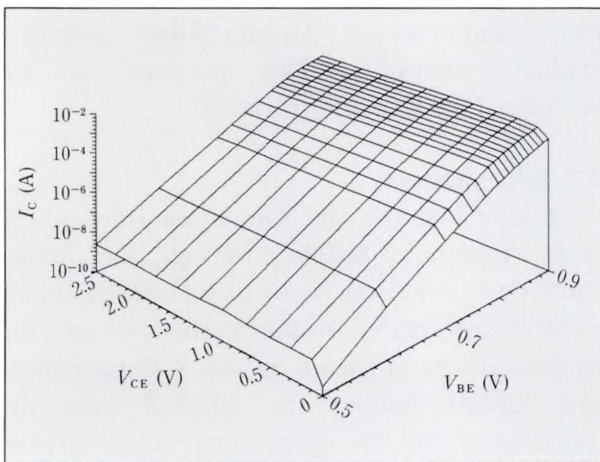
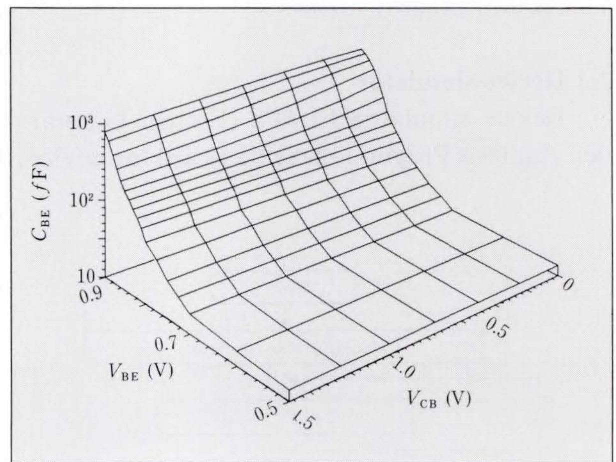


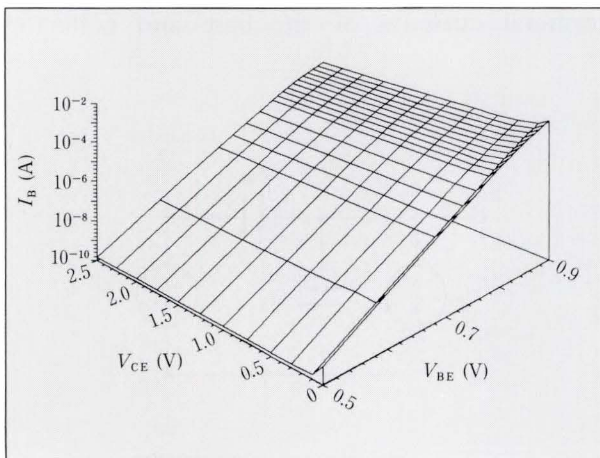
Fig. 4—Simulation structure of bipolar transistor.



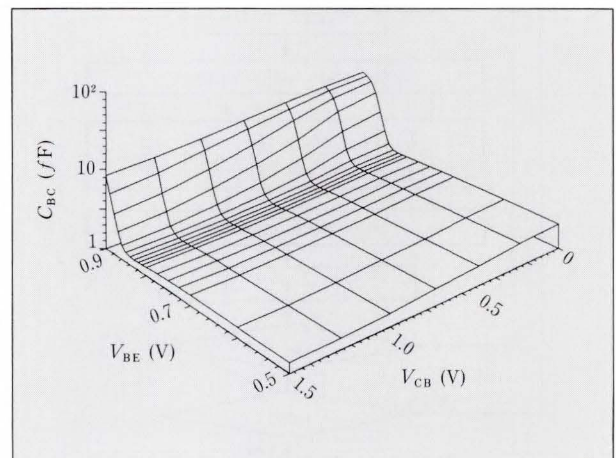
a) Collector current



c) Base-emitter capacitance



b) Base current



d) Base-collector capacitance

Fig. 5—Numerical tables used in the table method.

mum collector-emitter voltage of 2.5 V was divided into twelve increments and the maximum base-emitter voltage of 0.9 V into seventeen increments to create the two-dimensional numerical tables of base current I_B and collector current I_C. Capacitance tables having 17 x 7 increments were created in the same way. Irregularly spaced meshes were used to obtain high accuracy in the high current region. Values of points between the increments are obtained by logarithmic linear interpolations. Using a vectorized program, it took 33 min of CPU times on a FACOM VP-100 vector processor to generate these numerical tables.

Extrinsic components such as the extrinsic poly Si base resistance and a collector-substrate capacitance are externally attached to the equivalent circuit of Fig. 3. Generally, nodal equations are expressed as follows.

$$\sum_j I_{ij} = 0, (i = 1, N). \quad \cdots\cdots\cdots (11)$$

N is the total node number and I_{ij} is the current which flows into the i-th node. These equations are made discrete with respect to time. Discrete time steps are between 0.2 ps and 5 ps. At each time step, these equations are solved using Newton's method.

Newton's method linearizes the non-linear currents of a bipolar transistor as follows.

$$I_B = I_{B0} + \frac{\partial I_B}{\partial V_{BE}} \Delta V_{BE} + \frac{\partial I_B}{\partial V_{CE}} \Delta V_{CE}. \quad \cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots (12)$$

$$I_C = I_{C0} + \frac{\partial I_C}{\partial V_{BE}} \Delta V_{BE} + \frac{\partial I_C}{\partial V_{CE}} \Delta V_{CE}. \quad \cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots (13)$$

In these equations, derivatives of the currents with respect to voltage are obtained from the numerical tables using logarithmic linear interpolation.

2.3 Direct method

Circuit behavior is essentially a transient phenomenon. Therefore, using transient solutions of a device simulator is the best method to simulate circuit behavior. Figure 6 shows the simulation flow of the direct method. In this method, currents and current derivatives are obtained from the transient solutions of the two-dimensional device simulator and are used to solve nodal equations.

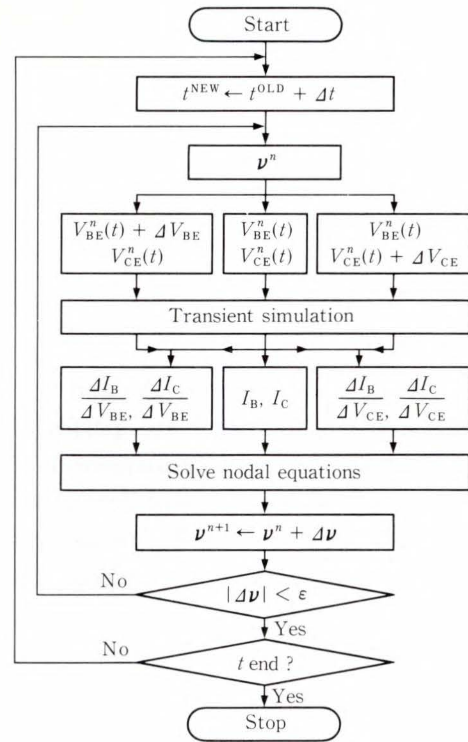


Fig. 6–Simulation flow of direct method.

Table 1. Bias conditions for transient simulations

Terminal Voltage		Terminal Current	
Base	Collector	Base	Collector
$V_{BE}(t)$	$V_{CE}(t)$	I_{B1}	I_{C1}
$V_{BE}(t) + \Delta V_{BE}$	$V_{CE}(t)$	I_{B2}	I_{C2}
$V_{BE}(t)$	$V_{CE}(t) + \Delta V_{CE}$	I_{B3}	I_{C3}

First, semiconductor basic Equations (1) to (7) are solved transiently for the three kinds of terminal voltage for each transistor by increasing the time Δt to obtain the base and collector currents. Bias conditions for transient analysis are shown in Table 1. Using these currents, derivatives of the currents with respect to the terminal voltages are obtained as shown in the following Equations (14) to (17).

$$\frac{\partial I_B}{\partial V_{BE}} = \frac{I_{B2} - I_{B1}}{\Delta V_{BE}}. \quad \cdots\cdots\cdots (14)$$

$$\frac{\partial I_B}{\partial V_{CE}} = \frac{I_{B3} - I_{B1}}{\Delta V_{CE}}. \qquad \cdots\cdots\cdots (15)$$

$$\frac{\partial I_C}{\partial V_{BE}} = \frac{I_{C2} - I_{C1}}{\Delta V_{BE}}. \qquad \cdots\cdots\cdots (16)$$

$$\frac{\partial I_C}{\partial V_{CE}} = \frac{I_{C3} - I_{C1}}{\Delta V_{CE}}. \qquad \cdots\cdots\cdots (17)$$

The ΔV_{BE} used is 0.01 V and ΔV_{CE} is 0.05 V. These calculations are performed for each transistor. The nodal equations are solved using these currents and current derivatives. This procedure is repeated until the nodal equations converge. If nodal equations converge, the time is increased by another Δt, and the same calculations are repeated.

The table method uses a quasi-static approach. This means that nodal equations are solved using static solutions of the device simulator. The direct method uses a non-quasi-static approach. This means that nodal equations are solved using the transient solutions of the device simulator. Therefore, the direct method is considered to be superior to the table model because a quasi-static approach is not used, and purely transient phenomena can be included.

2.4 Determination of circuit elements

To compare circuit speed, the logic swing of an ECL gate was kept a constant value. In these simulation systems, resistance in an ECL gate for a fixed logic swing can be automatically determined by DC solutions of the table method when the transistor size is given.

3. Examples of analysis

3.1 Comparison of two methods

Assuming that exact solutions are obtained by the direct method, the accuracy of the table method was examined. For comparison, the difference between propagation delay times of an ECL gate was investigated. Propagation delay times were obtained from the simulation of the three-stage inverter chain shown in Fig. 7. The ECL gate has an emitter follower, the supply voltage is –3.1 V, emitter follower supply voltage is –1.8 V, and reference voltage is –1.2 V.

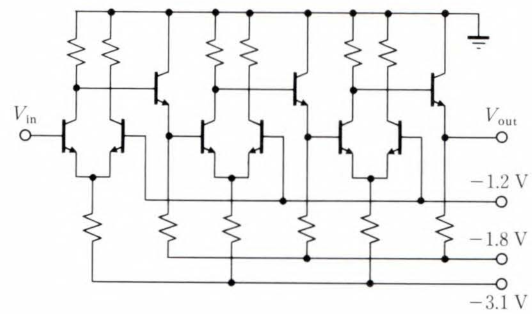


Fig. 7–Three-stage ECL gate inverter chain.

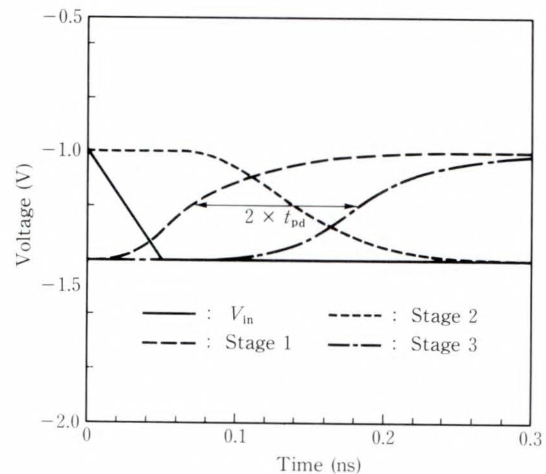


Fig. 8–Output waveforms of inverter chain.

Figure 8 shows the simulated output waveforms of this inverter chain using the direct method when a step voltage having a fall time is 50 ps was applied to the input terminal. The propagation delay time per gate was obtained from the time difference between the output voltages of the first and third stages. In this case, the propagation delay time per gate is 57 ps and power consumption per gate is 3.08 mW. It takes 3.7 h of FACOM VP-100 CPU time to obtain this result. The dependence of power consumption on propagation delay time for the two methods shown in Fig. 9 was obtained in this way.

The table model results show smaller propagation delay times than the direct method in the entire power region. The difference between the two methods is larger in the high power region than in the low power region. This is

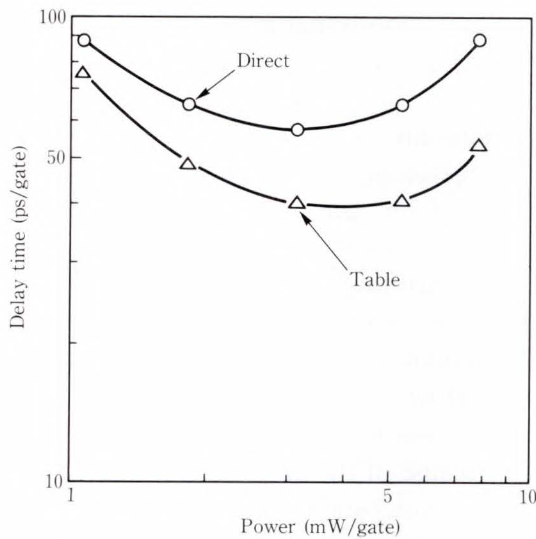


Fig. 9—Comparison of propagation delay time for the table method and direct method.

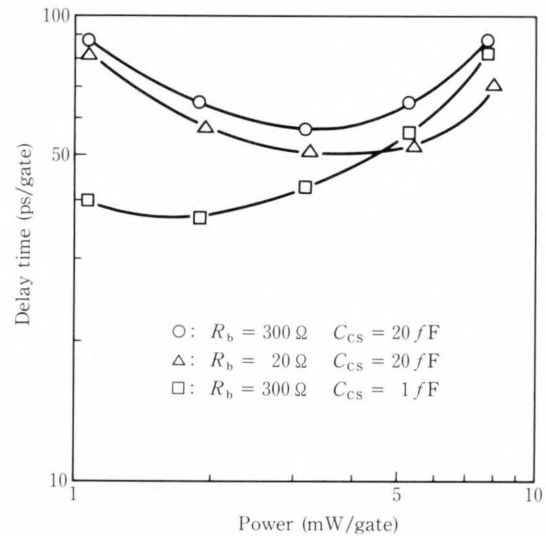


Fig. 10—Dependence of propagation delay time on extrinsic device

because the table method cannot estimate the time delay in the extrinsic base region exactly. This is because the influence of the extrinsic base resistance is already included in the current tables, and the extrinsic base-collector capacitance is included in capacitance C_{BC}.

In conclusion, the table method has a large discrepancy in the propagation delay time when the delay is determined by the time delay of extrinsic transistor elements.

3.2 Influence of extrinsic elements

The influence of extrinsic elements was examined using the direct method. Figure 10 shows the relation between power and propagation delay time when the extrinsic poly Si base resistance and/or collector-substrate capacitance are changed.

In the low power region, the charge and discharge time of the collector-substrate capacitance is the dominant factor in determining the propagation delay time. In the high power region, the charge and discharge time of the input capacitance is about the same.

By decreasing the extrinsic resistance, the delay time in the high power region decreases. This is because of the reduction in the time delay in the extrinsic base region. Decreasing the collector-substrate capacitance decreases the delay time in the low power region. From these analyses, it is concluded that decreasing the collector-substrate capacitance is more effective than decreasing the extrinsic base resistance to realize a low power, high speed ECL gate circuit.

3.3 Collector impurity concentration dependence

Figure 11 shows the relation between collector current and cut-off frequency. The cut-off frequency f_T was obtained by the following relation using the static solution of the two-dimensional device simulator.

$$f_T = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{\Delta I_C}{\Delta Q} \cdot \qquad \text{.........(18)}$$

Q is the total charge in the device. The maximum cut-off frequency of a device having a collector impurity concentration of $10^{16}/cm^3$ is 15.4 GHz. However, this frequency increases to 28.6 GHz when the collector impurity concentration is increased to $10^{17}/cm^3$. This is because the base pushout due to high current injection is suppressed by a low collector resistance.

Figure 12 shows the relation between power and the propagation delay time of an ECL gate for various collector impurity concentrations. When

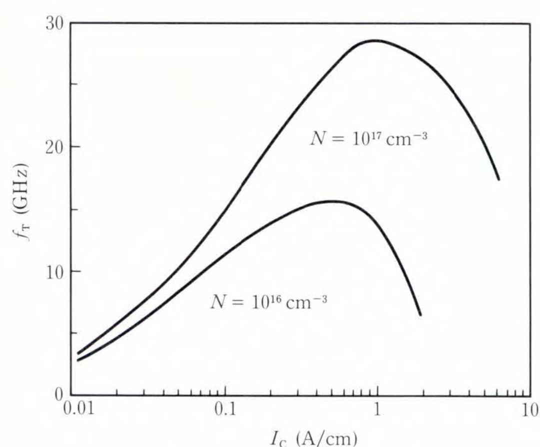


Fig. 11–Dependence of cut-off frequency on collector current for two collector impurity concentrations.

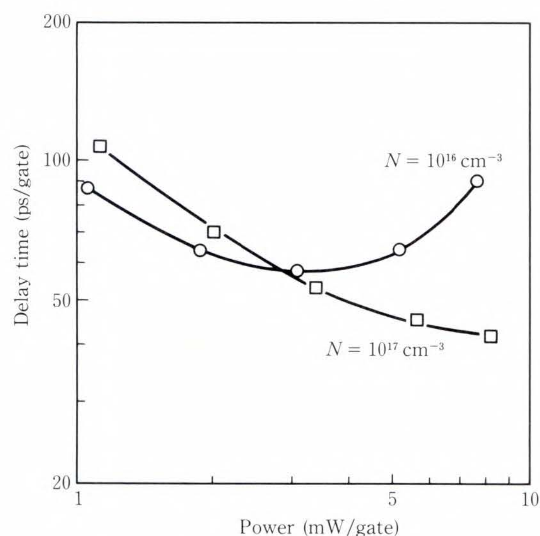


Fig. 12–Dependence of propagation delay time on power for two collector impurity concentrations.

the collector impurity concentration increases, the delay time increases in the low power region because of the increase in base-collector capacitance. In the high power region, the delay time decreases because of the small diffusion capacitance due to suppression of the base pushout.

Thus, increasing the collector impurity concentration increases the maximum cut-off frequency. However, propagation delay time cannot be decreased in the entire power region. Also note that a high collector impurity concentration is not desirable for a circuit using low power ECL gates.

4. Conclusion

We developed two types of simulation systems which can estimate bipolar circuit performance using a two-dimensional device simulator with the following results.

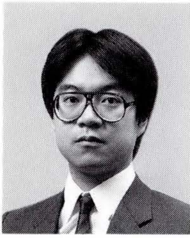
The table model using static solutions of a device simulator can give exact solutions for DC analysis. However, for transient analysis, it gives inaccurate results especially in the high power region because of the incorrect equivalent circuit and the quasi-static approach. The direct method is considered to be the most accurate method to simulate circuit behavior, but it takes much CPU time.

Using the direct method, extrinsic element dependence of the propagation delay time of an ECL gate was investigated. A smaller collector-substrate capacitance was found to be an effective means of realizing a low power and high speed bipolar ECL circuit. Also, collector impurity concentration dependence on cut-off frequency and delay time were investigated. It was found that high impurity concentrations are an effective way to increase the maximum cut-off frequency, but are not effective for obtaining high speed in the low power region.

In the short term, improvements in the CPU time required for the direct method and the equivalent circuit for the table model must be achieved. Based on these simulation systems, limitations of the transistor models of conventional circuit simulators must be clarified, and the device simulator must be improved for smaller devices.

References

1) Engl, W.L., Laur, R., and Dirks, H.K.: MEDUSA – A Simulator for Modular Circuits. *IEEE Trans. Computer-Aided Design,* **CAD-1**, pp. 85-93 (1982).
2) Nagel, L.W.: SPICE 2 – A Computer Program to Simulate Semiconductor Circuits. Berkeley, Univ. Calif., Environ. Res. Lab. Memo, ERL-M520, 1975.
3) Abe, G., Hana, K., and Suzuki, T.: Device Simulation Code for Vector Processor. Proc. NASECODE IV, pp. 123-128 (1985).



Shigeo Satoh
Semiconductor Devices Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Keio University 1984
Master of Electrical Eng.
Keio University 1986
Specializing in Device Simulation

Noriaki Nakayama
Semiconductor Devices Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, ATSUGI
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Niigata University 1969
Specializing in Device/Process Simulation

Hideki Oka
Semiconductor Devices Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES,
ATSUGI (until December, 1988)
Bachelor of Pure and Applied Science
The University of Tokyo 1975
Master of Physics
The University of Tokyo 1977
(Specializing in Device Modeling and Process/Device Simulation)

UDC 621.3.049.76:681.323

Speed Tunable Finite State Machine Compiler: ZEPHCAD™

● Hitomi Sato ● Yoshihide Sugiura ● Masahiro Fujita

(Manuscript received July 14, 1988)

This report describes a personal computer based state machine compiler. This system transforms the finite state machine description, Boolean equations, or truth table into net lists of the CMOS gate array or standard cell.

A new feature of this system is the capability to tune the circuit speed from the user side by selecting the number of logic levels when running the system.

This report includes bench mark results.

1. Introduction

As the number of gates in ASICs exceed 100K gates, it becomes very important to shorten the time required for logic design. Several silicon compilers for this purpose are described. Logic synthesis is examined and the algorithms for logic minimization[1] and multiplication of logic levels[2),3] are described. The rule based approach[4] is also described as a method to control the circuit speed.

For logic LSI design, LSI functions can be divided into three blocks: a data-path block, RAM/ROM block, and control logic block (see in Fig. 1). The data-path block performs ALU functions or data register functions. The RAM/ROM block stores required data and/or programs. These data-path and RAM/ROM blocks normally have a regular pattern structure such as the bit-slice oriented approach.

On the other hand, the control logic normally consists of a random pattern structure and must be independently designed for each logic LSI. This means that the data-path or RAM/ROM blocks can be repeatedly used for many logic LSIs which thus enables the use of function libraries. However, for the control logic, it is difficult to reuse previous designs.

In addition, specifications of the control logic can only be determined at the end of the logic design phase. Therefore, a logic designer has to design this control logic within a very limited period of time and without errors.

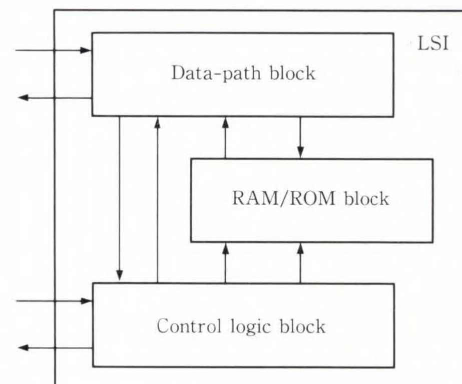


Fig. 1—Block diagram of LSI.

Considering all of these factors, we have developed the finite state machine compiler described in this report. Our approach was to develop a finite state machine compiler which is capable of controlling the number of logic levels by the method of factorization when constructing multi-level logic from two-level logic representations. Therefore the circuit speed/area trade-offs can be controlled using this compiler.

2. Speed tunable CMOS state machine compiler

A CMOS finite state machine compiler called "ZEPHCAD^{TM}" has been developed. It can be applied to CMOS gate arrays and to standard cell ASIC design.

Input to the system includes finite state machine descriptions, Boolean equations, and a truth table.

The system receives these descriptions, transforms them into the sum of products form (AND-OR two-level logic), minimizes the AND-OR plane, assigns a binary code to each state of the finite state machine, divides levels into multiple logic levels, then generates the net lists of a CMOS gate array or standard cell technology (see Fig. 2).

A new feature very useful for logic designers is that this system can control the circuit speed by selecting the number of logic levels when they are divided as described above.

When selecting the number of logic levels, a user can simultaneously control the total gate size of the logic. Therefore, a user can very quickly, determine the circuit speed/area trade-offs, and can select the most suitable speed and gate size logic for his LSI design.

This system can also generate the PLA pattern after the minimization phase of the system flow.

Our system described here is very useful for control logic automated design. A designer describes his control logic specifications using a language like C, then the system sythesizes the gate level circuit automatically. Figure 2 shows a comparison between our system and the usual manual design method. The first step of control logic design is to determine the specification of control logic. A designer may need to specify a state diagram transition and logic flowchart. In the case of manual design, the designer then writes a gate level schematic sheet from the state diagram by translating the logic manually.

In this system, the designer describes the state diagram in the form of a software program. The system then automatically transforms the logic into Fujitsu's CMOS standard cell or gate array having a controlled propagation delay.

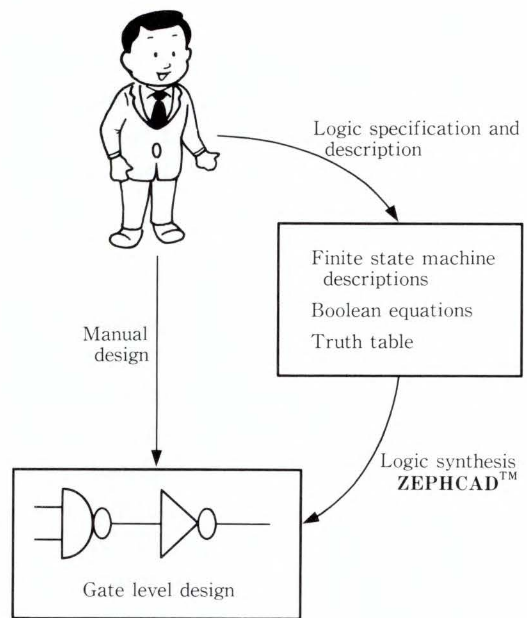


Fig. 2—Comparison between usual and ZEPHCAD^{TM} approach.

The system is operated on Fujitsu's personal computer FMR series which uses an 8 MHz i80286 MPU. The operating system is MS-DOS^{TM} V3.1, the memory size is 5 Mbytes, and the protected mode is used.

3. System flow, program functions, and limitations

Figure 3 shows the general flow of the system. The functions of each program are described below:

3.1 Input language

The system has three types of presentation forms for input:

1) Finite state machine descriptions
2) Boolean equations
3) Truth table.

Figure 4 shows an example input description in which the sequential logic is specified. In the Boolean equations and truth table description the combinational logic is specified.

A special purpose editor was developed for this language editing.

3.2 Translator

The translator converts the input language into AND/OR two-level logic presentation. (Our system was originally developed for PLA design, but was extended to use random logic design tools.)

3.3 State assignment

The state assignment program is applied for the finite state machine description. This program assigns a binary code to each state of the finite state machine. The algorithm of this program is called a simulated annealing method. First the program assigns a random binary code to each state, then it exchanges the assigned binary patterns according to the cost function. This cost function controls combinational logic to obtain the minimum number of product terms. This program is skipped for the Boolean equations or truth table description.

3.4 Minimizer

This program takes the ESPRESSO II-based algorithm and minimizes the AND/OR plane. The ESPRESSO II algorithm was published in a text book in 1984[1]. This algorithm is heuristic but is very powerful for finding a well optimized solution in a short CPU time. Therefore, we selected the ESPRESSO II algorithm for our personal computer based CAD system.

3.5 Factoring

After the minimization, the AND/OR two-level logic is transformed into multi-level logic and extracts a subexpression common to several expressions. By selecting the number of logic levels, the designer can control the propagation delay and total gate count.

3.6 Technology mapping

Finally, the designer selects the technology required for his logic device. Today, Fujitsu's CMOS standard cell technology using the 1.2 μm rule and gate array technology using the 1.5 μm and 1.2 μm rules are available. Only this program has a technology dependent feature; the programs of 3.1 to 3.5 are technology independent. The output of this program is the net lists of a cell family of a CMOS gate.

3.7 System limitations

Figure 5 shows the limitations of the system by showing the maximum numbers that can be assigned to the parameters for the input language description.

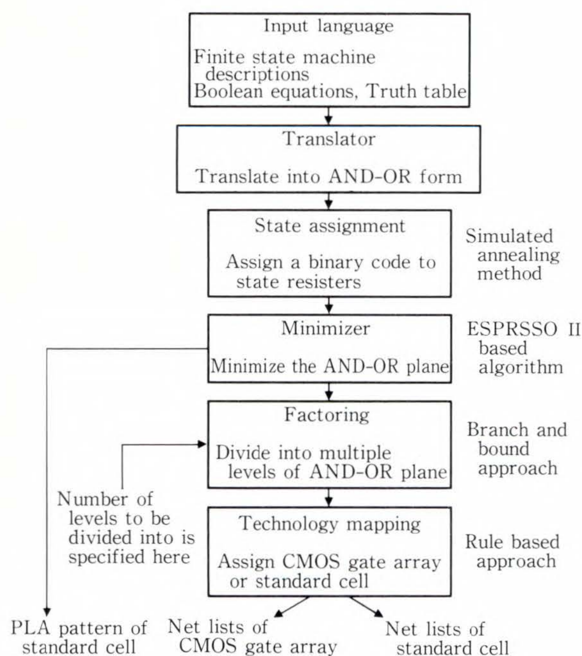


Fig. 3—System flow.

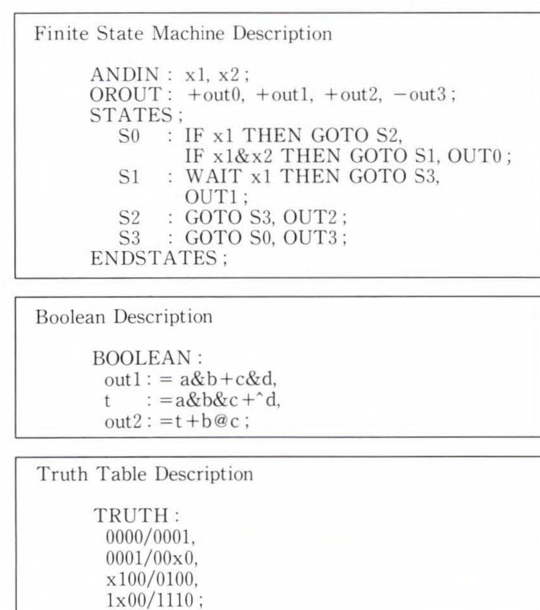


Fig. 4—Input language.

1) Maximum number of inputs: 64
2) Maximum number of outputs: 64
3) Maximum number of product terms: 1 024
4) Maximum number of states: 256 (8-bit)

The system can handle an input language description having a set of parameters within these limitations. A plane size of 64 inputs, 1 024 product terms, and 64 outputs means that the circuit can have 1 024 AND gates with 64 inputs and 64 OR gates of the 1 024 inputs.

When the gate size is represented using our Fujitsu CMOS gate array in which the basic gate is 2 inputs (NAND), it corresponds to almost 100K gates. For the PLA plane, the ratio of the usage of both AND/OR elements is far less than 100 percent and is considered to be about 10 percent. Therefore, about 10K-gate equivalent logic could be entered in the first language description phase, which approximately becomes 2K-gate equivalent net lists after minimization.

This is considered to be the maximum size that can be handled on this system.

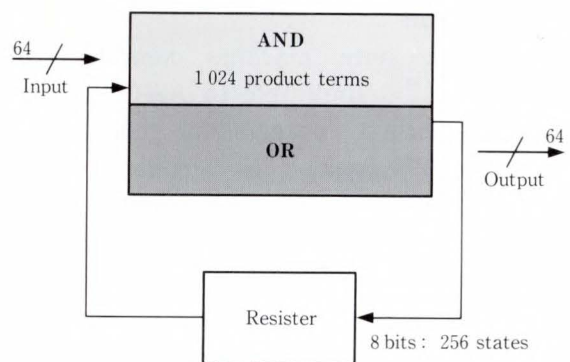


Fig. 5—Limitations of system.

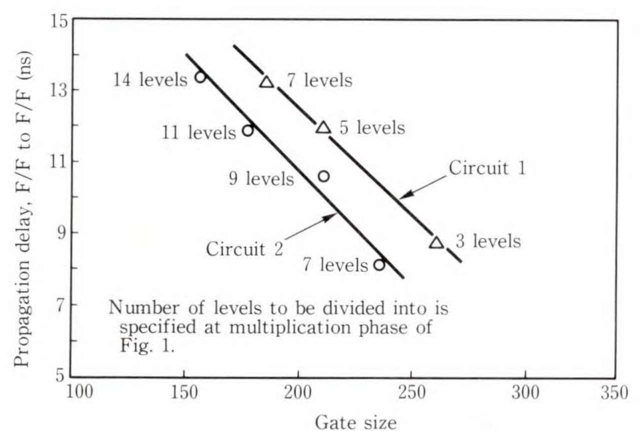


Fig. 6—Bench mark results.

4. Bench mark results and considerations

Figure 6 shows our bench mark results. The applied technology is the Fujitsu CMOS 1.2 μm standard cell.

Circuit 1 is a Bending machine. It has four inputs, three outputs, and eleven states.

Circuit 2 is a 4-bit miltiplier (MLP4) having eight inputs and eight outputs.

When decreasing the number of logic levels, the propagation delay also decreases, but the gate size increases. Therefore, a user can control the speed/area trade-offs by selecting the number of logic levels when running a multiplication program on the system.

Presently, the designer must select the number of levels the logic must be divided into for each design case. Using the system described here, however, the selection can be made without difficulty because either the speed minimum solution or the gate minimum solution is given automatically by this system according to the design selection.

As shown in Figs. 2 and 3. This system is applied to logic synthesis of control logic. Therefore, a gate level simulation system is necessary after the logic synthesis.

For the personal computer environment, we provide the VIEWCAD^{TM} system which can simulate a maximum of 20K gates. Thus, the ZEPHCAD^{TM} system generates net lists and it is linked to the VIEWCAD^{TM} system to create a total system for LSI logic design.

The most powerful feature of the ZEPHCAD^{TM} system is its technology independence. The designer specifies his logic, then assigns his logic to standard cell or gate array technology as necessary. When the technology advances, the designer can run the final "Technology Mapping" program for his new technology design. We conclude that to shorten the logic design time, language based and technology independent tools are becoming increasingly important.

5. Conclusion

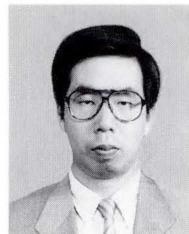
A finite state machine compiler called "ZEPHCAD^{TM}" applicable to ASICs, including CMOS gate arrays and standard cells, has been developed. The system is capable of controlling the circuit speed by selecting the number of logic levels and thus selecting total gate size. Input to the system can be done using a state machine description, the system can be done using a state machine description, Boolean description, or truth table. The system generates net lists of the desired ASIC.

A set of parameter limitations of the system is described and the bench mark test results for 1.2 μm CMOS standard cell technology is also provided.

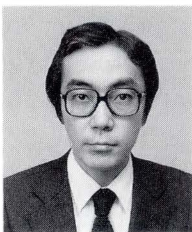
References:

1) Brayton, R., Hachtel, D., McMullen, C., and Sangiovanni-Vincentelli, A.: Logic Minimization Algorithm for VLSI Synthesis. 3rd. ed., Kluwer Academic Publisher, 1984, 193 p.
2) Brayton, R., Detjens, E., Krishna., S., McGeer T. Ma, S., Pei, L, Phillips, R., Rudell, R., Wang, A., Yung, R., and Sangiovanni-Vencentelli, A.: Multi-level Logic Optimization system. IEEE Int. Conf. Comput. Aided Design (ICCAD-86), Nov. 1986, pp. 356-359.
3) Brayton, R., Rudell, R., Sangiovanni-Vincentelli, A., and Wang, A.: Multi-level Logic Optimization and the Rectangular Covering Problem. IEEE Int. Conf. Comput. Aided Design (ICCAD-87), Nov. 1987, pp. 66-69.
4) Gregory, D., Bartlett, K., deGens, A., and Hachtel, G.: SCRATES: A SYSTEM FOR AUTOMATICALLY SYNTHESIZING AND OPTIMIZING COMBINATIONAL LOGIC. 23rd Design Autom. Conf., June 1986, pp. 79-85.

Hitomi Sato
CAD System Engineering Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Physics
Japan Women's University 1981
Specializing in VLSI CAD



Masahiro Fujita
Computer-Based Systems Laboratory
FUJITSU LABORATORIES, KAWASAKI
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1979
Dr. of Information Eng.
The University of Tokyo 1984
Specializing in Logic Design CAD



Yoshihide Sugiura
CAD System Engineering Dept.
FUJITSU LIMITED
Bachelor of Electrical Eng.
Keio University 1971
Master of Electrical Eng.
Keio University 1975
Specializing in VLSI CAD

FUJITSU SCIENTIFIC & TECHNICAL JOURNAL

VOL.24, NOs.1-4

INDEX

● SUBJECT INDEX ● AUTHOR INDEX

Spring 1988 VOL.24, NO.1

Summer 1988 VOL.24, NO.2

Autumn 1988 VOL.24, NO.3

Winter 1988 VOL.24, NO.4

Special Issue on Semiconductors

FUJITSU Sci. Tech. J., **24**, Kawasaki, December, 1989

Subject Index

(Ⓡ marks are Review articles.)

A

Analysis of Kanji Structures and a Method for Recognizing On-Line Handwritten Kanji Characters by Means of Stroke Representative Points **3,** 177
●Yasuo Ishii

Application of EB-Lithography for Fabrication of Submicron-Gate-MOSFETs **4,** 398
●Shuzo Ohshio ●Tetsuo Izawa

Ⓡ Automated Visual Inspection for Printed Circuit Boards **1,** 1
●Moritoshi Ando ●Masato Nakashima ●Takefumi Inagaki

B

Bipolar Circuit Simulation System Using Two-Dimensional Device Simulator **4,** 456
●Shigeo Satoh ●Hideki Oka ●Noriaki Nakayama

C

Characteristics of Si HBT with Hydrogenated Micro-Crystalline Si Emitter **4,** 391
●Hiroshi Fujioka ●Kanetake Takasaki

Characterization of Compound Semiconductor Materials by Transmission and Reflection Electron Microscopy **4,** 372
●Itsuo Umebu

Cooperative Expert System Applied to Simulation of Human Group Behavior **3,** 203
●Nobuo Watanabe ●Takashi Kimoto

D

A Design Method of Reflector Antennas with Arbitrary Configuration **2,** 109
●Yoshihiko Asano ●Hiroshi Kurihara

Development of Advanced Solid CAD System ICAD/SOLID **1,** 24
●Yutaka Tanaka ●Takahiro Ueda ●Koichi Akatsuka

Development of Microcontroller: F^2MC **4,** 328
●Jyoji Murakami

Development of Sea of Gates **4,** 318
●Yoshiyuki Suehiro ●Nobutake Matsumura ●Gensuke Goto

Development of 32-Bit Microprocessor Family Products: G_{MICRO} F32 **4,** 335
●Shosuke Mori ●Koichi Fujita ●Haruyasu Itoh

Ⓡ Devices Using High-Coupling Piezoelectric Crystals **2,** 71
●Hideki Tominaga ●Masaaki Ono ●Yoshiro Fujiwara

DX-Center-Free GaAs/N-AlGaAs HEMT Structures **2,** 143
●Tomonori Ishikawa ●Kazuo Kondo

E

An Expert System Based on Qualitative Knowledge **2**, 100
●Hiroyuki Yoshida ●Hiroyuki Izumi ●Ryoichi Narita

F

Fast Ray Tracing **2**, 150
●Koichi Murakami ●Katsuhiko Hirota ●Mitsuo Ishii

Fe-50%Co Sintered Alloy for Magnetic Circuit Yoke **3**, 254
●Wataru Yamagishi ●Tsutomu Iikawa

Full-Color Image Printer **2**, 166
●Tomohisa Mikami ●Tsugio Noda ●Toshio Konaka

H

High Quality Toner Image Transfer in Electrophotographic Printing **3**, 235
●Masashi Ogasawara ●Masatoshi Kimura

High-Speed BiCMOS Technology with Polysilicon Emitter Structure **4**, 384
●Hiroyuki Fukuma ●Tsunenori Yamauchi ●Yoshinori Okajima

High-Speed Bipolar Logic IC **4**, 265
●Ken-ichi Ohno ●Hirofumi Takeda

I

Interference from Digital QAM System to Analog FM System **3**, 225
●Yoshimasa Daido ●Hiroshi Nakamura

ISDN Subscriber Loop Transmission LSI Using Echo Cancelling Method **3**, 212
●Toshitaka Tsuda ●Misao Fukuda ●Yutaka Awata

L

Lightwave Semiconductor Devices **4**, 345
●Haruo Yonetani ●Akira Fukushima ●Keiji Satoh

Liquid Phase Epitaxial Growth of Buried Heterostructure DFB Lasers **2**, 133
●Toshihiro Kusunoki ●Nirou Okazaki ●Toshiyuki Tanahashi

Liquid Phase Epitaxial Growth of Fe-Doped Semi-Insulating InP, GaInAsP, and AlGaInAs **3**, 242
●Toshiyuki Tanahashi ●Makoto Kondo ●Mitsuru Sugawara

LISP-PAL: An Approach to Natural Language Consultation in a Programming Environment **2**, 118
●Sanya Uehara ●Rieko Nishioka ●Tomoya Ogawa

M

Microwave Semiconductor Devices **4**, 359
●Kiyofumi Ohta ●Kenji Yano ●Yutaka Hirano

O

Overview of Mask Technology **4**, 418
●Kimio Yanagida ●Takao Furukawa ●Takeo Kikuchi

P

Packaging Technology for ASICs **4**, 432
●Michio Sono

R

A Real-Time Hough Transform Processor **1**, 35
●Keishi Hanahara ●Tsugito Maruyama ●Takashi Uchiyama

Recent Advances in Josephson Junction Devices **4**, 284
●Shinya Hasuo ●Takeshi Imamura ●Norio Fujimaki

Reliability on Short-Channel MOSLSIs **4**, 446
●Ken Shono ●Kenji Ishida ●Nagao Yamada

Reproducible Nb/AlO_x/Nb Josephson Junctions **1**, 47
●Shiro Ohara ●Takeshi Imamura ●Shinya Hasuo

Resonant-Tunneling Hot Electron Transistors (RHETs) Using an InGaAs/In (AlGa) As Heterostructure **1**, 54
●Kenichi Imamura ●Shun-ichi Muto ●Naoki Yokoyama

S

Selenium-Indium-Antimony Alloy Film for Erasable Optical Disks **1**, 60
●Naga-aki Koshino ●Ken-ichi Utsumi ●Yasuyuki Goto

Self-Timed RAM: STRAM **4**, 293
●Chikai Ohno

Simulation Processor: SP **2**, 160
●Fumiyasu Hirose ●Hirofumi Hamamura ●Mitsuo Ishii
●Hiroshi Yamada

SOI-Device on Bonded Wafer **4**, 408
●Hiroshi Gotou ●Yoshihiro Arimoto ●Masashi Ozeki
●Kazunori Imaoka

Speed Tunable Finite State Machine Compiler: ZEPHCAD^{TM} **4**, 464
●Hitomi Sato ●Yoshihide Sugiura ●Masahiro Fujita

A System for Protein-Crystal Growth Experiment in a Microgravity Environment **2**, 126
●Shozo Fujita ●Koji Asano ●Takafumi Hashitani

T

3D Stacked Capacitor Cell for Mega Bit DRAM **4**, 301
●Tomio Nakano ●Takashi Yabu

U

Ultra High-Speed Bipolar Process Technology: ESPER **4**, 379
●Tatsuya Deguchi ●Hiroshi Goto

Ultra-High-Speed HEMT LSI Technology **4**, 271
●Masayuki Abe ●Takashi Mimura ●Masaaki Kobayashi

Author Index

(Ⓡ marks are Review articles.)

A

Abe Masayuki

Ultra-High-Speed HEMT LSI Technology **4**, 271

Akatsuka Koichi see **Tanaka** Yutaka

Ando Moritoshi

Ⓡ Automated Visual Inspection for Printed Circuit Boards **1**, 1

Arimoto Yoshihiro see **Gotou** Hiroshi

Asano Koji see **Fujita** Shozo

Asano Yoshihiko

A Design Method of Reflector Antennas with Arbitrary Configuration **2**, 109

Awata Yutaka see **Tsuda** Toshitaka

D

Daido Yoshimasa

Interference from Digital QAM System to Analog FM System **3**, 225

Deguchi Tatsuya

Ultra High-Speed Bipolar Process Technology: ESPER **4**, 379

F

Fujimaki Norio see **Hasuo** Shinya

Fujioka Hiroshi

Characteristics of Si HBT with Hydrogenated Micro-Crystalline Si Emitter **4**, 391

Fujita Koichi see **Mori** Shosuke

Fujita Masahiro see **Sato** Hitomi

Fujita Shozo

A System for Protein-Crystal Growth Experiment in a Microgravity Environment **2**, 126

Fujiwara Yoshiro see **Tominaga** Hideki

Fukuda Misao see **Tsuda** Toshitaka

Fukuma Hiroyuki

High-Speed BiCMOS Technology with Polysilicon Emitter Structure **4**, 384

Fukushima Akira see **Yonetani** Haruo

Furukawa Takao see **Yanagida** Kimio

G

Goto Gensuke see **Suehiro** Yoshiyuki

Goto Hiroshi see **Deguchi** Tatsuya

Goto Yasuyuki see **Koshino** Naga-aki

Gotou Hiroshi

SOI-Device on Bonded Wafer **4**, 408

H

Hamamura Hirofumi see **Hirose** Fumiyasu
Hanahara Keishi
A Real-Time Hough Transform Processor **1**, 35
Hashitani Takafumi see **Fujita** Shozo
Hasuo Shinya
Recent Advances in Josephson Junction Devices **4**, 284
Hasuo Shinya see **Ohara** Shiro
Hirano Yutaka see **Ohta** Kiyofumi
Hirose Fumiyasu
Simulation Processor: SP **2**, 160
Hirota Katsuhiko see **Murakami** Koichi

I

Iikawa Tsutomu see **Yamagishi** Wataru
Imamura Kenichi
Resonant-Tunneling Hot Electron Transistors (RHETs) Using an InGaAs/ In (AlGa) As Heterostructure **1**, 54
Imamura Takeshi see **Hasuo** Shinya
Imamura Takeshi see **Ohara** Shiro
Imaoka Kazunori see **Gotou** Hiroshi
Inagaki Takefumi see **Ando** Moritoshi
Ishida Kenji see **Shono** Ken
Ishii Mitsuo see **Hirose** Fumiyasu
Ishii Mitsuo see **Murakami** Koichi
Ishii Yasuo
Analysis of Kanji Structures and a Method for Recognizing On-Line Handwritten Kanji Characters by Means of Stroke Representative Points **3**, 177
Ishikawa Tomonori
DX-Center-Free GaAs/N-AlGaAs HEMT Structures **2**, 143
Itoh Haruyasu see **Mori** Shosuke
Izawa Tetsuo see **Ohshio** Shuzo
Izumi Hiroyuki see **Yoshida** Hiroyuki

K

Kikuchi Takeo see **Yanagida** Kimio
Kimoto Takashi see **Watanabe** Nobuo
Kimura Masatoshi see **Ogasawara** Masashi
Kobayashi Masaaki see **Abe** Masayuki
Konaka Toshio see **Mikami** Tomohisa
Kondo Kazuo see **Ishikawa** Tomonori
Kondo Makoto see **Tanahashi** Toshiyuki
Koshino Naga-aki
Selenium-Indium-Antimony Alloy Film for Erasable Optical Disks **1**, 60
Kurihara Hiroshi see **Asano** Yoshihiko
Kusunoki Toshihiro
Liquid Phase Epitaxial Growth of Buried Heterostructure DFB Lasers **2**, 133

M

Maruyama Tsugito see **Hanahara** Keishi
Matsumura Nobutake see **Suehiro** Yoshiyuki
Mikami Tomohisa
Full-Color Image Printer **2**, 166
Mimura Takashi see **Abe** Masayuki
Mori Shosuke
Development of 32-Bit Microprocessor Family Products: G_{MICRO} F32 **4**, 335
Murakami Jyoji
Development of Microcontroller: F^2MC **4**, 328
Murakami Koichi
Fast Ray Tracing **2**, 150
Muto Shun-ichi see **Imamura** Kenichi

N

Nakamura Hiroshi see **Daido** Yoshimasa
Nakano Tomio
3D Stacked Capacitor Cell for Mega Bit DRAM **4**, 301
Nakashima Masato see **Ando** Moritoshi
Nakayama Noriaki see **Satoh** Shigeo
Narita Ryoichi see **Yoshida** Hiroyuki
Nishioka Rieko see **Uehara** Sanya
Noda Tsugio see **Mikami** Tomohisa

O

Ogasawara Masashi
High Quality Toner Image Transfer in Electrophotographic Printing **3**, 235
Ogawa Tomoya see **Uehara** Sanya
Ohara Shiro
Reproducible Nb/AlO_x/Nb Josephson Junctions **1** , 47
Ohno Chikai
Self-Timed RAM: STRAM **4**, 293
Ohno Ken-ichi
High-Speed Bipolar Logic IC **4**, 265
Ohshio Shuzo
Application of EB-Lithography for Fabrication of Submicron-Gate-MOSFETs **4**, 398
Ohta Kiyofumi
Microwave Semiconductor Devices **4**, 359
Oka Hideki see **Satoh** Shigeo
Okajima Yoshinori see **Fukuma** Hiroyuki
Okazaki Nirou see **Kusunoki** Toshihiro
Ono Masaaki see **Tominaga** Hideki
Ozeki Masashi see **Gotou** Hiroshi

S

Sato Hitomi
Speed Tunable Finite State Machine Compiler: ZEPHCAD™ **4**, 464
Satoh Keiji see **Yonetani** Haruo
Satoh Shigeo
Bipolar Circuit Simulation System Using Two-Dimensional Device Simulator **4**, 456
Shono Ken
Reliability on Short-Channel MOSLSIs **4**, 450
Sono Michio
Packaging Technology for ASICs **4**, 432
Suehiro Yoshiyuki
Development of Sea of Gates **4**, 318
Sugawara Mitsuru see **Tanahashi** Toshiyuki
Sugiura Yoshihide see **Sato** Hitomi

T

Takasaki Kanetake see **Fujioka** Hiroshi
Takeda Hirofumi see **Ohno** Ken-ichi
Tanahashi Toshiyuki
Liquid Phase Epitaxial Growth of Fe-Doped Semi-Insulating InP, GaInAsP, and AlGaInAs **3**, 242
Tanahashi Toshiyuki see **Kusunoki** Toshihiro
Tanaka Yutaka
Development of Advanced Solid CAD System ICAD/SOLID **1**, 24
Tominaga Hideki
Ⓡ Devices Using High-Coupling Piezoelectric Crystals **2**, 71
Tsuda Toshitaka
ISDN Subscriber Loop Transmission LSI Using Echo Cancelling Method **3**, 212

U

Uchiyama Takashi see **Hanahara** Keishi
Ueda Takahiro see **Tanaka** Yutaka
Uehara Sanya
LISP-PAL: An Approach to Natural Language Consultation in a Programming Environment **2**, 118
Umebu Itsuo
Characterization of Compound Semiconductor Materials by Transmission and Reflection Electron Microscopy **4**, 372
Utsumi Ken-ichi see **Koshino** Naga-aki

Y

Yabu Takashi see **Nakano** Tomio
Yamada Hiroshi see **Hirose** Fumiyasu
Yamada Nagao see **Shono** Ken
Yamagishi Wataru
Fe-50%Co Sintered Alloy for Magnetic Circuit Yoke **3**, 254
Yamauchi Tsunenori see **Fukuma** Hiroyuki
Yanagida Kimio
Overview of Mask Technology **4**, 418
Yano Kenji see **Ohta** Kiyofumi
Yokoyama Naoki see **Imamura** Kenichi
Yonetani Haruo
Lightwave Semiconductor Devices **4**, 345
Yoshida Hiroyuki
An Expert System Based on Qualitative Knowledge **2**, 100

W

Watanabe Nobuo
Cooperative Expert System Applied to Simulation of Human Group Behavior **3**, 203

Overseas Offices

Abu Dhabi Office
8th Floor, A1 Masaood Tower,
P.O. Box 322, Abu Dhabi, U.A.E.

Algiers Office
6, Boulevard Colonel,
Amirouche, Alger, Algeria
Telephone: (213)-63-42-55
Telex: 408-67522

Amman Office
P.O. Box 5420, Ammán, Jordan
Telephone: (962-6)-662417

Bangkok Office
Room 405, 4th Floor, Dusit
Thani Bldg., 1-3, Rama IV.
Bangkok, Thailand
Telephone: (66-2)-236-7930
Telex: 86-87956

Beijing Office
Room 1601, Lubao Dasha
Jianguomen-wai Dajie, Beijing,
People's Republic of China
Telephone: (86-1)-512-3610
Telex: 85-22405

Bogotá Office
Cra. 13 No. 27-50,
Edificio Centro Internacional
Tequendama, Oficina No. 326.
Bogotá, D.E. Colombia
Telephone: (57-1)-296-8258
Telex: 35-45408

Hawaii Branch
6660 Hawaii Kai Drive, Honolulu,
HI 96825, U.S.A.
Telephone: (1-808)-395-2314
Telex: 705-7430204

Indonesia Project Office
16th Floor, Skyline Bldg.,
Jalan M.H. Thamrin No. 9,
Jakarta, Indonesia
Telephone: (62-21)-3105981
Telex: 73-61144

Jakarta Office
16th Floor, Skyline Bldg.,
Jalan M.H. Thamrin No. 9,
Jakarta, Indonesia
Telephone: (62-21)-333245
Telex: 73-61144

Kuala Lumpur Office
Letter Box No. 47, 22nd Floor,
UBN Tower No. 10, Jalan P.
Ramlee, 50250, Kuala Lumpur,
Malaysia
Telephone: (60-3)-238-4870
Telex: 84-31005

London Office
2, Longwalk Road, Stockley Park,
Uxbridge, Middlesex, UB11 1AB,
England
Telephone: (44-1)-573-4444
Telex: 51-263871

Munich Office
c/o D V4 Siemens AG, Otto-
Hahn-Ring6, D-8000, München
83, F.R. Germany
Telephone: (49-89)-636-3244
Telex: 41-5210935

New Delhi Office
Flat No. 517-B, 5th Floor, World
Trade Centre, Barakhamba Lane,
New Delhi, 110001, India
Telephone: (91-11)-331-1311
Telex: 31-65271

New York Office
680 Fifth Avenue, New York,
N.Y. 10019, U.S.A.
Telephone: (1-212)-265-5360
Telex: 23-234969

Paris Office
Batiment Aristote,
Rue Olof Palme 94006,
Creteil Cedex, France
Telephone: (33-1)-4-399-0897
Telex: 42-262661

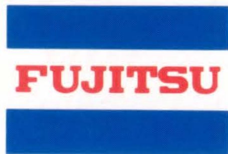
Shanghai Office
Room 1504 Ruijin Bldg.,
205 Maoming Road South,
Shanghai, People's Republic
of China
Telephone: (86-21)-336-462
Telex: 30180

Taipei Office
Sunglow Bldg. 66, Sung Chiang
Road, Taipei, Taiwan
Telephone: (886-2)-561-7715
Telex: 785-26773

Overseas Subsidiaries

Overseas Subsidiaries		Telephone	Telex
FKL Dong-Hwa Ltd.	338-13, Dae Hong-Ri, Sunghwan-Eub, Chunwon-Gun, Chungnam, Republic of Korea	(82-417)-4-3660	–
Fujian Fujitsu Communications Software Ltd.	Wuliting Fuma Road, Fuzhou, Fujian, People's Republic of China	(86-591)-556280	85-92147
Fujitsu America, Inc.	3055 Orchard Drive, San Jose, CA 95134-2017, USA	(1-408)-432-1300	230-176207
Fujitsu Australia Ltd.	475 Victria Ave., Chatswood, NSW 2067, Australia	(61-2)-410-4555	71-25233
Fujitsu Business Communication System, Inc.	3190 Mira Loma Ave., Anaheim, CA 92806, USA	(1-714)-630-7721	230-685571
(Sales Headquarter)	2411 West 14th Street, Tempe, AZ 85281, USA	(1-602)-921-5900	–
Fujitsu Canada, Inc.	6280 Northwest Drive, Mississauga, Ontario, L4V IJ7 Canada	(1-416)-673-8666	21-6-968132
Fujitsu Component (Malaysia) Sdn. Bhd.	No. 1 Lorong Satu, Kawasan Perindustrian Parit Raja, 86400 Batu Pahat, Johor, Malaysia	(60-7)-481392	84-60577
Fujitsu Component of America, Inc.	3320 Scott Boulevard, Santa Clara, CA 95054-3197, USA	(1-408)-562-1000	25-910-338-0190
Fujitsu Customer Service of America, Inc.	12670 High Bluff Drive, San Diego, CA 92130-2013, USA	(1-619)-481-4004	25-910-337-1127
Fujitsu Deutschland GmbH	Rosenheimer Strasse 145, D-8000, München 80, F.R. Germany	(49-89)-413010	41-17-897106
Fujitsu do Brasil Communicação Electrônica Máquinas e Serviços Ltda.	Rua Manoel da Nóbrega, 1280, 2º Andar, C.E.P. 04001, São Paulo, SP, Brazil	(55-11)-885-7099	38-1121777
Fujitsu Electronics (Singapore) Pte. Ltd.	7500A Beach Road, #05-301/2 The Plaza, Singapore 0719, Singapore	(65)-296-1818	–
Fujitsu España, S.A.	Edioficio Torre Europa 5a, Paseo de la Castellana, 95, 28046 Madrid, Spain	(34-1)-581-8000	52-23887
Fujitsu Europe Ltd.	2, Longwalk Road, Stockley Park, Uxbridge, Middlesex, UB11 1AB, England	(44-1)-573-4444	51-263871
Fujitsu Finance (U.K.) PLC	2, Longwalk Road, Stockley Park, Uxbridge, Middlesex, UB11 1AB, England	(44-1)-573-4444	51-263871
Fujitsu Hong Kong Ltd.	Room 2521, Sun Hung Kai Centre, 30 Harbour Road, Hong Kong	(852-5)-742917	802-62667
Fujitsu Imaging Systems of America, Inc.	Corporate Drive, Commerce Park, Danbury, CT 06810, USA	(1-203)-796-5400	–
Fujitsu International Finance (Netherlands) B.V.	Officia 1, De Boelelaan 7, 1083 HJ Amsterdam, The Netherlands	–	–
Fujitsu Italia S.p.A.	Via Melchiorre, Gioia No. 8, 20124 Milano, Italy	(39-2)-657-2741	43-350142
Fujitsu Korea Ltd.	9th Floor, Korean Reinsurance Bldg., 80, Susong-Dong, Chongro-Gu, Seoul Special City, Republic of Korea	(82-2)-739-3281	801-24553
Fujitsu Microelectronics Asia Pte. Ltd.	No. 2 Second Chin Bee Road, Jurong Town, Singapore 2261, Singapore	(65)-265-6511	87-22194
Fujitsu Microelectronics Inc.	3545 North First Street, San Jose, CA 95134-1804, USA	(1-408)-922-9000	25-910-671-4915
Fujitsu Microelectronics Ireland Ltd.	Unit D Greenhills Centre, Greenhills Rd., Tallaght, Dublin 24, Ireland	(353-1)-520-744	500-30152
Fujitsu Microelectronics Italia S.r.l.	Centro Direzionale, Milanofiori, Palazzo A2, 1-20090 Assago-Milano, Italy	(39-2)-824-6170	–
Fujitsu Microelectronics Ltd.	Vaughan St., West Gorton, Manchester M12 5DU, England	(44-61)-230-6262	51-667403
Fujitsu Microelectronics (Malaysia) Sdn. Bhd.	8th Floor, MUI Plaza, Jalan P. Ramlee, 50250, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia	(60-3)-248-8402	–
Fujitsu Microelectronics Pacific Asia Ltd.	8th Floor, Tsim Sha Tsui Centre, 66 Mody Road, Kowloon, Hong Kong	(852-3)-7320100	802-31959
Fujitsu Microsystems of America, Inc.	3025 Orchard Parkway, San Jose, CA 95134-2017, USA	(1-408)-434-1160	230-176207
Fujitsu Mikroelektronik GmbH	Lyoner Strasse 44-48, Arabella Centre 9, OG./A, D-6000 Frankfurt Niederrad 71, F.R. Germany	(49-69)-66320	41-411963
Fujitsu Network Switching of America, Inc.	4403 Bland Road, Somerset Park, Raleigh, N C 27609, USA	(1-919)-790-2211	–
Fujitsu New Zealand Ltd.	6th Floor, National Insulance House, 119-123 Featherston Street, Wellington, New Zealand	(64-4) 733-420	–
Fujitsu Nordic AB	Torggatan 8, S-171 54 Solna, Sweden	(46-8)-764-7690	54-13411
Fujitsu Philippines, Inc.	2nd Floor, United Life Bldg., Pasay Road, Legaspi Village, Makati, Metro Manila, Philippines	(63-2)-85-4951	75-22288
Fujitsu (Singapore) Pte. Ltd.	200, Cantonment Road, #11-01 South Point, Singapore 0208, Singapore	(65)-2240159	87-20138
Fujitsu Systems of America, Inc.	12670 High Bluff Drive, San Diego, CA 92130-2013, USA	(1-619)-481-4004	25-910-337-1127
Fujitsu (Thailand) Co., Ltd.	3rd Floor, Olympia Thai Bldg., 444, Rachadaphisek Road, Bangkok, Thailand	–	–
Fujitsu Vitória Computadores e Serviços Ltda.	Avenida Nossa, Senhora da Penha, 570, 8º Andar, Praia do Canto-Vitória-Espirito Santo, Brazil	(55-27)-225-0355	38-272218
Intellistor, Inc.	2120 Miller Drive, Longmont, CO 80501, USA	(1-303)-678-0697	–
Tatung-Fujitsu Co., Ltd.	5 Floor Tatung Bldg., 225, Nanking East Road 3rd Section, Taipei, Taiwan	(886-2)-713-5396	785-26209

(The information here as of November 30, 1988)


FUJITSU